SEA SCOUT MANUAL

For Youth and Adults

Scouting America

The Scout Oath

On my honor I will do my best to do my duty to God and my country and to obey the Scout Law; to help other people at all times; to keep myself physically strong, mentally awake, and morally straight.

The Scout Law

A Scout is trustworthy, loyal, helpful, friendly, courteous, kind, obedient, cheerful, thrifty, brave, clean, and reverent

The Sea Promise

As a Sea Scout I promise to do my best:

- To guard against water accidents,
- To know the location and proper use of the lifesaving devices on every boat I board,
- To be prepared to render aid to those in need,
- To let those less able come first.

The Sea Scout Emblem

The key component of the First Class Anchor is the Scout universal emblem, a fleur-de-lis. The three points signify the three points of the Scout Oath: duty to God and country, duty to others, and duty to self. Like a compass, the center point always points north symbolizing a true course in life. The eagle with the shield is the national emblem of the United States of America, and it represents freedom. The scroll with the Scout otto represents a Scout's smile and reminds us to "Be Prepared." The knot attached to the bottom of the scroll is to remind you that, as a Sea Scout, you have promised to do a Good Turn daily. The stars beneath the eagle's wings symbolize the ideals of truth and knowledge as guides in the night sky for finding our way. They reflect our nautical life and suggest a Scout's outdoor adventures. The anchor symbolizes Sea Scouts' maritime heritage.

SEA SCOUT MANUAL

13th Edition

Dedication

This manual is dedicated to all the volunteers who have made the Sea Scout program successful for the hundreds of thousands of Scouts who have enjoyed more than a century of adventure on the water though Sea Scouts.

33239
ISBN 978-0-8395-3239-2

2025 Printing

Welcome Aboard

Welcome aboard. For more than 100 years Sea Scouts has provided Scouts from coast-to-coast high adventure in, on, around, and under the water. Whether you look to the sea for a future career or lifelong hobby, Sea Scouts is for you.

The element of water makes Sea Scouts unique and the type of water near you will make your experience in Sea Scouts unique. Sea Scout units use a variety of watercraft, from kayaks and paddleboards to motorboats and large sailing yachts.

The water can be unpredictable, and the Scout motto, “Be Prepared,” is imperative. The challenge is taking a vessel from point A to point B while being ready for whatever may be encountered along the way. Each vessel brings its own challenges. Outings on the water offer new destinations in the morning and changing scenery by evening. Every event is an adventure.

As a Sea Scout, you'll have the opportunity to take on leadership roles and develop valuable teamwork skills. Our program is run by youth members, and elected officers plan and execute the program. With experience, you'll have even more chances to contribute to the leadership of the unit.

Service to others is a big part of Sea Scouts, and we've been making a positive impact on communities across the country for years. Our members give back through individual good turns or organized projects involving the entire crew or ship. We believe in putting citizenship into action.

Advancement is also a key part of our program, rewarding individual pursuits of excellence. Each level of advancement marks growth as both a mariner and a leader, with the highest rank being the prestigious Quartermaster.

Seafaring has traditions that go back hundreds of years. While Sea Scouts have adopted many of these traditions, the program has adapted to keep up with the times and continues to create new traditions of our own.

To join Sea Scouts, you must be at least 13 years old and have graduated from the eighth grade or be 14 years old. You can stay in Sea Scouts until you're 21 years old. Sea Scout ships can be located by visiting beascout.org. If there is not a ship nearby, encourage a community organization to sponsor one.

0.4 Table of Contents

1.0 Program

Sea Scout Manual

1.0 Program

The time and place for things to happen in Sea Scouts is at ship meetings. Successful Sea Scout ships have meetings that are fun and full of meaningful activities. High school–age youth join to take part in the fun and exciting adventures of Sea Scouts, so, keep your regular meetings full of activities that are just as interesting as cruises and other on the water events.

Meetings also involve administration so there should be time for reports and decision making. The decisions made at meetings should benefit most of our members. By working together and discussing things openly, we can ensure that our program is always enthusiastic and engaging.

To be successful, meetings must be carefully planned and organized in advance. The agenda, activity ideas, and meeting techniques in this chapter are designed to give you the information you need to plan successful meetings, activities, and a balanced year-round program.

1.1 The Ship Meeting

Ship meetings should be held at a regular time and place.
Generally, successful ships follow these guidelines:

- The ship holds regular weekly meetings at an established time and place.
- The ship's officers hold a quarterdeck meeting once a month to problem solve and plan.
- The ship schedules at least one monthly activity.
- Ship meetings are held on the same night of the week. Quarterdeck and Ship Committee meetings are held on different nights. This makes it easier for members to remember.
- Ship officers can plan additional meetings, activities, etc., during the month, as needed.

1.1.1 Sample General Meeting

Opening Ceremony - *Boatswain*

- Call ship to attention.
- Advance the colors, Pledge of Allegiance, Scout Oath and Law
- Recognize visitors.

Business Session

- Call to order - *Boatswain*
- Minutes of the last meeting - *Yeoman*
- Officers' reports - *Boatswain*
- Communications - *Yeoman*
- Membership - *Boatswain's Mate*
- Financial report - *Purser*
- Equipment - *Storekeeper*
- District and council activities - *Boatswain*
- New activity chair and committees - *Boatswain*
- Promotion of activities - *Activity Chairs*
- Questions for ship decision - *Boatswain*
- Skipper's comments - *Skipper*

Activity

After the business session, the Sea Scout who is the Chair of the activity scheduled for that meeting takes over and with the aid of their committee conducts the activity.

Skipper's Minute - *Skipper*

Closing Ceremony - *Boatswain*

- Retire the colors.
- Sea Promise

1.1.1.1 Details of the Ship Meeting

There are no formal and required formats for conducting a ship meeting. Each ship has a unique culture reflecting the experience and expectations of its members. The following text gives you something to consider as you plan your ship meetings.

Opening Ceremony - *Boatswain*

The opening ceremony for a Sea Scout ship should be carried out with dignity and respect. It can be carried out aboard a landship and might follow this pattern:

- Call ship to attention.
- Advance the colors, Pledge of Allegiance, Scout Oath and Law
- Recognize visitors.

An opening ceremony aboard a landship can be found in 15.3.1 Opening Ceremony.

Admission of New Members - *Boatswain's Mate of Administration*

New members can be brought in and registered at any time, but in many ships the official admission ceremony for new members is generally carried out during a ship meeting. This should be an impressive, formal welcome of the new member to the ship and should be scheduled immediately after each new member is registered. A sample admission ceremony can be found in 15.4.4 Sea Scout Admission Ceremony.

Minutes of the Last Ship Meeting - *Yeoman*

The minutes of the last ship meeting - read, corrected, and approved - should be sent to ship members in advance so they can be read before the meeting. If this is done, they can be approved by a vote when presented without being read by the Yeoman.

Officer Reports - *Boatswain*

The Boatswain should ask for verbal reports from the officers. These are brief reports which should, if necessary, be discussed by the membership. Questions calling for ship action concerning these reports should be delayed until the portion of the meeting concerning "questions for ship decision."

Communications - *Yeoman*

Discussion on any communications the ship received from the district, council, or other ships. The ship decides what action to take.

Membership - *Boatswain's Mate*

Discuss the names of new prospects and ship recruiting opportunities.

Finances - *Purser*

A brief financial report is made by the purser. It should include last month's income, disbursements, balance, and any unpaid dues or outstanding assessments. The ship budget should be approved by the ship members annually.

Equipment - *Storekeeper*

The Storekeeper gives a complete report on the inventory and general condition of all the ship equipment, securing help as needed from ship members.

Announcement of Activity Committees - *Boatswain*

The Boatswain announces the Chair, Committee members, and Consultants (if any) for each scheduled activity for the next month. At times, the ship will be represented at council or other activities and conferences. These representatives should be asked to prepare and make reports to the ship membership at the first meeting following the activity.

Promotion of activities - *Activity Chair*

Activity Chairs responsible for activities are asked to promote participation in those activities. This is done through progress reports on high adventure activities as well as regular activities.

Collection of Program and Activity Suggestions - *Boatswain's Mate of Program*

Realizing that the activity desires of the ship are essential to successful programming, the Boatswain's Mate of Program discusses future program ideas and activities with members. Suggestions can then be discussed at the next quarterdeck meeting.

Questions for Ship Decision - *Boatswain*

Questions may be presented by members for a vote at any time. This permits members to have a direct vote on any ship decision. However, if members have elected good officers to represent them, the members should rely upon the officers to make decisions. Sufficient time should be allowed for questions that are referred from quarterdeck meetings or come up during a discussion of the officers' reports.

Election of Ship Officers - *Boatswain* and *Skipper*

The election of officers should be followed by setting a time and place for the training of the new officers by the Skipper.

Ship Meeting Program or Activity - *Activity Chair*

Currently, during each ship meeting, the boatswain turns the meeting over to the Activity Chair who, with the help of their committee, conducts the program or activity. Once finished, the Activity Chair turns the meeting back to the Boatswain.

Skipper's Minute - *Skipper*

Although the Skipper's Minute is brief, it is one of the most important parts of a ship meeting. Occurring at the closing of the meeting, it is the thought that will go home with the ship members. It is the Skipper's opportunity to convey a special message of inspiration, praise, or encouragement.

Closing Ceremony - *Boatswain*

The closing ceremony of a ship is generally an established ceremony that follows a typical pattern. Listed below are some things you might consider.

- Reciting the Sea Promise
- Changing the watch
- Piping the Skipper over the side
- Dousing the colors
- Dismissing the crews

1.1.2 Two-Part Program

Ship meetings typically consist of two parts, a business session and an activity. Since the activity is the focus and involves the major portion of the time, the business session should be handled as efficiently as possible.

Officers' reports only need to be made once a month. Other meetings are reserved for programs, advancement, and those business items that happen occasionally.

1.1.3 The Ship Business Session

The business session of a ship meeting is generally brief but important. Because of its nature, it is not necessarily the most interesting part of the meeting, but it need not be dull. The way to make this session effective, and fun, follows:

- Ship business must be conducted in concurrence with the ship bylaws.
- The officers need to understand the overall organization and operation of a Sea Scout ship. Well-trained officers will find it easy to carry out their responsibilities during the ship business session.
- The Boatswain, who oversees the business session, should involve other officers and members in the preparation of reports and assignments related to the business session. The session will be more interesting if more people are involved and have responsibility for business matters.
- Make the group feel at ease.
- Give everyone a chance to participate. Free discussion will encourage better ideas. Direct, do not dominate, the conversation. Don't forget to ask the opinions of all members. At the same time, slow down the person who talks too much.
- Focus on the subject. Lead the discussion, make decisions, and develop a plan of action. This means that occasionally you will have to stop a discussion that deviates from the main subject and get the group back on track.
- Be fair. Respect the opinions of both the majority and the minority. To do this, you must determine the true wishes of both sides. This is done by giving both parties a fair hearing. Once each has had their say, bring the matter to a vote. When there is a divided opinion, use a secret ballot.
- Summarize occasionally. Review the points that have already been made.

The one thing that will help most is to follow a prepared agenda for the ship meeting. If you are knowledgeable about the agenda, you should have effective, interesting business sessions.

1.1.3.1 Hints for Ship Members

Business sessions provide a real opportunity for ship members to influence the conduct and program of their ship. To have an equal opportunity to express themselves, the ship members should observe these general rules of conduct:

- Take turns speaking during the general discussion. If you have trouble getting a word in, address the boatswain and ask for the floor. If everyone is talking and interrupting each other, your Boatswain should call for order and decide who has the floor.
- Stay with the topic of discussion. Help the group reach a decision on one topic before discussing the next one. Ship members can help the Boatswain by staying on the subject and clarifying the point of discussion for others. Remember, this will save your time as well as everyone else's.
- Be informal. Efficiency in handling ship business should not require a great deal of parliamentary procedure. Parliamentary procedure was developed primarily for large groups of people with many conflicting opinions. Most ships will find informal discussion a faster and more effective way to operate.
- Some business can be handled formally. If there is a large group present that is discussing a controversial issue, the motion and vote are the most effective method for reaching a decision.

1.1.4 The Activity Session

Most of the ship's meeting should be the Activity Session. If the weather allows, the ship might plan to get on the water during this time. This could mean holding the meeting at your local marina or yacht club and conducting the business session at a shelter or in an open area. If the weather does not allow for getting on the water other activities are outlined in the following sections.

1.1.4.1 Get on the Water

As the weather allows, plan to sail, paddle, dive, or cruise during your regular ship meetings. The activity could be a fun cruise but should regularly focus on an advancement requirement, outlined in section 13.3 Sea Scout Advancement Requirements or another award outlined in section 14.0 Sea Scout Recognition.

1.1.4.2 Invite a Guest Speaker

Choose a speaker for their knowledge and ability to present accurate information in an interesting and captivating manner. Extend an invitation that gives the speaker plenty of time to prepare. The speaker will need to know the following:

- How much time will be available
- The size and age range of the audience
- The experience and knowledge level of the group
- The meeting location
- Time for arrival
- Contact information.

On behalf of the ship, the Boatswain should publicly thank the speaker at the end of the presentation. In addition, it is appropriate to thank the speaker with a letter from the yeoman expressing appreciation from the ship.

A collection of Coast Guard Auxiliary Tech Talks covering a wide range of topics have been recorded for Sea Scouts and can be watched online.

1.1.4.3 Give a Demonstration

Ship meetings are the time for planning and learning. When planning a program that will teach a skill, the following ideas should be considered:

- Decide what training is needed and the skills the participants should master by the end of the training.
- Create a training outline and estimate the time the instruction will take.
- Select teaching methods most suitable for you, your topic, and your students.
- Design or select teaching aids and activities.
- Require feedback to demonstrate that the information given has been understood.
- Be flexible. Sometimes people really get it, but sometimes they need more time to digest and process information.
- Evaluate.
  Note: Performance tests are preferable to written tests.
- Use the EDGE method: Explain, Demonstrate, Guide, and Enable.

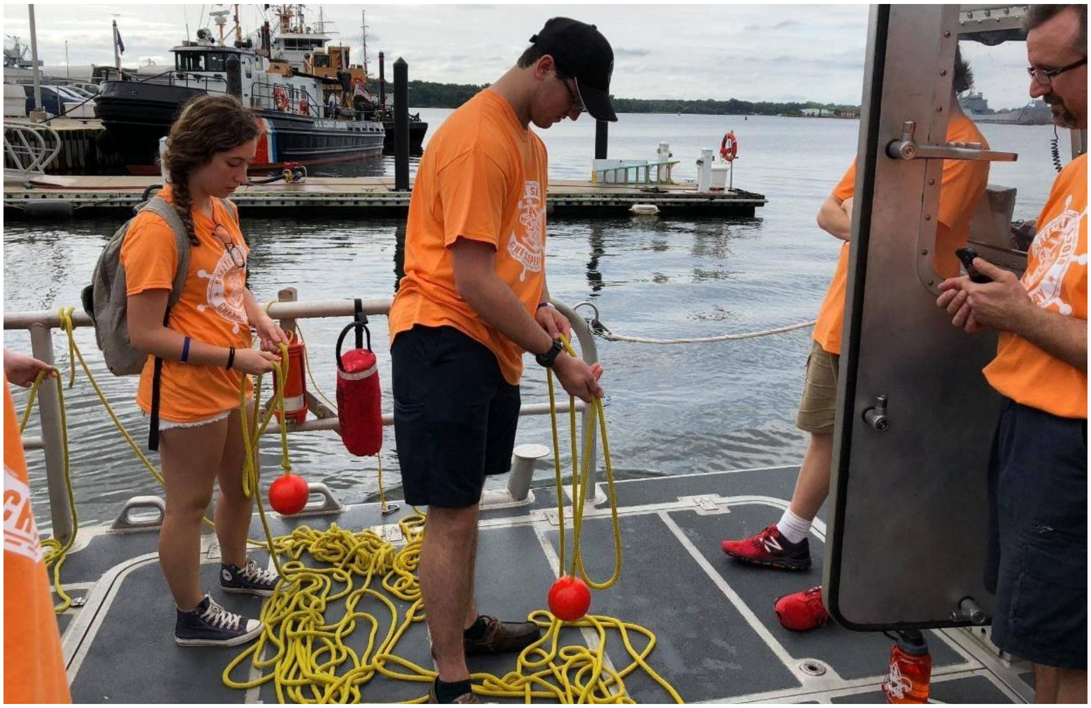
In summary, you must first decide what you want your students to do. Then you tell them what to do, show them what to do, let them practice doing it, and finish by evaluating their performance.

1.1.4.4 Coach a Skill

Coaching - the method of supervised learning by doing - is the perfect follow-up to the demonstration of a skill.

Suggestions for Coaching:

- Be able to perform the skill well yourself. Review your own experience in learning the skill and work out a series of steps for teaching it.
- Keep the coaching on a personal basis by working with a small group, perhaps coaching only one to start with. Get additional coaches, if necessary, to keep the groups small.
- Evaluate the abilities and personality traits of those you are coaching, as relating to their power to learn a particular skill.
- If someone has acquired little or none of the skill through reading, discussion, or experience, go slowly at first. Insist on accuracy or form first, then speed.
- Don't interfere with a person's honest attempts. Don't interrupt efforts unless he or she bogs down or goes off on the wrong track.
- Let the person make mistakes if they can learn from them but point out any mistakes made.
- Never make corrections sarcastically or for the entertainment of onlookers.
- Encourage by remarking on progress, pointing out the completion of each step and the steps done well.
- Urge the person to practice and perhaps to coach someone else when he or she has mastered the skill.



1.2 The Quarterdeck Meeting

The quarterdeck meeting is a monthly business meeting of all the ship's officers. The meeting provides the officers a regular opportunity to review the ship's program. It also affords an opportunity to plan future activities to satisfy the special interests and needs of the members. Equally important, this meeting allows officers to practice the democratic principles of self-government with the counsel of qualified adult leaders.

The skipper, the mates, and the elected officers attend quarterdeck meetings. Crew leaders, ship committee members, and consultants may attend by invitation.

Prior to every quarterdeck meeting, the boatswain and skipper should agree on the agenda. They determine and then discuss each item of business and reach a mutual understanding of how it is to be handled.

1.2.1 Suggested Agenda for Quarterdeck Meetings

The boatswain presides. Other officers participate as indicated.

1. **Call to order** – *Boatswain*
2. **Minutes of last quarterdeck meeting** – *Yeoman*
    a. Minutes are read, corrected, and approved.
3. **Reports of officers called for by Boatswain**
4. **Communications** – *Yeoman*
    a. Reads or summarizes all correspondence depending on its importance.
    b. Takes notes and plans appropriate action.
5. **Membership** - *Boatswain's Mate*
    a. Presents plans for future ceremonies.
    b. Reports progress in recruiting, including a discussion of prospective members.
6. **Finances** – *Purser*
    a. Reports last month's income, disbursements, and balance.
    b. Reports members owing dues or fees.
    c. Obtains authorization for payment of bills.
7. **Boats and equipment** – *Storekeeper*
    a. Reports last month's new, lost, or damaged items.
    b. Reports needed maintenance or repairs.
    c. Secures approval for items to be purchased or repaired.
8. **District and council activities** – *Boatswain*
    a. Reports district and council activities and leads a discussion concerning ships' participation in them.
    b. Secures suggestions for future district or council activities.
9. **Past activities review** – *Boatswain*
    a. Gives brief review of past month's activities, complimenting successes, and encouraging positive discussion of any weaknesses.
10. **Ship committee meeting report** – *Skipper*
    a. Gives summary of meeting emphasizing the committee's plans for its support of ship activities.

11. **Approval of Ship Meeting Agenda** - *Boatswain*
    a. The boatswain presents for approval the agenda for the business part of the upcoming meetings.
12. **Check in on this month's activity plans** – *Skipper*
    a. Conducts a thorough check on all activity plans for the month with definite action to tie up any loose ends.
    b. Takes action concerning any necessary changes in activities or committees.
13. **Program planning session for future activities**
    The program planning procedure is followed during each quarterdeck meeting. Under the supervision of the skipper, the officers use this practical and democratic four-step method to make final decisions concerning the activities they feel will meet the needs and desires of the ship's membership.
    - Step 1: Collect activity ideas.
    - Step 2: Select the activities you want.
    - Step 3: Assign committees to conduct them.
    - Step 4: Regularly check on planning, enthusiastically promote, and enjoy the activities.
14. **Adjournment** - *Boatswain*

1.3 A Balanced Program

Youth join Sea Scouts to take part in interesting and exciting activities. This puts the creation and production of activities high on the list of things officers must consider. Sea Scout ships should plan to be on the water at least once a month during the appropriate season.

The Skipper must guide the unit into a well-balanced set of exciting and interesting activities. When selecting and promoting activities, officers should consider social, leadership, outdoor, fitness, service, and citizenship experiences.

Planning activities for your ship program should be a collaborative effort. Begin by collecting and brainstorming activity ideas. The best sources are ship members. Once completed, this list can be used by officers in planning future programs for the ship.

1.3.1 Sources of Consultants

Listed here are some of the more common sources of consultants:

- Yacht club members
- Boat club members and officers
- Local America's Boating Club or Coast Guard Auxiliary flotilla members
- Boating supply and equipment store personnel
- Owners and employees of marinas or dive shops
- Ship committee members
- Parents and friends
- Teachers in schools, colleges, and universities
- People in industry, businesses, and professions
- People in government and other public agencies
- Members of local boating and water safety organizations
- Local members of the American Canoe Association

1.3.2 Activity Committees

To produce a successful Sea Scout activity, two elements must be present. The first is a good idea, and the second is a good team to carry it out. A good activity idea can be a complete washout if the committee does not have the spirit and know-how to plan, organize, and promote it.

The Skipper consults with the officers on the selection of chairs for each activity committee. Overloading "workhorses" needs to be avoided so all Sea Scouts are given the chance to develop leadership abilities.

The boatswain and chair select the committee. The size of the committee, chosen by the boatswain and the activity chair, should be tailored to the size of the activity. Activity chairs schedule meetings and make plans well in advance of the deadline date, and report on their progress at quarterdeck meetings. This ensures reliable information concerning the project and recognizes the importance of each activity chair.

After each activity:

- Publicly give credit to those who helped, then thank them privately.
- Be sure the location of the activity is cleaner than it was before the activity.
- Return equipment to its proper place in good condition.
  - Anything lost, damaged, or destroyed should be repaired or replaced, particularly if it was borrowed.
- Settle financial matters for the activity with the purser.
  - This includes any bills paid or unpaid by the committee and any income collected or to be collected.
  - It is important to make this financial report in writing and attach any receipts and invoices.
- Finish by reporting suggestions for improving similar future activities to the boatswain.

1.4 Cruise and High Adventure Plans

Although the ship has a simple month-by-month procedure for program planning, it is sometimes necessary to do some long-range planning. Nearly every teenager, and certainly every Sea Scout, dreams of taking a cruise. It is, therefore, not merely a good idea, but a solemn responsibility that the ship's officers plan at least one long cruise each year.

Once a long cruise has been set, officers need to schedule things that must be carried out to ensure the success of the cruise. The cost of food and lodging, essential equipment, and transportation must be considered carefully for any high adventure. From such discussion will come a monthly plan of action.

Cruises are just one phase of the many high adventure opportunities available to Sea Scouts. There are unlimited camps, tours and visits, and special at-home features available to ships. Passport to High Adventure, No. 34245, describes how to plan, prepare for, and carry out a high-adventure experience. This guidebook includes a directory of councils with high-adventure programs and a list of councils with high-adventure bases.

A high adventure requires special planning and preparation. The ship's officers must be sure the members really want to participate in the activity, and that the decision is made far enough in advance to allow time for thorough preparations.

Plans are usually made months ahead. As the officers meet for each monthly planning session, some portion of the preparation for the high adventure is included in their planning. In this way, essential preparations are made for the coming experience.

A cruise or other high adventure must be the choice of most of the ship members. Unless they approve strongly of the event, they will not give it their wholehearted support. Therefore, involve as many members as possible from the very beginning to ensure success.

High adventures need the approval of the ship's committee. A long cruise or high adventure also needs a special committee made of adults and ship members. The main ingredient needed to make this committee flourish is enthusiasm. If each member of the committee is looking forward to the activity with high anticipation, you can be sure it will happen in a big way.

Check your equipment. Well in advance of any cruise or high adventure, all equipment, such as boats, camp gear, and trailers, should be carefully checked and put in good condition. All secondary equipment should be secured and ready for use.

A certain amount of training is necessary before almost every high adventure. Sometimes it involves the handling of a boat, other times a knowledge of the history and terrain of the area you are visiting. Long before a cruise or high adventure, decide what training must be conducted. This kind of preparation makes an activity safer, more exciting, and meaningful.

Finance in advance. Although most cruises or high adventures are somewhat costly, early planning permits Sea Scouts to earn and save their share of the expenses.

When plans for a cruise or high adventure involve extensive travel, investigate the possible use of military facilities along the way. Travel stopovers at Air Force, Army, or Navy bases make meals and accommodations available at very reasonable rates.

Be conservation minded. When planning a cruise, the Ship should consider *Leave No Trace* principles to minimize its impact on the environment and preserve the natural beauty of the areas it visits.

Be safety minded. For the protection of the Sea Scouts, every precaution should be taken to conduct cruises and high adventures safely. Safety must not be secondary. It must be a prime consideration from the very beginning of the high adventure planning experience. A ship must go prepared with the right skills and equipment. Leaders must always avoid unnecessary risks even though their decisions may make them unpopular. Each Sea Scout must be mature enough to take care of themselves and to realize they are also responsible for the safety of the entire ship.

Cruises and high adventures are usually rugged experiences. Everyone must be in good health before starting out. Use the Annual Health and Medical Record (No. 34605) to check each person in advance. Emphasize good health habits with those who are fit to go. Especially important to the health of the ship's company is good sanitation as it relates to cooking, drinking water, sleeping arrangements, and toilet facilities. The ship should also check with the council to make sure they have the insurance necessary to cover the group during the activity. If not, consult a local insurance agent on the advisability of carrying health and accident insurance.

Discipline is necessary. As a ship travels, it is in the public eye. Its conduct reflects its chartered organization and Scouting America. Safety is based on the assumption that each person will obey the leader as directed, especially in an emergency.

Cruising - whether by sail, paddle, motor, or pulling boat on a river, lake, or ocean - is the reason that 99 out of 100 of your shipmates joined. This calls for training and interesting activities based on reliable information.

1.4.1 Sample Plan - Long Cruise

Because cruising is a fundamental activity of Sea Scouts, we use it as an example here to show how a big production of this type requires advanced preparation and planning. Although the example used here is a cruise, the general idea applies to any other high adventure. The techniques that ensure an enjoyable and meaningful experience are basically the same.

October

- Select a long cruise to meet the desires of most of the ship members.
- Get ship committee approval and support.
- The skipper selects a cruise chair and together they select a committee.
- Determine adult leadership for the cruise.

November

- Plan the cruise in detail.
- Review the Seven Principals of *Leave No Trace*, outlined in 10.3 Leave No Trace, and apply them in planning the cruise.
- Determine a method of financing and, if necessary, select fundraising projects.
- Select and then secure consultants, if needed.
- If a cruise is to be aboard a vessel not owned or operated by the ship, make the necessary arrangements.

January

- Conduct fundraising project.
- Secure or repair cruise equipment.
- Gather information and then discuss historic background, wildlife, maps, and charts, etc., related to the cruise.

February

- Plan and conduct a meeting of the parents to ensure their understanding and wholehearted support of the cruise.

March

- Conduct special training, if necessary.
- Chart detailed cruise plans and, if advisable, make special arrangements regarding campsites, docking, supplies, etc.

May

- Put vessel(s) in shape and conduct a shakedown cruise.
- Make a final check of plans, equipment, supplies, and reservations.
- Firm up adult leadership.

July

- Cast off–have a good time–keep an accurate log–and remember, travel courtesy pays off.

Help in selecting resource material can be found in other chapters of this manual. Additional information can be secured from your local council, public library, boating enthusiasts, and Coast Guard Auxiliary personnel.

1.5 Written Communications

Written communication is an important part of our program. Keeping track of the ship's achievements and records gives Scouts the ability to see what they and previous Scouts before them accomplished and might give ideas for future meetings or activities.

1.5.1 Ship Logbook

Keeping the ship's records is the responsibility of the Yeoman. Minutes of ship and quarterdeck meetings, membership rosters, rosters of the ship's officers and adult leaders, records of attendance, advancement, etc., will provide a historical record of the ship. While much of this can be kept digitally in a cloud storage drive and on ship social media pages, a physical logbook is a place to keep photographs, clippings, program souvenirs, and notes on outstanding achievements by the members of the ship. When new members join the ship, they can sign the logbook during the admission ceremony.

1.5.2 Letters of Appreciation

Many people will help a ship over time. Donations of equipment will be made, consultants will give time and expertise, hospitality will be extended, and adult leaders will patiently guide and teach. A thoughtful letter of appreciation is always appropriate. Make sure to express thanks for specific help and mention the lasting effect the help will provide.

1.5.3 Publicizing Your Ship

Publicity is simple. Plan something, do something, and tell everyone that something happened. Sea Scouts regularly participate in fun, exciting, and unique events. Once you plan an event, post it on your ship webpage and social media pages, notify the local newspaper, the school newspaper, the local television station, and social media sites of the details. If reporters and photographers are not sent, make sure you send a press release to the media describing the event. When submitting an article, include the following:

Answer the five W’s: who, what, when, where, and why.

- Explain how the event occurred.
- Use sensory details, dialogue (if appropriate), and action verbs to show exactly what was observed.
- Present events in a clear, logical order.
- Capture the mood of the event.
- Put a contact name, email address, website, and phone number at the end of the article.
- Edit and proofread.
- Submit a picture showing the action of the event.

1.6 Recruiting New Members

The continuous addition of new members is essential for growth and running a successful program. Empowering youth to develop and run a good program is one of the best ways to recruit.

What works? If Scouts are having fun, word of mouth will bring in recruits. Youth sharing experiences with other youth, interacting with Scout troops, Cub Scout cruises, and volunteering at camporees are all ways to let others know about your ship. Be a presence in uniform wherever possible - award ceremonies, parades, festivals, outdoor shows, boat shows, and other council and civic events. Create a website with high-impact images and a calendar of events. Invite people to an open house and feed them with both food and ideas. The possibilities for letting others know about the dynamics of your program are endless. Just remember, the key is to make it fun.

The Sea Scout Marketing Toolbox has logos, photos, fliers, presentations, and best practices on recruiting, open houses, marketing campaigns, writing press releases and more to help you publicize and grow your ship.

1.7 Fundraising

Maintaining boats is a costly undertaking. Long cruises and high-adventure experiences require money. Before taking on a fundraising campaign, check with your council regarding any limitations, and file the council fundraising approval form.

Possibilities are unlimited, but there are tried and true methods of bringing money into the ship's treasury. Selling concessions, yard sales, silent auctions, car washes, spaghetti suppers, and pancake breakfasts are great fun and serve multiple purposes - publicity, recruitment, fundraising, and fun.

2.0 Leadership and Operations

Sea Scout Manual

2.0 Leadership and Operations

You and your fellow Scouts have joined Sea Scouts looking for new adventures and ways to get in, on, or under the water. To make the most of your Sea Scout experience, you need to know how to plan and organize your ship's activities effectively.

In this section, we'll take a deep dive into the organization of a Sea Scout ship and explain how responsibilities are divided. You'll learn how to run a "tight" ship with formality and ceremonies or operate informally, depending on what suits you best.

All the adult leaders - the Skipper, Mates, and Committee members - have one objective: to facilitate a program of activities that will accomplish the purposes of the Scout movement - character development, citizenship training, and personal fitness. At the same time, they know that the program must be youth-driven, reflecting the desire for fun and adventure promised to Sea Scouts.

2.1 The Organization of a Ship

Through the National Council, a council issues charters to organizations that organize Sea Scout ships, Venturing crews, Scout troops, and Cub Scout packs. By accepting the charter, an organization agrees to provide a ship with a good Sea Scout program under the best available leadership.

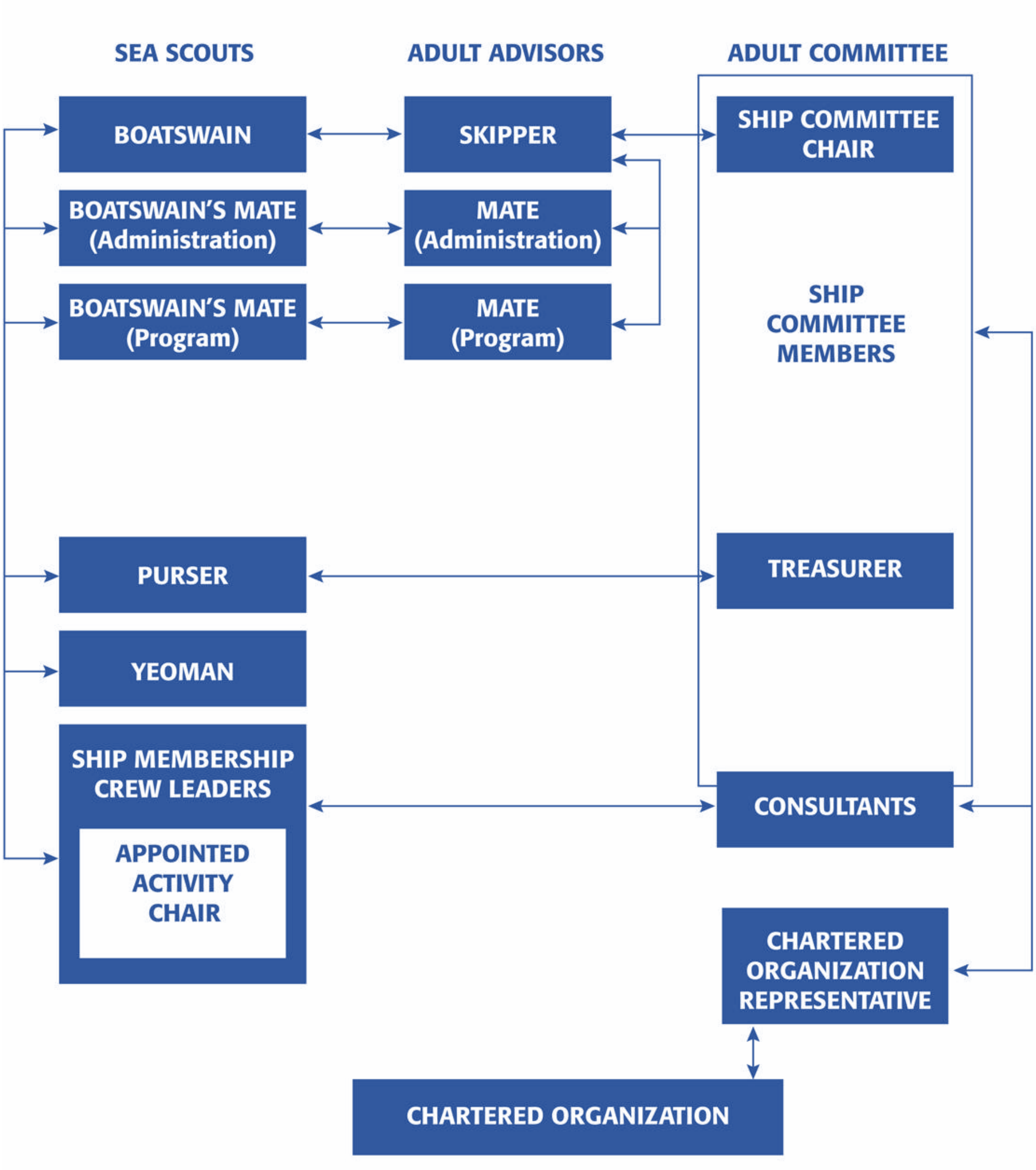
The ship committee is appointed by the chartered organization. Although a ship may register with a minimum of three committee members, it should have at least five or six active adults. The committee is responsible for the selection of the Skipper, Mates, and general program support of the ship.

Sea Scouts have a vast reservoir of experts at their disposal for program support. Those who provide specialized help are called *consultants*. They may come from inside the ship or from the community. Consultants have special skills or knowledge, equipment or facilities, or contacts that can help your ship.

Officers such as Boatswain, Yeoman, Purser, etc., are elected by the youth.

Program activities of a Sea Scout ship are carried out through activity committees, and specialists may be appointed by the Boatswain and Skipper to carry out assignments such as Photographer, Engineer, Outdoor Ethics Guide, or other specific skills.

Ship Leadership Organization Chart



2.2 Youth Officer Responsibilities

All officers of the ship have the responsibility to:

- Support the Boatswain and Officers in their leadership functions.
- Work closely with the Skipper and adult leaders.
- Lead and inspire by example.
- Stimulate participation and encourage teamwork.
- Recruit new members for the ship.
- Carry out other duties as assigned by the Boatswain.

Apprentice 3a. *Describe your ship's organization, including the youth and adult leadership positions.*

2.2.1 Boatswain

- Plan and conduct regular quarterdeck meetings.
- Give leadership to all ship meetings and activities.
- Share responsibilities of leading the ship with the other officers.
- Know the needs and interests of ship members.
- Watch out for individual ship members who may have problems, questions, or concerns.
- Direct the development of your ship's operational plan.
- Appoint ship members to serve as activity committee chairs.

2.2.2 Boatswain's Mate for Administration

- Give leadership to recruiting new members into the ship by:
- Coordinating plans for an annual open house to invite new members to join.
- Encouraging all ship members to bring new prospects to ship meetings and activities.
- Admitting new members into the ship. Be sure they are introduced and feel welcome.
- Follow up with ship members who seem to be losing interest in the ship.
- Recognize the achievements of ship members.
- Conduct opening and closing ceremonies for your ship.
- Stand in for the ship's boatswain when necessary.

2.2.3 Boatswain’s Mate for Program

- Collect activity and meeting ideas from ship members by:
  - Asking ship members what they would like their ship to do.
  - Surveying ship members on their interests.
  - Evaluating ship meetings and activities after they take place.
- Maintain an activities file of programs, activities, projects, and trips.
- Help ship activity chairs plan and conduct successful activities.

2.2.4 Yeoman

- Keep minutes of quarterdeck and ship meetings.
- Remind officers of assigned tasks.
- Keep membership records for the ship.
- Supervise ship’s correspondence.
- Keep all ship members informed about upcoming meetings, activities, and projects.

2.2.5 Purser

- Track income and expenditures of the ship with guidance from the adult committee treasurer.
- With the help of your ship’s Skipper and officers, set up a yearly budget.
- Make regular treasury reports at ship meetings.
- Obtain approval from ship officers and Skipper for expenditures.

2.2.6 Storekeeper

- Procure and arrange equipment maintenance.
- Track the coming and going of ship equipment.
- Keep an inventory of equipment.

2.2.7 Crew Leader

- Maintain the morale and conduct of the crew.
- Help train crew members.
- Delegate responsibilities to crew members.

2.2.8 Assistant Crew Leader

- Take over for crew leader when necessary.

2.2.9 Media Specialist

- Maintain ship website and social media.
- Keep all ship members informed about upcoming meetings, activities, and projects.
- Handle all publicity.

2.2.10 Specialist

- Perform duties defined by the ship leadership or ship bylaws. A specialist position may be established to address ship needs not covered by other youth officers such as:
- Engineering specialist for a ship that operates a large motor vessel.
- Electronics specialist who oversees the ship electronic suite and manages electronics training.
- Training specialist who meets the general and unique needs of the ship.
- Outdoor Ethics Guide who provides guidance on Leave no Trace principles.
- Is usually an older Sea Scout who might do one or more of the following:
- Works in tandem with the Boatswain to mentor new and younger Sea Scouts
- Provides training, coaching, and support to the members of the ship
- Serves as a guide to a crew that is made up of younger Sea Scouts.

2.2.11 Chaplain Aide

- Encourage unit members to do their duty to God.
- Participate in planning sessions with the ship's officers to ensure that a spiritual component is included in unit activities.
- With the Unit Chaplain, plan appropriate religious services. Invite the Unit Chaplain to visit a ship activity, eat with unit members, and conduct a worship service.
- Help plan and conduct an annual religious observance, preferably during Scout Week in February.
- Present an overview of the various religious emblems programs to the unit at least annually.
- Maintain the unit's religious emblems award progress chart.
- Assist the Unit Chaplain, or other appropriate adult, to plan and conduct a religious emblem recognition ceremony.

2.2.12 Den Chief

- Serves as the activity assistant for a local Cub Scout or Webelos Scout den.
- Meets with the den leader to review den and pack meeting plans.
- Aid the den leader as necessary.

2.2.13 Activity Chair

- Appointed by the Boatswain.
- Consults with the Boatswain and Skipper regarding the assigned activity.
- Plans, promotes, runs, and evaluates an event.
- Recruits and chairs a committee if necessary.

***Apprentice 3b.** Demonstrate your ability to identify insignia of youth and adult leadership positions. Explain the chain of command in your ship.*

2.3 Adult Leader Responsibilities

A trained adult leader in Sea Scouts must complete two basic courses:

1. Youth Protection Training
2. Sea Scout Adult Leader Basic Training (SSALBT)

The following supplemental training is also available:

- Introduction to On the Water Leadership Skills
- Advanced On the Water Leadership Skills
- Seabadge
- Additional training can be found at my.scouting.org.

2.3.1 Chartered Organization Representative (COR)

A chartered organization representative (COR) in Scouting America has many responsibilities, including:

- Serves as a liaison: The COR acts as a link between the organization and its Scouting units.
- Represents the organization: The COR is a voting member of the local council and a member of the district committee.
- Oversees the ship: The COR is part of each unit's Key 3, along with the Skipper and committee chair.
- Approves applications.
- Helps select leadership.

2.3.2 Committee Chairman

- Ensures that the ship has quality adult leadership who are recruited and trained.
- Advises the Skipper on Scouting America and chartered organization policies and carries out those policies and regulations.
- Supports leaders in carrying out the program.
- Responsible for finances, including approving expenses and ensuring disbursements are in line with the approved budget.
- Obtains, maintains, and properly cares for ship property.
- Runs committee meetings, including setting the agenda, keeping the discussion on topic, recognizing members to speak, and confirming decisions.
- Appoints an Advancement Chairman to encourage the youth to advance in rank and record their progress in Scoutbook.

2.3.3 Ship Committee

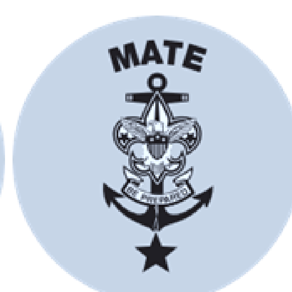
- Selects and recruits adult leaders and provides facilities for the ship meeting place.
- Supervises ship funds and property and helps obtain supplies and equipment.
- Sees that the ship operates in accordance with the policies and standards of the chartered organization, Scouting America, and the ship’s code and bylaws.
- Responsible for completing the annual charter renewal.

2.3.4 Skipper

- Serves as the key adult leader of a Sea Scout ship.
- Gives direction to the ship program while carrying out the most important duty - advising and coaching the officers as they plan, organize, and conduct the meetings and activities of the ship.
- Acts as a liaison between the adult leaders, the chartered organization, and the youth.

2.3.5 Mate

- Assists the Skipper as directed and assumes the Skipper’s duties if absent.



2.3.6 Chaplain

- Provides a spiritual tone for all ship meetings and activities.
- Assures members and leaders of your interest in them and their activities.
- Provides spiritual counseling service when needed or requested.
- Provides opportunities for youth to grow in their relationship with God and their fellow Scouts.
- Encourages Scouts to participate in the religious emblems program of their respective faith.

2.3.7 Council Commodore

- Leads the Council Sea Scout Committee in supporting the growth of Sea Scouting in the Council
- Additional information can be found in the *Council Commodore Manual*.

2.3.8 Unit Commissioner

- Helps the unit succeed by providing regular coaching, guidance, and support to the unit's adult leaders.

2.4 Quarterdeck Training

There are two key elements in quarterdeck training – Introduction to Leadership Skills for Ships (ILSS) and a needs assessment to establish the quarterdeck's goals.

ILSS is organized into three modules containing team-building games and challenges to enhance the leadership lessons in the syllabus. The course may be conducted over three days, one module at a time, or it may be part of an extended quarterdeck training. Many ships will plan a weekend retreat so newly elected officers can work some, play some, and develop the ship's operational plan. This orientation and planning enable the Skipper to focus the officers on program possibilities, setting goals, and establishing a calendar. Typically, ship's officers are mentored by their ship's committee counterpart.

The Skipper works with the Boatswain. The Secretary works with the Yeoman and the Boatswain's Mate of Administration to update the ship's database of contacts and determine processes for communication. The Treasurer works with the Purser. The ship's Advancement Chair can work with the Boatswain's Mate of Program to schedule quality training for the youth in the ship. The ship's bylaws and code of conduct should also be reviewed to make sure they continue to reflect the needs of the ship.

The experience level of the quarterdeck will determine the nature of the training. If the ship has young, inexperienced leadership, the quarterdeck training will likely focus on the roles of each officer. More experienced youth leadership will be able to spend more time on the attributes of leadership and refining the processes that run the ship.

2.5 Ship Management

The ship's officers are the elected Sea Scout youth leaders. They work with the Skipper and mates to give leadership to your ship. Elected officers generally serve terms of six months or a year. They are trained by the Skipper, Mates, and Committee to carry out their assignments.

Ship activities are selected by the officers based on the desires of the membership. For each activity, an Activity Chair is appointed. Activity Chairs may be invited to quarterdeck meetings by the Boatswain to present detailed plans of coming events and activities.

Monthly quarterdeck meetings are held by the officers of the ship. The Skipper and other adult officers attend this meeting. The Boatswain determines an agenda with the Skipper's approval and conducts quarterdeck meetings.

2.5.1 The Ship Code and Bylaws

A ship's code is a statement of ideals and conduct expectations developed and approved by the ship's members. Each ship's code is different and meets the needs of the ship. In addition to supplementing the Sea Promise, the ship's code should express:

- A statement of purpose
- Standards of conduct
- Goals

The entire ship should develop the ship's code since everyone is expected to subscribe to the results. The ship code should be reviewed annually and modified if necessary. New members should be required to sign the ship's code when they join the ship.

Bylaws define the operations of the ship.

2.5.1.1 Sample Ship Bylaws

1. **Objectives**
   - The objectives of Ship 1 are:
   - To learn
   - To get on the water
   - To share responsibilities
   - To have fun
2. **Membership**
   Membership shall be open to all young adults living in the surrounding area who are 14 years of age or 13 years of age and have completed the eighth grade and under 21 years of age. All members must be registered as Sea Scouts and agree to and sign the ship code.
3. **Officers**
   - The elected officers shall be Boatswain, two Boatswain's Mates, Yeoman, Purser and Storekeeper.

- The normal term of office shall be for one year starting on September 1. Elections shall be held in August.
- No member shall serve more than two successive terms in the same office.
- The Boatswain shall appoint a nominating committee that shall consist of three members. The committee shall present a complete slate of candidates who have agreed, if elected, to serve to the best of their abilities.
- On the day of the elections, nominations may be presented from the floor by any member. If the nomination is seconded and the candidate agrees to serve, they must be included on the ballot.
- All contested ballots shall be secret.
- Nominees must be willing and able to serve in the position elected for the full term of the office.
- Crew Leaders and Assistant Crew Leaders should be elected by their own crews using the same method following the Ship officer elections.

4. **Ship Business**
   Voting on all issues will be by simple majority, except for changes or amendments to the bylaws, which will require a two-thirds vote of the total active membership. A quorum shall consist of one more than the majority of members for votes on routine business.
5. **General Meetings**
   General meetings will be held at least once a month, during the third week. Special meetings may be called by the boatswain as needed.
6. **Quarterdeck Meetings**
   Quarterdeck (Officer) meetings will be held at least once a month. Special meetings may be called by the Boatswain as needed.
7. **Communications**
   The ship will keep a website and send an email update the first week of every month. Included in this email will be a ship update, a schedule of events, and other supplemental information of interest to the membership.
8. **Dues**
   Dues will be $100 per year. This does not include Scouting America and registration fees. Dues are payable in January. Dues will be prorated for new members.
9. **Money Earning**
   Dues will be supplemented by fundraising activities involving the participation of all members. Members not participating will not be entitled to the benefits of the money derived from the activities. All fundraising projects must be approved by the Skipper and meet the requirements listed on the Scouting America Unit Money-Earning Application, No. 34427.
10. **Activities**
    It shall be the intention of the ship's leadership to provide monthly activities, including on the water activities as the weather allows, and an annual week-long cruise.

2.5.1.2 Sample Ship Code of Conduct

Declaration

I am a responsible young adult! As I continue to demonstrate this responsibility, I desire and demand from my peers and advisors, the respect to which I am entitled. I expect to be judged and held accountable for my words and actions both within and outside the ship. Accordingly, on my honor I pledge to always conduct myself in keeping with the guidelines established by the following code.

Code of Conduct

As a member of this ship, I am expected to:

- Uphold the Scout Oath and Law.
- Live the Sea Scout Promise.
- Have Fun!

When participating as a member of this ship I will not:

- Harm another – verbally or physically.
- Show disrespect for leaders, shipmates, or self.
- Spend excessive time on my cell phone or other electronic device.
- Pair off with a member of another sex.
- Engage in public displays of affection.
- Leave an activity without a leader's knowledge or consent.
- Use offensive or vulgar language.
- Use tobacco, alcohol, or other drugs.

Consequences for inappropriate actions:

1. Warning by an Officer
2. Warning by Skipper
3. Parents will be called and suspension from the next activity
4. Removal from Ship membership (secret ballot vote, 2/3 in favor of removal)

2.6 The National Quarterdeck

The National Quarterdeck (NQD) is Sea Scout's youth leadership team. The National Boatswain is the leading youth member of the National Quarterdeck and serves the Sea Scout program and Scouting of America. The NQD is generally made up of the National Boatswain, National Boatswain's Mates, and other youth leadership positions. Applications are found on seascout.org each year. The National Quarterdeck serves a term from June 1 - May 31 of the following year. The National Boatswain is a member of the National Sea Scout Committee. A listing of current and past National Boatswains can be found on seascout.org.

National Quarterdeck Qualifications

Any Sea Scout that meets the qualification requirements can apply to serve on the National Quarterdeck. Those qualifications being:

1. Be an active registered member of a Sea Scout Ship. If you are 18 or over, you must have submitted an adult application through your ship to your local Council and have completed Scouting America's Youth Protection Training.
2. Be recommended and approved by your Council Scout Executive.
3. Be a current primary registered Sea Scout in your council. Must be a registered youth in Sea Scouting during your complete term of office.
4. If selected, you must not reach the age of 21 before May 31 of the following year.

Serving on the NQD is a great opportunity for youth members to help promote, support, and grow the Sea Scout program.

Selection Process

After reviewing the applications, the youth led National Boatswain Selection Committee will select applicants to be interviewed for National Boatswain. The National Quarterdeck and other officers are selected by the National Boatswain with advice from the National Sea Scout Program Chair

3.0 Safety

Sea Scout Manual

3.0 Safety

Sea Scouts vow to guard against water accidents in the first phrase of the Sea Promise. Skill, knowledge, and judgment are the principal elements of safety: skill in handling the vessel under all conditions, knowledge of equipment and its proper use, judgment that exercises caution in speed, bad weather, or rough seas. Despite preparation, some dangers in and on the water cannot be avoided. Sea Scouts and their leaders must minimize danger with planning, neutralize danger with good decisions, and overcome danger with wise actions.

3.1 Accident Prevention: Elements of Safe Swim Defense and Safety Afloat

The primary emphasis of each plan is accident prevention. **Qualified supervision** and **discipline** guard against unsafe activities and ensure that each point is properly implemented. A **personal health review** addresses medical complications. **Ability groups, swimming ability**, and **skill proficiency** match activities, areas, and equipment to abilities. **Safe swimming area; equipment**, including life jackets; and **planning** concern safe physical arrangements.

Each plan covers preparation, including recognition and response, should an accident occur. The **buddy system, lookouts**, and **response personnel** provide eyes and ears alert for trouble and ensure that someone is available to provide safe and effective assistance. They are integral parts of emergency action plans.

3.1.1 Safe Swim Defense

Scouting America groups shall use Safe Swim Defense for all swimming activities. Adult leaders supervising a swimming activity must have completed Safe Swim Defense training within the previous two years. Safe Swim Defense standards apply anywhere Scouts are swimming: at backyard, hotel, apartment, and public pools, at established waterfront swim areas such as beaches at state parks and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers lakes, and at all temporary swimming areas such as a lake, river, or ocean.

Safe Swim Defense does not apply to boating or water activities such as waterskiing or swamped-boat drills that are covered by Safety Afloat guidelines. Safe Swim Defense applies to non-swimming activities whenever participants enter water over knee deep or when submersion is likely, for example, when fording a stream, seining for bait, or constructing a bridge as a pioneering project.

Snorkeling in open water requires each participant to have demonstrated knowledge and skills equivalent to those for the Snorkeling Award in addition to following Safe Swim Defense. Scuba activities must be conducted in accordance with the Scouting America scuba policy found in the Guide to Safe Scouting. Because of concerns with hyperventilation, competitive underwater swimming events are not permitted in Scouting.

Safe Swim Defense training may be obtained from my.scouting.org, at council summer camps, and at other council and district training events. Confirmation of training is required on tour and activity plans for trips that involve swimming. Additional information on various swimming venues is provided in the Aquatics Supervision guide, No. 34346, available from local council service centers. Additional Aquatics resources can be found at https://www.scouting.org/outdoor-programs/aquatics/forms/

Apprentice 4b. *Discuss the Scouting America Safe Swim Defense plan and explain how it is used to protect Sea Scouts and other groups during swimming activities.*

3.1.1.1 Qualified Supervision

All swimming activity must be supervised by a mature and conscientious adult age 21 or older who understands and knowingly accepts responsibility for the well-being and safety of those in his or her care, and who is trained in and committed to compliance with the eight points of Scouting America Safe Swim Defense. It is strongly recommended that all units have at least one adult or older youth member currently trained in Scouting America Aquatics Supervision: Swimming and Water Rescue or Scouting America Lifeguard to assist in planning and conducting all swimming activities.

3.1.1.2 Personal Health Review

A complete health history is required of all participants as evidence of fitness for swimming activities. Forms for minors must be signed by a parent or legal guardian. Participants should be asked to relate any recent incidents of illness or injury just prior to the activity. Supervision and protection should be adjusted to anticipate any potential risks associated with individual health conditions.

For significant health conditions, the adult supervisor should require an examination by a physician and consult with the parent, guardian, or caregiver for appropriate precautions.

3.1.1.3 Safe Area

All swimming areas must be carefully inspected and prepared for safety prior to each activity. Water depth, quality, temperature, movement, and clarity are important considerations. Hazards must be eliminated or isolated by conspicuous markings and discussed with participants.

Controlled Access: There must be safe areas for all participating ability groups to enter and leave the water. Swimming areas of appropriate depth must be defined for each ability group. The entire area must be within easy reach of designated rescue personnel. The area must be clear of boat traffic, surfing, or other non-swimming activities.

Bottom Conditions and Depth: The bottom must be clear of trees and debris. Abrupt changes in depth are not allowed in the non-swimmer area. Isolated underwater hazards should be marked with floats. Rescue personnel must be able to easily reach the bottom. The maximum recommended water depth in clear water is 12 feet. The maximum water depth in turbid water is 8 feet.

Visibility: Underwater swimming and diving are prohibited in turbid water. Turbid water exists when a swimmer treading water cannot see his feet. Swimming at night is allowed only in areas with water clarity and lighting sufficient for good visibility both above and below the surface.

Diving and elevated entry: Diving is permitted only into clear, unobstructed water from heights no greater than 40 inches. The water depth must be at least 7 feet. Bottom depth contours below diving boards and elevated surfaces require greater water depths and must conform to state regulations. Persons should not jump into water from heights greater than they are tall and should jump only into water chest deep or greater with minimal risk from contact with the bottom. No elevated entry is permitted where the person must clear any obstacle, including land.

Water temperature: Comfortable water temperature for swimming is near 80 degrees. Activity in water at 70 degrees or less should be of limited duration and closely monitored for negative effects of chilling.

Water quality: Bodies of stagnant, foul water; areas with significant algae or foam, and areas polluted by livestock or waterfowl should be avoided. Comply with any signs posted by local health authorities. Swimming is not allowed in swimming pools with green, murky, or cloudy water.

Moving water: Participants should be able to easily regain and maintain their footing in currents or waves. Areas with large waves, swiftly flowing currents, or moderate currents that flow toward the open sea or into areas of danger should be avoided.

Weather: Participants should be moved from the water to a position of safety whenever lightning or thunder threatens. Wait at least 30 minutes after the last lightning flash or thunder before leaving shelter. Take precautions to prevent sunburn, dehydration, and hypothermia.

Life jacket use: Swimming in clear water over 12 feet deep, in turbid water over 8 feet deep, or in flowing water may be allowed if all participants wear properly fitted, Coast

Guard–approved life jackets and the supervisor determines that swimming with life jackets is safe under the circumstances.

3.1.1.4 Response Personnel (Lifeguards)

Every swimming activity must be closely and continuously monitored by a trained rescue team on the alert for and ready to respond during emergencies. Professionally trained lifeguards satisfy this need when provided by a regulated facility or tour operator. When lifeguards are not provided by others, the adult supervisor must assign at least two rescue personnel, with additional numbers to maintain a ratio of one rescuer to every 10 participants. The supervisor must provide instruction and rescue equipment and assign areas of responsibility as outlined in Aquatics Supervision, No. 34346. The qualified supervisor, the designated response personnel, and the lookout work together as a safety team. An emergency action plan should be formulated and shared with participants as appropriate.

3.1.1.5 Lookout

The lookout continuously monitors the conduct of the swim, identifies any departures from Safe Swim Defense guidelines, alerts response personnel as needed, and monitors the weather and environment. The lookout should have a clear view of the entire area but be close enough for easy verbal communication. The lookout must have a sound understanding of Safe Swim Defense but is not required to perform rescues. The adult supervisor may serve simultaneously as the lookout but must assign the task to someone else if engaged in activities that preclude focused observation.

3.1.1.6 Ability Groups

All youth and adult participants are designated as swimmers, beginners, or non-swimmers based on standardized Scouting America swim classification tests. Each group is assigned a specific swimming area with depths consistent with those abilities. Each adult and youth must complete the Scouting America swim test to be certified as a swimmer each year or they are considered non-swimmers.

Swimmers must pass this test: Jump feet first into water over the head in depth. Level off and swim 75 yards in a strong manner using one or more of the following strokes: sidestroke, breaststroke, trudgen, or crawl, then swim 25 yards using an easy resting backstroke. The 100 yards must be completed in one swim without stops and must include at least one sharp turn. After completing the swim, rest by floating.

Beginners must pass this test: Jump feetfirst into water over the head in depth, level off, and swim 25 feet on the surface. Stop, turn sharply, resume swimming, and return to the starting place.

Anyone who has not completed either the beginner or swimmer tests is classified as a non-swimmer.

The non-swimmer area should be no more than waist to chest deep and should be enclosed by physical boundaries such as the shore, a pier, or lines. The enclosed beginner area should contain water of standing depth and may extend to depths just over the head. The swimmer area may be up to 12 feet in depth in clear water and should be defined by floats or other markers.

Note: Any adult leader is allowed to conduct Scouting America swim tests for their youth according to the procedures outlined in Aquatics Supervision, No. 3434.

Ordinary 5a. *Discuss Scouting America Safety Afloat with an adult leader or a Quartermaster candidate.*

3.1.1.7 Buddy System

Every participant is paired with another. Buddies stay together, monitor each other, and alert the safety team if either needs assistance or is missing. Buddies check into and out of the area together.

Buddies are normally in the same ability group and remain in their assigned area. If they are not of the same ability group, they must swim in the area assigned to the buddy with the lesser ability.

A buddy check reminds participants of their obligation to monitor their buddies and indicates how closely the buddies are keeping track of each another. Roughly every 10 minutes, or as needed to keep the buddies together, the lookout, or other person designated by the supervisor, gives an audible signal, such as a single whistle blast, and a call for "Buddies." Buddies are expected to raise each other's hand before completion of a slow, audible count to 10. Buddies who take longer to find each other should be reminded of their responsibility for the other's safety.

Once everyone has a buddy, a count is made by area and compared with the total number known to be in the water. After the count is confirmed, a signal is given to resume swimming.

3.1.1.8 Discipline

Rules are effective only when followed. All participants should know, understand, and respect the rules and procedures for safe swimming provided by Safe Swim Defense guidelines. Applicable rules should be discussed prior to the outing and reviewed for all participants at the water's edge just before the swimming activity begins. People are more likely to follow directions when they know the reasons for rules and procedures. Consistent, impartially applied rules supported by skill and good judgment provide steppingstones to a safe, enjoyable outing.

3.1.2 Safety Afloat

Scout groups shall use Safety Afloat for all boating activities. Adult leaders supervising activities afloat must have completed Safety Afloat training within the previous two years. Safety Afloat standards apply to the use of canoes, kayaks, rowboats, rafts, floating tubes, sailboats, motorboats including waterskiing, and other small craft, but do not apply to transportation on large commercial vessels such as ferries and cruise ships.

Parasailing (being towed airborne behind a boat using a parachute), kitesurfing (using a wakeboard towed by a kite), and recreational use of personal watercraft (small sit-on-top motorboats propelled by water jets) are not authorized Scouting America activities.

Safety Afloat training may be obtained from my.scouting.org, at council summer camps, and at other council and district training events. Confirmation of training is required on tour and activity plans for trips that involve boating. Additional guidance on appropriate skill levels and training resources is provided in the Aquatics Supervision guide, available from local council service centers.

3.1.2.1 Qualified Supervision

All activity afloat must be supervised by a mature and conscientious adult age 21 or older who understands and knowingly accepts responsibility for the wellbeing and safety of those in his or her care and who is trained in and committed to compliance with the nine points of Scouting America Safety Afloat. That supervisor must be skilled in the safe operation of the craft for the specific activity, knowledgeable in accident prevention, and prepared for emergency situations. If the adult with Safety Afloat training lacks the necessary boat operating and safety skills, then they may serve as the supervisor only if assisted by other adults, camp staff personnel, or professional tour guides who have the appropriate skills.

Additional leadership is provided in ratios of one trained adult, staff member, or guide per 10 participants. At least one leader must be trained in first aid including CPR. Any swimming done in conjunction with the activity afloat must comply with Scouting America Safe Swim Defense standards. It is strongly recommended that all units have at least one adult or older youth member currently trained in Scouting America Aquatics Supervision: Paddle Craft Safety to assist in the planning and conduct of all activities afloat.

3.1.2.2 Personal Health Review

A complete health history is required of all participants as evidence of fitness for boating activities. Forms for minors must be signed by a parent or legal guardian. Participants should be asked to relate any recent incidents of illness or injury just prior to the activity. Supervision and protection should be adjusted to anticipate any potential risks associated with individual health conditions.

For significant health conditions, the adult supervisor should require an examination by a physician and consult with parent, guardian, or caregiver for appropriate precautions.

3.1.2.3 Swimming Ability

Operation of any boat on a float trip is limited to youth and adults who have completed the Scouting America swimmer classification test. Swimmers must complete the following test, which should be administered annually:

Jump feetfirst into water over the head in depth. Level off and swim 75 yards in a strong manner using one or more of the following strokes: sidestroke, breaststroke, trudgen, or crawl; then swim 25 yards using an easy, resting backstroke. The 100 yards must be completed in one swim without stops and must include at least one sharp turn. After completing swim, rest by floating.

For activity afloat, those not classified as a swimmer are limited to multi-person craft during outings or float trips on calm water with little likelihood of capsizing or falling overboard. They may operate a fixed-seat rowboat or pedal boat accompanied by a buddy who is a swimmer. They may paddle or ride in a canoe or other paddlecraft with an adult swimmer skilled in that craft as a buddy.

They may ride as part of a group on a motorboat or sailboat operated by a skilled adult.

3.1.2.4 Life Jackets

Properly fitted U.S. Coast Guard–approved life jackets must be worn by all persons engaged in boating activity (rowing, canoeing, sailing, boardsailing, motorboating, waterskiing, rafting, tubing, and kayaking). Type III life jackets are recommended for general recreational use. For vessels over 20 feet in length, life jackets need not be worn when participants are below deck or on deck when the qualified supervisor aboard the vessel determines that it is prudent to abide by less-restrictive state and federal regulations concerning the use and storage of life jackets, for example, when a cruising vessel with safety rails is at anchor. All participants not classified as swimmers must wear a life jacket when on deck underway.

Life jackets need not be worn when an activity falls under Safe Swim Defense guidelines, for example when an inflated raft is used in a pool or when snorkeling from an anchored craft.

[Sea Scout Safety Moment: Life Jackets]

Apprentice 5a. *Explain the uses, advantages, and disadvantages of the various types of Coast Guard–approved life jackets.*

3.1.2.5 Buddy System

All participants in an activity afloat are paired as buddies who are always aware of each other's situation and prepared to sound an alarm and lend assistance immediately when needed. When several craft are used on a float trip, each boat on the water should have a "buddy boat." All buddy pairs must be accounted for at regular intervals during the activity and checked off the water by the qualified supervisor at the conclusion of the activity. Buddies either ride in the same boat or stay near one another in single-person craft.

3.1.2.6 Skill Proficiency

Everyone in an activity afloat must have sufficient knowledge and skill to participate safely. Passengers should know how their movement affects boat stability and have a basic understanding of self-rescue. Boat operators must meet government requirements, be able to maintain control of their craft, know how changes in the environment influence that control, and undertake activities only within personal and group capabilities.

- Content of training exercises should be appropriate for the age, size, and experience of the participants and should cover basic skills on calm water of limited extent before proceeding to advanced skills involving current, waves, high winds, or extended distance. At a minimum, instructors for canoes and kayaks should be able to demonstrate the handling and rescue skills required for Scouting America Aquatics Supervision: Paddle Craft Safety. All instructors must have at least one assistant who can recognize and respond appropriately if the instructor's safety is compromised.
- Anyone engaged in recreational boating using human-powered craft on flatwater ponds or controlled lake areas free of other activities should be instructed in basic safety procedures prior to launch and allowed to proceed after they have demonstrated the ability to control the boat adequately to return to shore at will.
- For recreational sailing, at least one person aboard should be able to demonstrate basic sailing proficiency (tacking, reaching, and running) sufficient to return the boat to the launch point. Extended cruising on a large sailboat requires either a professional captain or an adult leader with sufficient experience to qualify as a bareboat skipper.
- Motorboats may be operated by youth, subject to state requirements, only when accompanied in the boat by an experienced leader or camp staff member who meets state requirements for motorboat operation. Extended cruising on a large powerboat requires either a professional captain or an adult leader with similar qualifications.
- Before a unit using human-powered craft controlled by youth embarks on a float trip or excursion that covers an extended distance or lasts longer than four hours, each participant should receive a minimum of three hours' training and supervised practice or demonstrate proficiency in maneuvering the craft effectively over a 100-yard course and recovering from a capsize.
- Unit trips on whitewater above Class II must be done with either a professional guide in each craft or after all participants have received American Canoe Association or equivalent training for the class of water and type of craft involved.

3.1.2.7 Planning

Proper planning is necessary to ensure a safe, enjoyable exercise afloat. All plans should include a scheduled itinerary, notification of appropriate parties, communication arrangements, contingencies in case of foul weather or equipment failure, and emergency response options.

- **Preparation**: Any boating activity requires access to the proper equipment and transportation of gear and participants to the site. Determine what state and local regulations are applicable. Get permission to use or cross private property. Determine whether personal resources will be used or whether outfitters will supply equipment, food, and shuttle services. Lists of group and personal equipment and supplies must be compiled and checked. Even short trips require selecting a route, checking water levels, and determining alternative pull-out locations. Changes in water level, especially on moving water, may pose significant, variable safety concerns. Obtain current charts and information about the waterway and consult those who have traveled the route recently.

- **Float plan**: Complete the preparation by writing a detailed itinerary, or float plan, noting put-in and pull-out locations and waypoints, along with the approximate time the group should arrive at each. Travel time should be estimated generously.
- **Notification:** File the float plan with parents, the local council office if traveling on running water, and local authorities if appropriate. Assign a member of the unit committee to alert authorities if prearranged check-ins are overdue. Make sure everyone is promptly notified when the trip is concluded.
- **Weather**: Check the weather forecast just before setting out and keep an alert weather eye. Anticipate changes and bring all craft ashore when rough weather threatens. Wait at least 30 minutes before resuming activities after the last incidence of thunder or lightning.
- **Contingencies**: Planning must identify possible emergencies and other circumstances that could force a change of plans. Develop alternative plans for each situation. Identify local emergency resources such as EMS systems, sheriff departments, or ranger stations. Check your primary communication system and identify backups, such as the nearest residence to a campsite. Cell phones and radios may lose coverage, run out of power, or suffer water damage.

USCG Downloadable Float Plan

3.1.2.8 Equipment

All craft must be suitable for the activity, be seaworthy, and float if capsized. All craft and equipment must meet regulatory standards, be properly sized, and be in good repair. Spares, repair materials, and emergency gear must be carried as appropriate. Life jackets and paddles must be sized to the participants.

Properly designed and fitted helmets must be worn when running rapids rated above Class II. Emergency equipment such as throw bags, signal devices, flashlights, heat sources, first-aid kits, radios, and maps must be ready for use.

Spare equipment, repair materials, extra food and water, and dry clothes should be appropriate for the activity. All gear should be stowed to prevent loss and water damage. For float trips with multiple craft, the number of craft should be sufficient to carry the party if a boat is disabled, and critical supplies should be divided among the craft.

3.1.2.9 Discipline

Rules are effective only when followed. All participants should know, understand, and respect the rules and procedures for safe boating activities provided by Safety Afloat guidelines. Applicable rules should be discussed prior to the outing and reviewed for all participants near the boarding area just before the activity afloat begins. People are more likely to follow directions when they know the reasons for rules and procedures.

Consistent, impartially applied rules supported by skill and good judgment provide steppingstones to a safe, enjoyable outing.

3.2 Safety Equipment

The law requires that boaters carry specific safety equipment, and bigger boats require more equipment. Federal requirements for all boats, including those powered by oars, paddle, and sail only are:

- One readily accessible Type I, II, or III wearable floatation device for each person on board.

For power boats under 16 feet and sailboats 14 feet to 16 feet:

- Certificate of number (state registration) must be on board when the vessel is in use.
- Current state registration numbers not less than 3 inches in height fixed on each side of the forward half of the vessel with the state validation sticker affixed within 6 inches of the registration number.
- One B-1 fire extinguisher (if there is an enclosed engine compartment)
- A means of making an “efficient” sound signal (e.g., handheld air horn, athletic whistle). The human voice is not acceptable.
- All gasoline-powered inboard/outboard or inboards must be equipped with an approved backfire flame control device.
- Boats built after August 1, 1980, with gasoline engines in closed compartments must have a powered ventilation system. If built after August 1, 1978, the boat with a closed fuel tank compartment must display a “certificate of compliance.” If the boat was built before either date, it must have natural or power ventilation in the fuel tank compartment.
- Navigational lights are to be displayed from sunset to sunrise and in or near areas of limited visibility.
- If a toilet is installed, it must be a Coast Guard approved device. Overboard discharge outlets must be capable of being sealed.

Boats over 16 feet must add:

- A Type IV throwable flotation device
- One orange distress flag and one electric distress light, or (2) three handheld or floating orange smoke signals and one electric distress light, or (3) three combination red flares (handheld, meteor, or parachute type)

Boats over 26 feet add:

- One B-2 or two B-1 fire extinguishers. A fixed system equals one B-1.
- A sound-signaling appliance capable of producing an efficient sound signal, audible for one-half mile with a four- to six-second duration.
- Oil pollution placard at least 5 by 8 inches placed in the machinery space or at the bilge station.
- Garbage placard at least 4 by 9 inches made of durable material displayed in a conspicuous place reminding all on board of discharge restrictions.

Boats 39.4 feet or greater add:

- Copy of the *Navigation Rules* (inland only)
- A bell with a clapper (bell size not less than 7.9 inches in diameter at the mouth)

Along with federal requirements, Scouting America requires additional safety equipment. Cruising boats must carry a first-aid kit, appropriate charts, and a marine VHF radio. Sea Scout vessels must also have an annual Vessel Safety Check.

Ordinary 5b. *Describe the safety equipment required by law for your ship's primary vessel.*

There are some other items every prepared Sea Scout should have on board when on the water. An anchor and a spare, a boat hook, charts, compass, spare parts, hardware, tools, extra line, dewatering device (pump or bailer), fuel, and alternate propulsion (paddles) are absolutes. For the safety and comfort of your crew and passengers, always carry plenty of water, extra food, extra clothing, extra hats, and plenty of sunscreen.

Able 5a. *Develop and use a customized vessel safety checklist for a boat used by your ship.*

Many vessels carry an Emergency Position-Indicating Radio Beacon (EPIRB) to signal maritime distress. This tracking transmitter interfaces with the international satellite system for search and rescue (often shortened to "SAR"). When activated, an EPIRB sends out a distress signal that can be uniquely identified. It gives the identification and location of the registered user. By using the initial position given via the satellite system, search and rescue aircraft, and ground search parties can quickly target the distress signals from the beacons and render aid to the boater in need.

Apprentice 5b. *Identify visual day and night marine distress signals and know their location and the proper use for your ship's vessel(s).*

Paddle craft are required to have a life jacket aboard for each individual and a sound- producing device such as a whistle. In periods of reduced visibility - nighttime or foggy conditions - a flashlight or other form of all-round white light is also required.

In addition to required equipment, useful optional equipment includes: a distress signal flag (preferred for most use over flares), a heaving line, flotation bags, a bilge pump, paddle float and footstrap, paddle leash, first-aid kit, and repair materials such as duct tape. Develop your own checklist based on your local conditions and needs.

Stand-up paddleboards, or SUPs, are officially “vessels” and are included in the life jacket requirement. SUPs should also be equipped with an appropriate ankle leash and operators should wear suitable footwear.

[Sea Scout Safety Moment: 10 Boating Essentials]

3.2.1 Vessel Safety Check

To develop a safety checklist for any boat, the easiest place to start is with the list used by the U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary or America’s Boating Club for vessel safety checks.

An annual Vessel Safety Check is required by Scouting America for all Sea Scout vessels. The VSC is a free bow-to-stern inspection of a boat by a qualified member of the U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary or America’s Boating Club. This is one of the best ways to learn about potential problems that might violate state or federal laws or create a danger when out on the water.

VSCs are customized for the variety of watercraft recreational boaters use. The list includes all the safety equipment required by law. The list also includes recommended items such as marine VHF radio, dewatering device and backup, anchor, and dock lines, etc. The VSC examiner will check to see that the decks are free of hazards, the bilge is clean, and the visible hull is generally sound.

The electrical system will be examined to be sure it is in good working order with wiring in good condition and batteries secured with terminals covered. Fuel systems will be checked for corrosion and proper ventilation. Discussion with the examiner will also include topics such as responsibility for accident reporting, offshore operations, survival, first-aid tips, fueling, and safe boating classes.

The VSC examiner usually takes about 20 minutes and concludes the visit by giving you a copy of the VSC form and a VSC decal if the vessel successfully meets all the requirements.

Sea Scouts across the nation use an assortment of vessels to ply a variety of waters. Begin with the downloadable list used by the U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary and America's Boating Club to develop a vessel safety checklist for your ship. Add safety items that are unique to your vessel, your state law, and your waters. Each time the ship prepares to get underway, every item on the ship's customized VSC should be examined.

To schedule a vessel safety check go to http://nws.cgaux.org or https://americasboatingclub.org/index.php/scheduling-a-free-vessel-safety-check.

3.2.2 Life Jackets and Flotation Devices

Life jackets and flotation devices are designed to save your life, and the U.S. Coast Guard requires that all recreational boats must carry one wearable life jacket for every person aboard. The Guide to Safe Scouting requires that, "Properly fitted U.S. Coast Guard–approved life jackets must be worn by all persons engaged in boating activity (rowing, canoeing, sailing, boardsailing, motorboating, waterskiing, rafting, tubing, and kayaking). Type III life jackets are recommended for general recreational use." Sea Scouts and adult leaders must know which type is appropriate for every circumstance, make sure it is in good and serviceable condition, and properly fits the intended user. Life jackets, regardless of type, must be readily accessible and every passenger must be able to put them on in a reasonable amount of time in an emergency.

U.S. Coast Guard Life Jacket Types

Type I offshore life jackets are designed to provide protection and flotation for extended periods in the sea. They must be carried on all vessels going offshore. Type I's have flotation collars around the neck and head, are adjustable to fit various sizes, and can have several kinds of survival gear attached.

Type II life jackets are the near shore "buoyant vests" that are sold in most boating shops. They are useful on lakes and bays. They have less flotation than offshore type Is and are therefore less bulky. Coast Guard–approved Type I and II lifesaving jackets are required to float a person in an upright, slightly backward position to keep his or her face out of the water if unconscious.

Type III life vests are flotation aids. Some are "trimmed down" back and chest, and some are inflatable. The vest type covers your chest but has no neck support. Some inflatables inflate automatically when a person goes into the water, but others must be manually inflated. While inflatables are much more comfortable to wear, they must be worn to count toward the number of life jackets on board. Inflatables are expensive to buy and must be serviced at about half the original cost if they are used.

Throwable **Type IV** floatable devices must be carried on boats over 16 feet in length. There are many kinds ranging from the classic life ring or ring buoy to cockpit cushions designed to do double duty as a life preserver. A Type IV should be kept at hand when on the water just in case someone goes overboard.

Type V life jackets are special-use jackets designed for specific water activities. They can be used instead of other types of life jackets only if they are used according to the approved condition listed on the label. This type of life jacket includes deck suits, work vests, board-sailing vests, and inflatable vests.

Remember, only U.S. Coast Guard–approved equipment (Types I, II, or III) is acceptable in Scouting aquatics.

[Sea Scout Safety Moment: Life Jackets]

[America's Boating Channel: Choosing the Best Life Jacket]

3.2.3 Visual Marine Distress Signals

Federal law and the Navigation Rules require mariners to carry specific equipment and signaling devices to attract attention if there is an emergency. Note: Distress signals should never be used in jest. Their use can trigger a series of events that can cost others time, effort, and even physical risk. By law, distress signals may only be displayed when a life is in danger.

Recreational boats less than 16 feet in length; open sailboats less than 26 feet in length without a motor; manually propelled boats; and boats participating in organized events such as races, regattas, or parades are not required to carry day signals. If they are operating between sunset and sunrise, however, they must carry night signals.

Pyrotechnic visual distress signals must be Coast Guard-approved, in serviceable condition and readily available. Approved devices include red flares (hand-held or aerial), orange smoke (hand-held or floating), and aerial red meteor or parachute flares.

Coast Guard-approved non-pyrotechnic devices include the orange distress flag for day and the electric distress light that automatically flashes the international SOS signal

(**. . .** _ _ _ **. . .**) for night.

All distress signals have advantages and disadvantages. Pyrotechnic devices work well to get the attention of nearby vessels, but they must be kept dry, they expire, and they do not last very long. They also can cause harm to a vessel or the person discharging them. An orange flag may seem like a lot of trouble, but long after the last flare is used, a 3-by-3-foot orange flag with a black disk and square on it will still be visible when waved on a paddle or boat hook or flown from the mast.

Other recognized visual distress signals include the code flags “N” over “C”; a ball over or under a square hanging from the halyard; waving the arms; a signal fire; the flash from a mirror; a continuous horn, bell, or whistle; the national ensign flying upside down; or a gun fired at one-minute intervals.

It is hoped the distress signals on your boat will never be used, but to be prepared, store them in a watertight container that is clearly marked and accessible.

[America’s Boating Channel: Visual Distress Signals]

Standard Marine Distress Signals Search and Rescue (SAR)

MARINE RADIO

CALL: Mayday
GIVE: Name & Position
USE: 156.8 MHZ – Channel 16

GMDSS

(Global Marine Distress Signaling System)

Emergency position indicating radio beacon

CODE FLAGS

N (November) over C (Charlie)

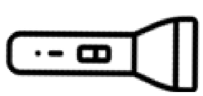
DISTRESS CLOTH

SHAPES

Ball over or under square

FLASHLIGHT

SOS . . . _ _ _ . . .



SOUND SIGNALS

Continuous: Foghorn, bell, whistle
One-minute intervals: Gun or any explosive

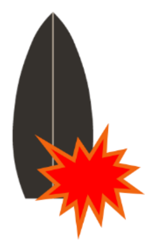
FLARES

TYPE A: Parachute rocket
TYPE B: Multi-star rocket
TYPE C: Hand-held
TYPE D: Buoyant or hand-held orange smoke

DYE MARKER

ARM SIGNAL

FLAME ON VESSEL



__Able 5b.__ Demonstrate your understanding of fire prevention on vessels.

3.2.4 Fire Prevention

One of the first lessons we learn in school is what to do if there is a fire. We are trained to evacuate a building quickly and safely, and we get out of the way so trained firefighters can deal with the fire.

When we are out on the water in a boat, the professionals are not nearby. An onboard fire is an extreme hazard and every step to prevent it should be taken. Every technique to extinguish it should be understood. Remember, most fires are preventable.

What causes a boat fire? All fires need three things to start and keep going:

- Heat – such as a spark, a flame or hot engine surface.
- Fuel – like gasoline, transmission fluid or engine oil.
- Oxygen – like the air you breathe.

3.2.4.1 Galley

According to insurance statistics, the galley is where most boat fires start. If your galley stove is fueled by alcohol, follow the directions for proper use in lighting the stove or burners. Alcohol flames are difficult to see, so it is possible for a fire to be deadly before it is detected.

Propane stoves have thermocouples and igniters designed to prevent flare-ups. If a burner begins to ignite with a pop and a flare, the stove needs to be serviced immediately.

As in any kitchen, a grease fire is always a risk. There should never be anything near the stove that is readily flammable—towels, curtains, loose clothing—and the cook should be able to reach a fire extinguisher from either side of the stove. If a fire of any kind starts, turn off the burner to stop the flow of fuel, and then extinguish the fire.

Remember, the best prevention for a galley fire is vigilance on the part of the cook.

3.2.4.2 Electrical System

The second most common fire on a boat is electrical, and it is a more difficult fire to immediately detect. Wire should be the correct size to carry the load, should be properly insulated, and have tight connections. Regularly inspect the wire connectors on board. If you see any signs of corrosion, replace them.

All circuits must have fuses or circuit breakers, and switches should be spark-proof. Batteries need to be secured in battery boxes to prevent shifting, and make sure paper products, cloth, plastics, fuel, or other flammable materials are not lying against wiring or connectors.

3.2.4.3 Engines

Fortunately, inboard gasoline engines have not been installed in production sailboats since 1980. Unfortunately, many of our Sea Scout boats are donations that were built when gasoline engines were the standard. By law, carburetors must have a backfire control device installed. This flame arrester prevents an open flame from entering the vessel's engine compartment and igniting any accumulated gasoline vapors.

Diesel engines rarely start a fire, but a worn fuel line can cause trouble. Make sure fuel lines are not at risk of rubbing against anything. Regardless of the fuel your engine uses, the engine area should be kept clean and well-ventilated with leakproof fuel tanks and tight fuel lines and fittings at fuel injection points.

Before cranking the engine, open the hatches and sniff the bilge for fumes. Leave the hatches open, run ventilation blowers for a full five minutes, and then start the engine.

Fueling

Before:

- Extinguish all flames.
- Engine and all electronics must be off.
- Since fuel vapors are heavier than air and will sink to the lowest part of the boat, close hatches, ports, and doors.
- Send passengers to shore.
- Put portable tanks on the dock to fill.

During:

- Have absorbent material on hand in case of spills.
- Make sure you are putting the fuel in the proper fill entry.
- Maintain contact between the nozzle and the fill pipe to prevent any sparking.
- Go slowly and listen for a change in pitch as the tank nears capacity to avoid spills.

After:

- Clean up any spills and dispose of cleaning materials properly.
- Open ports, hatches, and doors to ventilate.
- Sniff the engine compartment and bilges for fumes.
- Operate the blower for five minutes before starting the engine.

Lockers

Gasoline should not be stored in an interior locker. A safe propane locker is isolated from the interior of the boat and drains overboard but not near any opening that would allow the gas to enter the interior of the hull. Before using propane, check the lines for fracture or wear.

In general, lockers should be kept clean and orderly. Never stow oily rags in them, and if possible, avoid the stowage of paint, varnish, solvents, grease, and oil. A well-ventilated metal-lined locker is safest if flammables must be carried.

3.2.4.4 Classes of Fire

If fire does break out, it must be quickly and properly suppressed. There is a universal system to describe different types of fires that incorporates the use of letters to help users select an extinguisher suitable for the type of material involved in the fire. Fire extinguishers are classified by a letter and number symbol. The letter indicates the type of fire the unit is designed to extinguish. (Type B, for example, is designed to extinguish flammable liquids.) The number indicates the size of the extinguisher. The higher the number, the larger the extinguisher.

- **Class A** fires involve ordinary combustibles such as wood, fabric, paper, rubber, and other common materials that burn easily.
- **Class B** fires involve flammable liquids such as gasoline, oil, grease, tar, oil-based paint, lacquer, and flammable gas.
- **Class C** fires are electrical fires involving wiring, fuse boxes, circuit breakers, machinery, and appliances.
- **Class D** fires involve combustible metals such as magnesium, aluminum, lithium, and other metals or metal dust. You are not likely to encounter them while on a boat.
- **Class K** fires are cooking fires that involve flammable liquids like vegetable and animal fats, oils, and grease. Class K fires can be dangerous because they can spread quickly and cause injuries and significant damage. A Class K fire extinguisher is essential for effectively extinguishing kitchen fires.

3.2.4.5 Extinguishing a Fire

Fire needs fuel, oxygen, and heat to burn. Fire extinguishers remove one of these elements by applying an agent that either cools the burning fuel or removes or displaces the surrounding oxygen.

- **Water (A).** On a boat, water is all around you, and it is the best medium for putting out a class A fire. Water drowns a fire by cooling it below combustion temperature; however, it is limited to fighting class A fires. Never use water to fight a class B or C fire. Flammable liquids float on water, and water will cause the fire to spread. Water conducts electricity, so water added to a class C fire creates a new deadly hazard for the person fighting the fire.

- **Dry chemical extinguishers (B, C).** Dry chemical extinguishers are filled with either foam or powder, usually sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) or potassium bicarbonate and are pressurized with nitrogen. Baking soda is effective because it decomposes at 158 degrees Fahrenheit and releases carbon dioxide, which smothers the oxygen that is feeding the fire. Dry chemical extinguishers interrupt the chemical reaction of the fire by coating the fuel with a thin layer of powder or foam that separates the fuel from the surrounding oxygen. Caution: When used indoors, these extinguishers produce a thick cloud of dust that can obscure vision and cause choking.
- **Carbon dioxide (CO_2) extinguishers (B, C).** CO_2 extinguishers contain carbon dioxide, a non-flammable gas, and are highly pressurized. The pressure is so great that it is not uncommon for bits of dry ice to shoot out of the extinguisher. CO_2 is heavier than oxygen, so these extinguishers work by displacing or taking oxygen away from the surrounding area. CO_2 is also very cold, so it cools the fuel, as well.
- **Halotron (A, B, C).** Halotron is a vaporizing liquid that is ozone friendly and leaves no residue.
- **Foam (A, B).** Foam floats on flammable liquids to tame a fire and prevent reflashes.
- **Class K.** Class K fire extinguishers work through “saponification”—a chemical process that involves the formation of soap through the reaction of an acid with a base. Potassium acetate is a common extinguishing agent in Class K extinguishers. It reacts with the cooking oils or fats to form a soap that can envelop and smother the burning fuel. The process breaks down the fire's fuel source, disrupts the chemical reaction causing the fire and cools down the area to prevent re-ignition.

America’s Boating Channel: Fire Extinguisher Standards

***Able 5c.** Know the classes of fires and the substances that will extinguish each type of fire.*

3.2.4.6 Using a Hand-Held Fire Extinguisher

A portable fire extinguisher is not designed to fight a large or spreading fire. Even fighting a small fire, they are only useful if they are large enough for the fire at hand, are in working order, and are fully charged. The person using the fire extinguisher must know how it operates. There is no time to stop and read directions once a fire has begun.

If you can remember the acronym P-A-S-S, then you can remember how to use a fire extinguisher.

P - Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher. This will release the handle.

A - Aim at the base of the fire, not at the flames in the middle. To put out the fire, you must neutralize the fuel at the edge of the fire.

S - Squeeze the handle to release the extinguishing agent. To stop the discharge, let go of the handle.

S - Sweep from side to side at the base of the fire until it is out. Operate the extinguisher from a safe distance and move toward the fire once it begins to diminish. When the fire is out, watch for remaining smoldering hot spots or possible reflash of flammable liquids.

Able 5d. *In a safe place, under adult supervision, demonstrate your ability to extinguish a class A and a class B fire with an approved fire extinguisher. If required, see that the fire extinguisher used is properly recharged or replaced.*

[Sea Scout Safety Moment: Fire Extinguisher Use]

3.3 Emergencies Underway

Safety aboard has been a concern since man first went to sea. Safety drills are required by law on commercial vessels, and they are required of us, too. Drills should be held frequently in anticipation of any emergency so if a situation develops, it can be dealt

with skillfully and quickly without confusion. On vessels large or small, everyone should know where they should be and what action is expected in an emergency.

A **station bill** is a set of assigned duties for each crew member in the event of an emergency. In all emergencies, the person in charge (PIC) of vessel operations takes charge of the emergency response. The helmsman always steers the vessel; the lookout warns of other dangers, reports, and tracks a man overboard; the navigator notes position and generally is the person who makes the proper emergency call. Each station on the vessel should have a list of duties posted where it can be easily read and executed. A station bill should be prepared and posted for your ship's vessels for man overboard, fire, abandon ship, and other emergency situations.

Sample Small-Craft Station Bill

Position	Man Overboard Duties	Fire Duties	Collision Duties
PIC	In command	In command	In command
Helmsman	• Begin recovery maneuvers under the direction of the person in command.	• Reduce speed. • Put fire on the lee side under the direction of the person in command.	• Follow the directions of the person in command.
Navigator	• Mark position. • Prepare to make the appropriate emergency call.	• Mark position. • Prepare to make the appropriate emergency call. • Have abandon ship bag ready.	• Mark position. • Prepare to make the appropriate emergency call. • Have abandon ship bag ready.
Lookout	• Point to the person in water. • Do not lose sight of them.	• Keep watch.	• Keep watch.
Deckhands	• Throw flotation into the water. • Be quick to follow all instructions regarding sails, etc. • Prepare to assist in recovery.	• Pinpoint location, type, size of fire. • Shut off fuel supply—engine, stove valves. • Attack with the appropriate fire extinguisher. • Continually update the person in charge.	• Check for injuries, report to the person in charge. • Get into life jackets. • Check for damage, report to the person in charge. • If needed, rig collision mats.

Ordinary 5c. *Develop a ship's station bill for your ship and review it with an adult leader.*

3.3.1 Fire

A shipboard fire requires prompt, careful action to save the vessel and prevent an abandon ship situation. Some things will occur almost simultaneously.

1. Sound the alarm and pass the word.
2. Stop the engine immediately.
3. Pinpoint the location, the type, and size of the fire.
4. The fire's fuel source should be cut off—ignition keys shut off the engine fuel pump, stoves have shutoff valves, etc.
5. The helmsman needs to position the boat so that the wind blows the fire away from the boat. This will help prevent the fire from spreading and minimize smoke inhalation for all on board.
6. The navigator needs to mark the position and prepare to make the appropriate emergency call.
7. While these things are occurring, the fire should be attacked with extinguishing equipment. The person in charge of the vessel needs constant updates— "under control," "holding," "spreading," "out of control," or "explosion danger!"
8. If necessary, the crew needs to be prepared to abandon ship.

Discuss the specifics of fire emergency procedures for your ship's vessels with your adult leaders.

3.3.2 Collision

Sea Scouts promise to guard against water accidents, but sometimes things do not go as planned. If a collision occurs, you must check for injuries to the crew and the vessel.

1. The alarm must be sounded, and the word passed.
2. Check for injuries and damage and report to the person in charge of the vessel.
3. The navigator needs to mark the position and be prepared to make the appropriate emergency calls.
4. Get all hands on deck and in life jackets.
5. Rig a collision mat if needed or use canvas or materials at hand to stop inflow of water.
6. If you collided with another vessel and you are not in danger of sinking, stand by to render assistance to the other vessel.
7. If your vessel is in danger of sinking, prepare to abandon her.

Ordinary 5d. *Plan and practice the following drills: man overboard, fire, and abandon ship.*

3.3.3 Heavy Weather

"The wise sailor avoids the storm he cannot weather, and weathers the storm he cannot avoid."

Before leaving the dock, you should know the limits of your vessel, your crew, and yourself, and what the predictions are for your day on the water. Sometimes, despite the forecast, unexpected bad weather develops, and precautions must be taken. If it can be done, seek a sheltered harbor, put out the proper ground tackle and ride the storm out.

If you are caught in an exposed position, to prepare for heavy weather:

1. Make sure the crew knows the location and use of all safety gear.
2. Make sure the VHF radio is on and working, and everyone onboard knows how to make an emergency call.
3. Get everyone in their foul weather gear and life jackets.
4. Assign tasks to the crew based on ability and experience.
5. The navigator should record the ship's position in the log and check the chart for nearby hazards.
6. Clear any unnecessary items from the cockpit and deck and secure all gear and equipment below decks.
7. Rig jacklines from bow to stern on port and starboard. Everyone on deck needs to be in a harness and attached to a jackline.
8. Reduce your speed to steerage way and turn toward the wind if you are in a powerboat. If you are in a sailboat, reduce the sail to the minimum needed to maintain steerage and keep the ship's head into the waves. Approach waves at about 45 degrees.

***Quartermaster 5a.** Know the heavy-weather precautions taken aboard both power and sailing vessels when dangerous weather approaches and demonstrate these precautions aboard the vessel used by your ship.*

3.3.4 Fog

1. Know where you are. Take fixes regularly to determine if you are still on a safe course.
2. Avoid collisions. Take every action to be seen and to see other vessels and hazards.
3. The speed of a vessel should be reduced to the point where it maintains full maneuverability and can stay on course.
4. Audible signals should be sounded. Vary the rhythm of your signals occasionally in case your signals are in sync with a nearby vessel.
5. Post multiple lookouts. A lookout is required by the Navigation Rules, but two lookouts on the bow must watch for aids to navigation, other vessels, or hazards. They must listen for sound signals. A lookout aft needs to watch for overtaking vessels. Keeping silent is recommended so all can listen. Fog has the unnerving capacity to distort sound in terms of both volume and direction.
6. Use radar and radar reflectors. Even if your boat doesn't have radar, hoist a passive radar reflector as high as possible to increase your chances of being seen.
7. If worse comes to worst, and depth of water and other conditions allow, then anchor or lay to. Sound the proper fog signals, keep lookouts posted, and watch and listen for other vessels and hazards.

Quartermaster 5b. *Know the special precautions that should be taken when limited visibility is encountered.*

3.3.5 Running Aground

There are three kinds of boaters. Some have run aground, the rest will run aground, and some will lie. Sea Scouts use a variety of vessels on every kind of water, so there is no hard and fast set of rules for grounding. Each grounding is situational with a wide range of possible variables—bottom type, whether under sail or power, current, tide, and where you are and what the chart says.

The first moments after grounding are critical. Do not panic and assess the situation. Check for injury to passengers and damage to the vessel. If there is damage to the vessel, you may need to stay where you are and call the Coast Guard.

If there is no damage to the vessel, a first instinct is to throw the engine into reverse and use the throttle to try to back out. This is a dangerous choice before fully assessing the situation. Prop wash can cause all manner of muck and mire to be sucked into the raw water intake with the potential to clog strainers and shred impellers. Safer alternatives are not limited to, but do include:

- Set an anchor to keep from being pushed harder aground.
- Drop the sails to keep from being pushed harder aground, or backwind the sails to try to push you off.
- If you have a centerboard, raise it.
- Assess the water depth in front, behind, and to the sides of the boat.
- Check wind, current conditions, and a chart to see where deeper water is located.
- Check the tide table. The next high tide may free the boat.
- Kedge. Set an anchor behind you; use a winch to pull the boat toward the anchor and freedom.
- Reduce your draft. Empty water tanks and put heavy gear in a dinghy.
- Decrease the boat's draft by heeling her. Move the crew as far to leeward as possible.
- Put on shoes and a life jacket if the water is shallow. Make sure you can get back on the boat, then get off and give her a good push.
- If you try to back off and are successful, monitor your temperature gauges carefully until you are sure you have not fouled the engine intake.
- A good Samaritan may offer a tow. Be very careful. Serious injuries can result if fittings or lines fail.
- Call for a professional tow.

3.3.6 Abandon Ship

Abandon ship is the final escape for a ship's crew.

1. When the alarm is raised, the word is passed, and everyone gets on deck in a life jacket.
2. The navigator makes a final Mayday call including the ship's location and intentions.
3. Lifeboats or rafts need to be launched, temporarily tethered to the vessel, and loaded with survival equipment, passengers, and crew.
4. If there is no lifeboat, the crew needs to get off the vessel with available survival equipment. They need to link up, so they do not lose contact.
5. Remember, stay with your craft unless it is sinking or there is an uncontrollable fire or danger of an explosion.

3.3.6.1 Abandon Ship Bag

In the middle of an emergency, you may only have moments to assess the situation and abandon the boat. Mere moments do not give you the time to think about or assemble what you will need. Abandon ship or “ditch bags” should be prepared in advance with the appropriate tools and materials necessary to survive and signal for rescue.

At a minimum, the waterproof bag should contain a portable VHF radio, compass, flares, waterproof charts, signal mirror, knife, fishing equipment, first-aid kit, sunscreen, and a waterproof flashlight. The bag should be stored in an easily accessible location.

3.3.7 Man Overboard

A man overboard situation requires quick, efficient, and coordinated action by everyone, the procedure varies by vessel type and should be regularly practiced.

3.3.7.1 Procedure on a Large Vessel

Duties and Procedures

Anyone:

- Shout "Man Overboard; port/starboard side."
- Continuously keep the person in the water (PIW) in sight; point to the PIW; call out the relative bearing to PIW.
- Throw flotation and marker devices.

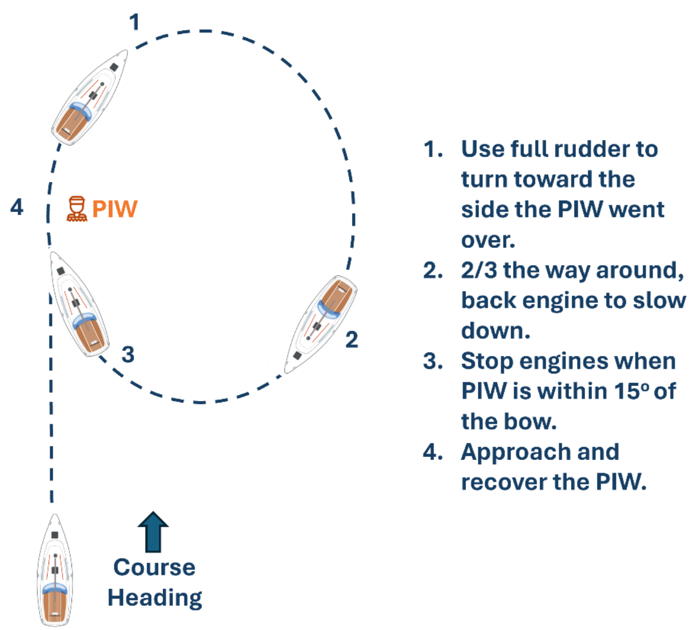
Crew on watch:

- Turn toward the side the PIW went overboard.
- Sound the alarm.
- Mark the position by the best navigational method available.
- Communicate the situation to rescue authorities and nearby vessels. Display the international code flag "Oscar."
- Don lifejackets.
- Conduct a pickup maneuver suitable for your vessel and the conditions.
- For a vessel under sail, a "Figure 8 Turn" is often the best. Start engine.
- For a vessel under power, the quickest maneuver is often the Anderson Turn, sometimes also known as the Destroyer Turn. To perform the Anderson Turn, turn the rudder full towards the direction of the PIW. When clear of the PIW, go full ahead. The goal is to make a circle and return to where the PIW is. When about 2/3 of the circle is completed, back the engines to slow down. When the PIW is 15 degrees off the bow, stop. Make small adjustments as necessary.
- When the time the PIW went overboard isn’t known or the PIW is lost from sight, a Williamson Turn is the best maneuver to trace a reciprocal course. To perform this maneuver, turn the rudder full towards the direction of the PIW. When the course has changed by about 60 degrees, turn the rudder full the opposite direction until the vessel is 20 degrees shy of the reciprocal course and then bring it back to midships. Trace the reciprocal course and maintain spotters for the PIW.

All other crew:

- Carry out station bill assignments.
- Keep the PIW in sight and point to the PIW.
- Don lifejackets.
- Once the PIW is alongside:
    - Stop the vessel alongside and upwind of the PIW with the PIW well forward of the screws. Stop screws.
    - Bring capable PIW aboard via boarding ladder, cargo net, or boarding platform.
    - Bring incapacitated PIW aboard with an improvised sling; or, only if absolutely necessary, by having others enter the water. (Define life jacket, harness, and tending line requirements for your unit.)

Anderson Turn



General Points:

- Adapt the method to the conditions.
- Adjustments may be dictated by winds, seas, weather, darkness, and survivability (water temperature, PIW injury, etc.).
- Consider also: traffic, obstructions, maneuverability, and shoal waters.
- Conduct man-overboard drills frequently, realistically, and thoroughly to "Be Prepared."
- If available, and it can make it quicker, launch a small boat.
- Learn the various maneuvers from expert refences.
- Figure out, in advance, which pickup maneuver is best for your vessel in varying conditions.
- Remember, you're not going to bring a real PIW aboard a boat with a boat hook.

If you are the person who goes overboard:

- Don’t panic.
- Swim away from the boat and keep clear of the propeller.
- In rough conditions, turn your back to the waves to keep your mouth and nose clear of spray.
- Whatever your situation, conserve your body heat. The greatest threat to your survival is from the cold. Assume the HELP (heat escape lessening position) and float. Restrict your movements to keep from flushing cold water under your clothing by holding your arms and knees close to your chest.

[Coast Guard How To: Recover a Passenger Overboard]

3.3.7.2 Falling Overboard on a Paddlecraft

Although every precaution should be made, people sometimes go overboard. It may not be possible to grab an outside safety line or reach the throw bag.

Procedure:

When you surface, assume a position with your feet aimed downstream, and then use them to absorb impact against objects. Should you manage to get to an island or into the branches of a tree, stay calm and wait for assistance.

3.3.7.3 Heaving Lines and Flotation Bag

Heaving Line Procedure:

- Remove the line from the bag and untangle it.
- Secure the end of the line or step on the end of the line with your foot.
- Open the palm of your non-dominant hand and begin to coil the line.
- When you finish coiling the line, grab two thirds of the coils with your throwing hand while keeping the remailing coils in your other hand.
- Warn the PIW you are throwing the device.
- Aim beyond the PIW, not directly at them.
- Throw the line underhand with a sweeping motion.

[Coast Guard How To: How to Tie and Throw a Heaving Line]

Flotation Bag Procedure:

- Remove several feet of line from the bag.
- Hold the line in in your non-throwing hand and the floating device in the other.
- Warn the PIW you are throwing the device.
- Aim beyond the PIW, not directly at them.

- Throw the device underhand with a sweeping motion.
- After throwing the line or bag, maintain tension on the line. This keeps the PIW close and prevents them from drifting away.
- Prepare to haul the PIW aboard. Assign someone to handle the line and be ready to assist the PIW onto the vessel or onto shore.

General Points:

Ensure crew members are trained in using heaving lines and flotation bags. Practice proper throwing techniques and recovery procedures during man-overboard drills. When finished using the line, flake it into the bag, do no coil it.

3.4 Communication

3.4.1 Radio Communication Aboard a Ship

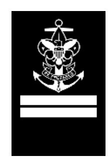
Three types of radio equipment are common for marine use. The first is single sideband (SSB) and covers long-range communication requirements from 150 to 10,000 miles. This equipment usually is found on oceangoing ships, is relatively expensive,

and not normally used aboard Sea Scout vessels. SSB use requires both a station and operator's license.

A more practical type of radio for Sea Scout use is very high frequency- frequency modulated (VHF-FM). The VHF radio has a line-of-sight range and is practical to 20 miles, or farther with a tall antenna. Neither a station license nor operator's permit is required for VHF-FM radios while in U.S. inland waters.

Due to limited signal coverage offshore or on large bodies of water, cell phones are not a reliable communication system for vessels at sea. However, in emergency situations, all possible methods of communication should be used.

***Ordinary 5e.** Describe three types of equipment used in marine communications.*



3.4.1.1 Radio Procedures

The VHF is the tool most boaters use to communicate with other boaters, the Coast Guard, barges, drawbridge tenders, etc. There are also marine weather channels, and at least one covers your area.

Careful discipline is to be maintained when using SSB or VHF marine equipment. "Handles," "10 codes," citizens' band jargon, and idle chitchat have no place in marine radio communication. The Federal Communications Commission monitors transmissions and will issue citations for repeated violations of the rules. A marine radio is not a plaything. It can save—and has saved—many lives.

Prowords

Marine radio conversations are terse, efficient, and to the point. Several procedure words, or "prowords," have become common usage:

- **Over.** It is your turn to talk.
- **Out.** I have finished talking and no reply is expected.
- **Roger.** I understand.
- **Wilco.** I will comply.
- **Say again.** Please repeat your last transmission.
- **I spell.** I am spelling in phonetic words.

There are other prowords, but these are the most common.

The Alphabet

Letters of the alphabet often sound alike. B, C, D, E, G, P, T, V, and Z can easily be confused. There is no doubt, however, when one hears Bravo, Charlie, Delta, Echo, Golf, Papa, Tango, Victor, and Zulu. So, all letters of the alphabet are transmitted by voice using the following words.

The Phonetic Alphabet

A – Alfa	**H** – Hotel	**N** – November	**T** – Tango
B – Bravo	**I** – India	**O** – Oscar	**U** – Uniform
C – Charlie	**J** – Juliet	**P** – Papa	**V** – Victor
D – Delta	**K** – Kilo	**Q** – Quebec	**W** – Whiskey
E – Echo	**L** – Lima	**R** – Romeo	**X** – X-Ray
F – Foxtrot	**M** – Mike	**S** – Sierra	**Y** – Yankee
G – Golf			**Z** - Zulu

A radio call sign WLB 4321 is stated on the air as Whiskey Lima Bravo 4321. To spell the name of the vessel *Scout*, the radio operator would say, "I spell: Sierra, Charlie, Oscar, Uniform, Tango."

America's Boating Channel: Basic Marine Communications

3.4.1.2 Using the Radio

Specific frequencies have been set aside for calling and emergency traffic on SSB and VHF radiotelephones. These are 2182 kHz on SSB and channel 16 on VHF. Each vessel is required by law to monitor the emergency and calling channel unless actively speaking on another channel designated for the type of transmission being sent.

Radio Channels

Channel	Use
06	Safety messages, ship to ship
09	Bridges and secondary hail
13	Hail commercial vessels and drawbridge tenders on low power
16	**Emergency (Mayday) hail; Primary hail**
22	Coast Guard working channel
24, 25, 26, 27, 28	Hail marine operator; phone calls
68, 69, 71, 72, 78	Pleasure boat working channels

There is a prescribed format used to initiate a call on a marine radio. All calls are made on channel 16 when VHF is used, 2182 kHz for SSB. Once contact is established, both stations shift to a working frequency to transact their business. Here's an example of the procedure:

Check to be sure that the calling and desired working channels are free of traffic. Place the call, being sure to identify who you are calling and who is making the call:

"Scout, Scout, Scout. This is Invincible, Kilo Mike 5502. Over."

If not immediately answered, the call may be repeated. Wait two minutes for an answer before calling again.

The vessel being called answers:

"Invincible, this is Scout, Kilo Delta 1996. Over."

The two stations agree on the working channel:

"Scout, Invincible; shift and answer six eight." "Six eight; wilco."

Both stations now shift to channel 68.

The called station speaks next:

"Invincible. Scout, Kilo Delta 1996. Over."

This identifies that the stations are now on channel 68.

The vessel that originated the call now identifies itself and the conversation proceeds:

"Scout. Invincible, Kilo Mike 5502." (The message now follows.)

Each vessel's radio operator takes turn speaking. Each message ends with "over" to let the other party know that a reply is desired.

When the business has been concluded, both stations sign off and shift back to channel 16:

"Scout, Kilo Delta 1996, out."

"Invincible, Kilo Mike 5502, out."

The most misused prowords are “over” and “out.” “Over” means, “It’s your turn to talk.” “Out” means, “I’ve finished this transmission.” If you say, “Over and out,” you’re saying, “It’s your turn to talk, but I’m not listening.”

Marine radio messages should be brief, clear, and concise. Each transmission may last no more than five minutes. Each station spends as little time as possible on channel 16, clearing it for emergency and other use.

[America’s Boating Channel: Marine Radio Etiquette]

Radio Reminders

- Post station license and have operator license available.
- Whenever the radio is turned on, keep the receiver tuned to the distress frequency (2182 kHz or 156.8 MHz).
- Use 2182 kHz and 156.8 MHz for calling distress, urgency, or safety only.
- Listen before transmitting on any frequency to avoid interfering with other communications.
- If you hear a MAYDAY, talk only if you can help. Be prepared to render assistance or relay the distress message if necessary.
- Identify by call sign at the beginning and end of each communication.
- Keep all communications as brief as possible.
- Keep your radio equipment shipshape. Have it checked periodically by a qualified, licensed technician.
- False distress signals are prohibited.
- Radiocommunications are private, and divulgence of content without permission is prohibited.
- Don’t use profane or indecent language.

Ordinary 5f. *Demonstrate your knowledge of correct maritime radio communications procedures by making at least three calls to other vessels, marinas, bridges, or locks.*

3.4.1.3 Emergency Messages

The principal purpose of the marine radio is to handle emergencies. Three types of emergency messages are used, and all are transmitted on channel 16 or 2182 kHz:

Mayday: Distress—Risk of loss of life or danger to the vessel is possible.

Pan Pan (pronounced pahn): Urgent—Safety of the vessel or person is in jeopardy. Loss of life or property is not likely, but help is needed.

Security (pronounced say-curitay): Safety message—Used to report hazard to navigation, buoy off station, extreme weather, etc.

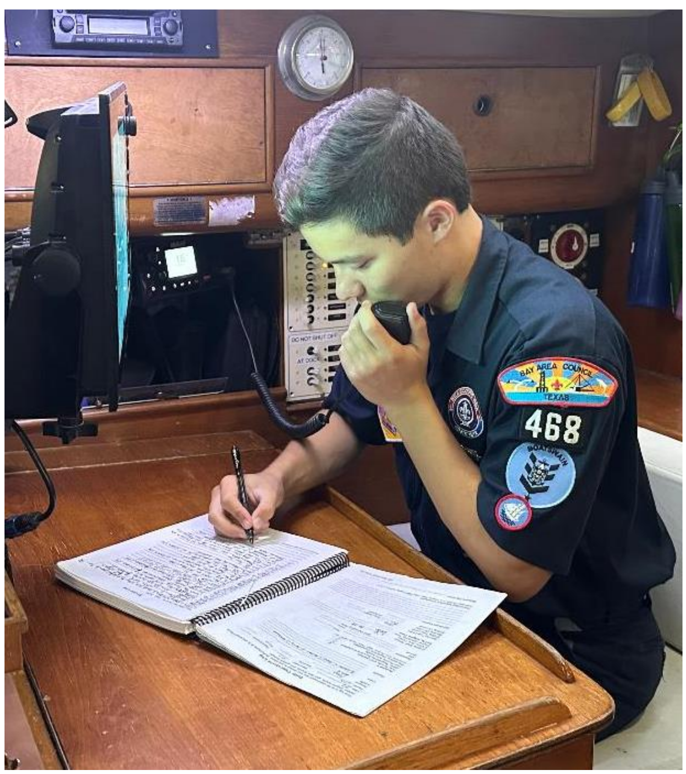
As soon as a Mayday, Pan Pan, or Security message is heard, all other traffic on channel 16 must stop. If someone tries to transmit on any other subject, the command "Seelonce" (silence) may be given. Normally the entire Mayday or Pan Pan situation is broadcast on channel 16. If another channel is to be used, this will be ordered by the search and rescue authority, usually the Coast Guard.

Since Security messages do not involve a threat to life or property, all traffic beyond the initial call shifts to a working channel. If a situation is spotted, boaters are usually advised to report it to the Coast Guard and let them evaluate the situation and issue the Security message. Their taller antenna will give better coverage.

If your vessel is in distress, place a Mayday or Pan Pan call. Remember, these messages must be used only in the event of a real emergency.

The U.S. Coast Guard's Rescue 21 program which covers some 42,000 miles of coastline helps identify the location of callers in distress via towers that generate lines of bearing to the source of VHF radio transmissions, greatly improving the U.S. Coast Guard's ability to detect Mayday calls, pinpoint the location of the call, and coordinate rescue operations.

Apprentice 5c. *Use the Distress Communications Form to demonstrate the procedure to send the following VHF emergency messages: Mayday, Pan Pan, and Security.*



Marine Distress Communications Form

Instructions: Complete this form now (except for items 6 through 9) and post near your radiotelephone for use if you are in DISTRESS.

SPEAK: SLOWLY – CLEARLY – CALMLY

1. Make sure your radiotelephone is on.
2. Select either VHF channel 16 (156.8 MHz) or 2182 kHz.
3. Press microphone button and say: “MAYDAY – MAYDAY – MAYDAY”.
4. SAY: “THIS IS (Your call sign/boat name repeated three times.) __________ __________.
5. Wait for reply, if no response, SAY: “MAYDAY (Your boat name).
6. State your location twice (latitude and longitude or nearby navigational aids/landmarks).
7. State the nature of your distress.
8. Give the number of persons aboard and conditions of any injured.
9. Estimate present seaworthiness of your boat.
10. Briefly describe your boat: (Length): (Type); (Color of hull); (Color of trim); (number of masts); (Anything else you think will help rescuers find you)
11. SAY: “I WILL BE LISTENING ON CHANNEL 16/2182.” (Cross out the one which does not apply.)
12. End message by saying: THIS IS (Your boat name) OVER.”
13. Release microphone button and listen; someone should answer.

IF THEY DO NOT, REPEAT CALL, BEGINNING AT ITEM NUMBER 3 ABOVE.

If there is still no answer, switch to another channel and begin again.

3.4.2 Communications Signaling

Signaling is carried out at sea in several ways. Some of the methods are radio, Global Marine Distress Signaling System, International Code flags, signal flags, and blinker lights.

3.4.2.1 The International Morse Code

Until recently, Morse code was the standard signaling means throughout the world. It is still frequently used in non-telegraphy signaling. It is possible to send Morse code by several different methods: it is easily simulated by a simple electric buzzer; it may be signaled by the ship's whistle, siren, or foghorn; or it may be transmitted by signal flag when the flag is held erect for a long interval for dashes and a short one for dots, or more commonly, swung to the sender's right for a dash and to the sender's left for a dot.

It is also sent with a blinker system. This method can be improvised in many ways, and every seaman should know them. A pocket flashlight, a lantern covered and uncovered by a piece of clothing or any opaque object, a porthole opened and closed, or any of the standard ship's lights can be adapted.

International Morse Code

Letter	Code	Sound
A	. _	dih-dah
B	_ . . .	dah-di-di-dit
C	_ . _ .	dah-di-dah-dit
D	_ . .	dah-di-dit
E	.	dit
F	. . _ .	di-di-dah-dit
G	_ _ .	dah-dah-dit
H	. . . .	di-di-di-dit
I	. .	di-dit
J	. _ _ _	di-dah-dah-dah
K	_ . _	dah-di-dah
L	. _ . .	di-dah-di-dit
M	_ _	dah-dah
N	_.	dah-dit
O	_ _ _	dah-dah-dah
P	. _ _ .	di-dah-dah-dit
Q	_ _ . _	dah-dah-di-dah
R	. _ .	di-dah-dit
S	. . .	di-di-dit
T	_	dah
U	. . _	di-di-dah
V	. . . _	di-di-di-dah
W	. _ _	di-dah-dah
X	_ . . _	dah-di-di-dah
Y	_ . _ _	dah-di-dah-dah
Z	_ _ . .	dah-dah-di-dit

Number	Code	Sound
0	_ _ _ _ _	dah-dah-dah-dah-dah
1	. _ _ _ _	di-dah-dah-dah-dah
2	. . _ _ _	di-di-dah-dah-dah
3	. . . _ _	di-di-di-dah-dah
4	. . . . _	di-di-di-di-dah
5	. . . . .	di-di-di-di-dit
6	_	dah-di-di-di-dit
7	_ _ . . .	dah-dah-di-di-dit
8	_ _ _ . .	dah-dah-dah-di-dit
9	_ _ _ _ .	dah-dah-dah-dah-dit

3.4.2.2 Semaphore

Semaphore flags signaling is a system of communication using handheld flags and is an old favorite of the Navy. It was adopted and widely used in the maritime world in the 19th century. It is still used during underway replenishment at sea and is acceptable for emergency communication in daylight or using lighted wands instead of flags at night.

Semaphore signaling uses two flags, each held in one hand by the signaler. These flags have distinct positions that correspond to different letters or symbols.

Semaphore signaling requires a clear line of sight between the sender and receiver. This means it's primarily effective over relatively short distances, although with binoculars or telescopes, it can be used over longer ranges.

The graphics shown in Semaphore Signaling are from the receiver's perspective. A message sender positions their arms opposite of what is shown. For example, if signaling the letter "A" the sender would hold the left flag down, and the right flag away from the body at a low angle.

It is important that your signals are distinct. The flag must become a rigid extension of your arm, and not be allowed to move sloppily. Never make your receiver guess the exact position of your flag. Your arm might be held in the 9 o'clock position, but with the flag jutting out at an additional angle, it might well be read as the 10:30 position. Whenever you cross a flag in front of you to make a letter, twist your body slightly in the same direction.

Use the "Attention" sign at the beginning of a message to let the receiver know you are ready to begin sending. When the receiver sends the letter K, you can go ahead.

Send the letters of each word by going directly from the position of one letter, without stopping, into the position of the next, pausing in each. If you must think of the next letter, hold the letter you are making until the next one comes to mind.

To indicate the end of a word, give the "Interval" signal by bringing the flags down in front of you, with the staffs crossing each other.

Whenever double letters appear in a word, use the interval signal to separate them. Make the first letter, then interval, and immediately, without pause, signal the duplicate letter.

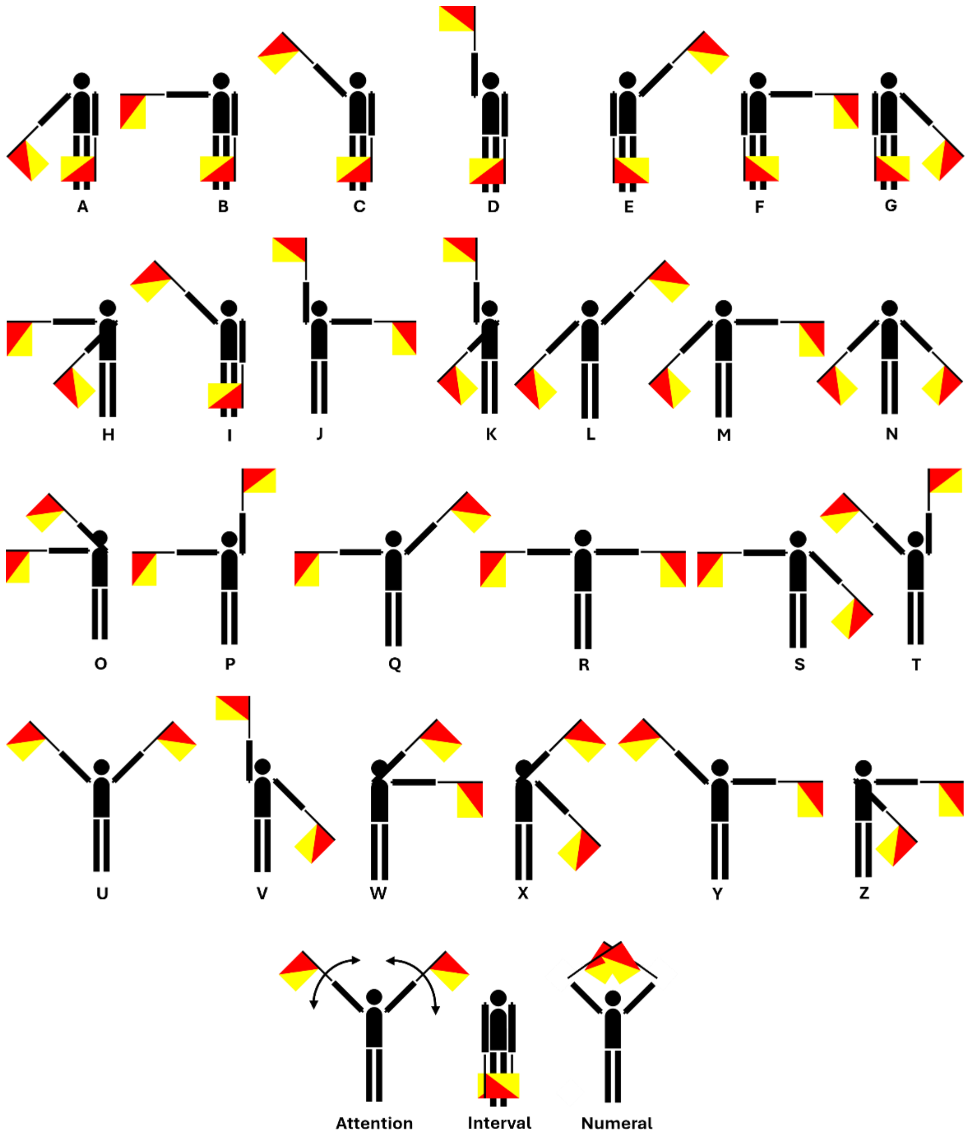
The receiver acknowledges each word by sending C. If the receiver sends IMI, it means they did not catch your last word. Repeat it and continue from there.

If you realize you have made a mistake while sending a message, send an error signal of eight or more E's then start the current word again. If you are receiving a message and see the error signal, ignore any letters you have received since the last interval sign (or since the beginning of the message if you have not yet received an interval).

The interval sign is used to indicate the end of a word. It may be held slightly longer than a letter. Two intervals indicate the end of a sentence, and three intervals in succession indicate the end of the message.

Numbers are formed by placing the "Number" sign before and after the group of numbers. You can use a number signal (A-I for 1-9 and K for 0) or spell out the letter.

Semaphore Signaling



3.4.2.3 International Code Flags

Any extensive use of International Code flags will call for the use of International Code of Signals, published by the U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office. A few of the principal signals and the general method of making and answering signals are given here.

The flags are shown in color below.

How to Make a Signal

The code flags come in various sizes. The square flags, 3 by 3 feet, are handy for Sea Scouts.

One way to practice is to rig up two widely separated masts or halyard hauls. Then have your instructor give a set of signals to one group, noting the time, speed, and accuracy in which they are transmitted. Then have the second group send some signals.

Signal flags should be properly bent, either with a sheet or signal halyard bend, or with snap hooks. One way to stow and use flags is to have a signal rack and a signal bag made of canvas. Flags should never be stowed wet and should be kept in repair.

If you want to make a signal, hoist your signal flags from where they can best be seen. If this is the same halyard from which your ensign flies, fly the signal flags underneath the ensign.

To call a specific vessel, first hoist their identity signal. If you do not know your recipient's identity signal, "VF" ("You should hoist your identity signal") or "CS" (What is the name or identity signal of your vessel (or station)?") can be used. When you have been answered by the vessel you are addressing, proceed with your signal, first hauling down your code flag. It may be required for making or answering signals. If you are not attempting to signal a specific vessel, simply fly your message.

Signals should always be hoisted where they can be best seen, not necessarily at the masthead. Each hoist should be kept flying until the other ship hoists her answering pennant close up.

How to Answer a Signal

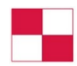
On seeing a signal made by another ship, hoist your answering pennant at the dip. (A flag is at the dip when it is hoisted about three-quarters up its halyard.)

Always hoist the answering pennant where it can be seen best.

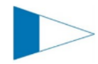
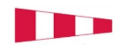
When the hoist has been recognized and is understood, hoist your answering pennant close up, and keep it there until the other ship hauls her hoist down. Then haul your answering pennant down to the dip and wait for the next hoist. If the other ship's flags cannot be made out or the signal is not understood, keep your answering pennant at the dip, and make a signal to that effect. When they have repeated or clarified her signal, hoist your answering pennant close up.

International Flags and Pennants

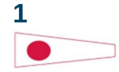
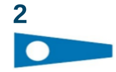
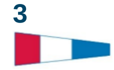
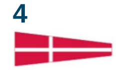
ALPHABET FLAGS

- **A**lfa
  
  Have diver down, keep clear
- **B**ravo
  
  Dangerous goods
- **C**harlie
  
  Yes
- **D**elta
  
  Keep clear, maneuvering with difficulty
- **E**cho
  
  Altering course to starboard
- **F**oxtrot
  
  Disabled, communicate with me
- **G**olf
  
  Require a pilot. Fishing; hauling nets
- **H**otel
  
  Pilot on board
- **I**ndia
  
  Altering course to port
- **J**uliett
  
  On fire; have dangerous cargo; keep clear
- **K**ilo
  
  Wish to communicate
- **L**ima
  
  Stop instantly
- **M**ike
  
  My vessel is stopped, making no way
- **N**ovember
  
  No
- **O**scar
  
  Man overboard
- **P**apa
  
  At sea-fishing Nets on obstruction
- **Q**uebec
  
  Request free pratique
- **R**omeo
  
  *
- **S**ierra
  
  Engines going astern
- **T**ango
  
  Keep clear, engaged in pair trawling
- **U**niform
  
  You are running into danger
- **V**ictor
  
  Require assistance
- **W**hiskey
  
  Require medical assistance
- **X**ray
  
  Stop your intentions, watch for signals
- **Y**ankee
  
  Dragging my anchor
- **Z**ulu
  
  Require a tug. Fishing: Shooting nets

SUBSTITUTES

- 1st Substitute
  
- 2nd Substitute
  
- 3rd Substitute
  
- CODE
  
  (answering pennant or decimal point)

NUMERAL PENNANTS

- **1**
  
- **2**
  
- **3**
  
- **4**
  
- **5**
  
- **6**
  
- **7**
  
- **8**
  
- **9**
  
- **0**
  

3.4.2.4 Automated Identification System

The Automatic Identification System (AIS) broadcasts your vessel's data including location, size, course, and name while receiving similar information from equipped boats around you. This real-time picture empowers informed decision-making, reducing the risk of collisions, particularly in low-visibility conditions or congested waterways. AIS allows you the ability to see and be seen, navigate with confidence, and even lend a hand or request assistance when needed.

[America's Boating Channel: Introducing AIS]

3.4.2.5 Electronic Visual Distress Signals

Electronic visual distress signals for mariners typically refer to devices such as electronic flares or distress beacons that are used to signal for help in emergency situations. These devices are designed to replace traditional pyrotechnic flares, offering several advantages such as longer battery life, reliability in various weather conditions, and the ability to be reused.

Here's a breakdown of their use and purpose:

1. **Emergency Signaling**: Electronic visual distress signals are primarily used to indicate that a vessel or individual is in distress and requires assistance. They emit a bright light or signal that can be seen from a distance, alerting nearby vessels or search and rescue teams to the distress situation.
2. **Visibility and Range**: These electronic devices often have a longer range of visibility compared to traditional pyrotechnic flares. They may emit bright, strobing lights or other distinctive signals that can be easily spotted even in adverse weather conditions or low light situations.
3. **Reliability and Reusability**: Unlike pyrotechnic flares, which have a limited shelf life and can be hazardous to handle, electronic visual distress signals are generally more reliable and can be reused multiple times. They are powered by batteries or other power sources, ensuring that they remain operational when needed.
4. **Regulatory Compliance**: Many maritime authorities require vessels to carry distress signaling devices as part of their safety equipment. Electronic visual distress signals often meet or exceed these regulatory requirements and may offer additional features such as GPS tracking or automatic activation in the event of an emergency.

   Safety and Peace of Mind: Having electronic visual distress signals on board provides mariners with an added layer of safety and peace of mind when venturing out into the water. Knowing that reliable signaling devices are available can help expedite rescue efforts and potentially save lives.

Overall, electronic visual distress signals serve as critical tools for mariners to alert others of distress situations and facilitate prompt response and rescue operations. Their effectiveness, reliability, and ease of use make them essential components of maritime safety equipment.

[America's Boating Channel: Electronic Visual Distress Signals]

3.5 First Aid

A working knowledge of first aid is essential to the safe operation of a Sea Scout ship. Normally, medical assistance is not immediately available—particularly on a small boat.

3.5.1 First-Aid Kit

A complete first-aid kit is necessary. At a minimum, it should contain the items listed below.

Standard First Aid Kit

Wound Care	Medication
• Bandages: adhesive, triangular, rolled gauze, crepe, and elastic of various widths • Sterile absorbent cotton • Cotton-tipped swabs • Sterile gauze squares, various sizes • Sterile eye pads • Alcohol swabs • Waterproof adhesive tape	• Anti-seasickness pills • Antihistamine pills • Pain relief tablets • Toothache remedy (oil of cloves) • Laxative (mild) • Bicarbonate of soda • Throat lozenges • Throat spray • Antidiarrheal • Hydrogen peroxide • Meat tenderizer
Ointments and Lotions	**Tools**
• Sunscreen (8-15 range) • Sunburn lotion • Zinc oxide ointment • Liquid soap • Burn ointment or petroleum jelly • Aromatic spirit of ammonia • Tube of boric acid ophthalmic ointment	• Safety pins, assorted • Small scissors • Tongue depressors • Clinical thermometer • Rust-resistant needles • Tweezers or thumb forceps • Snakebite kit (inland) • Instant ice bags • Small flashlight • Disposable latex gloves • Mouth barrier device • Plastic safety goggles

[Scouting America Safety Moment: First Aid Kit]

3.5.2 Hurry Rescue Cases

All ship members should know how to deal with the following emergencies when fast action means the difference between life and death.

3.5.2.1 Severe Bleeding

Severe bleeding can cause shock or death. First, stop the bleeding. The best way to control bleeding is with direct pressure over the site of the wound.

- Use a pad of sterile gauze, if available, or a clean handkerchief. For protection against blood-borne diseases, wear latex gloves or cover hands with several sterile dressings or a piece of plastic wrap.
- Use the flat part of the hand.
- Apply firm, steady, direct pressure for five to 15 minutes. Most bleeding will stop within a few minutes.
- If bleeding is from a foot, hand, leg, or arm, use gravity to help slow the flow of blood. Elevate the limb so it is higher than the victim's heart.
- After bleeding has stopped, put bandages or cloths against the wound and tie them in place with another cloth or wide tape.
- Send someone else to call EMS or an ambulance.
- Treat the victim for shock as soon as you take care of the bleeding.
- Do not apply pressure to head or neck wounds where there may be a fracture.

3.5.2.2 Rescue Breathing

A drowning person is pulled out of the water . . . a man is dragged out of a burning building . . . an auto mechanic is dragged from under a car with its motor running . . . a child is pulled away from an electric wire. In each of these cases, breathing may have stopped. Yet, the victim's life may be saved.

If you come upon an emergency, check to see if the victim is breathing. Look at the chest and listen with an ear to the mouth. If not breathing, begin rescue breathing.

In rescue breathing you breathe your own breath into the victim's lungs. The air in your breath has enough oxygen in it to save a life. For an adult you breathe through the victim's mouth. For a child you breathe into both nose and mouth.

First Aid.

Place the victim face up. Tilt his head far back, chin pointing up. Lift with the fingers of one hand under the chin. Press down with the other hand on the forehead. Pinch the nostrils shut with thumb and forefinger of this hand.

Then take a deep breath and give rescue breathing:

1. Open your mouth wide and seal it over the victim's mouth. (For protection from airborne infectious diseases, use a mouth-barrier device.) Blow into the mouth to fill up the lungs. Look to see that the chest rises.
2. Remove your mouth. Take a deep breath. Look to see that the victim's chest falls as the air escapes.

Repeat steps 1 and 2 every five seconds for an adult or every three seconds for a child (1 to 8 years of age).

When the victim's breathing starts, time your efforts to fit his efforts to breathe for himself. Then care for shock.

If no air is getting into the victim's lungs, move speedily to open the airways:

1. Place one of your hands on your other hand and press the victim's abdomen with upward thrusts.
2. Probe the victim's mouth with two fingers for obstructions. Then quickly resume rescue breathing. Don't give up. Continue until a physician tells you to stop.

Stopped Breathing - No Pulse

If the victim has stopped breathing and there is no pulse, his heart has stopped.

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation is the approved method to start the heart again. CPR requires a trained person. Proper training by local Red Cross chapters or

American Heart Association affiliates is essential because CPR can cause damage, even when done correctly.

Abdominal Thrusts

If someone is choking but conscious and cannot breathe or speak, something has blocked the airway. Encourage the victim to cough, and if that does not dislodge whatever is blocking the airway, then administer some firm back slaps with the heel of your hand on the victim's upper back. If the airway remains blocked, you will need to perform abdominal thrusts.

1. If the victim is sitting, ask them to stand.
2. Put your arms around the victim at the waist.
3. Make a fist with one hand and place your thumb toward the victim just above the navel.
4. Grab your fist with your other hand and give four to five upward squeeze- thrusts to the victim's abdomen. Make the squeeze tight enough to dislodge the foreign body. (Your thrusts are forcing the diaphragm to move air out of the victim's lungs to create an artificial cough.)
5. Repeat the maneuver until the object is dislodged.

Caution: If the person is coughing, wheezing, and breathing in some way, do not use abdominal thrusts.

3.5.2.3 Hypothermia

A deadly hazard to persons on or about outdoor waters is hypothermia.

Hypothermia occurs when the body loses heat faster than it can produce heat because of exposure to cold temperatures. When this occurs, the heart, the nervous system, and the body's normal functions slow and cease.

Prevention

Wear appropriate clothing when it is cold. Cotton is a poor choice because it retains water if it gets wet. Synthetic and wool fibers are better insulation and dry more quickly. Carry an extra change of clothing when boating. You may need it if the weather gets rough, or you may want to put on another layer if the cold becomes more extreme. The

U.S. Coast Guard promotes using life jackets as a method of protection against hypothermia through the 50/50/50 rule: If someone is in 50 degrees Fahrenheit water for 50 minutes, they have a 50 percent better chance of survival.

America's Boating Channel: Cold Weather Boating

Symptoms

Watch for “umbles”—stumbles, mumbles, fumbles, and grumbles. There are three stages of hypothermia and treating it in the earlier stages is far easier and safer than waiting until the situation is dire.

- **Stage 1**: Mild to strong shivering, goose bumps, breathing is quick and shallow, victim is unable to perform complex tasks with hands.
- **Stage 2**: Violent shivering; apparent lack of muscle coordination; movement is slow and labored; mild confusion; victim is pale with blue lips, ears, fingers, and toes.
- **Stage 3**: Shivering stops, difficulty speaking and thinking, stumbling, inability to use hands, pulse and respiration rates decrease, major organs fail, clinical death occurs.

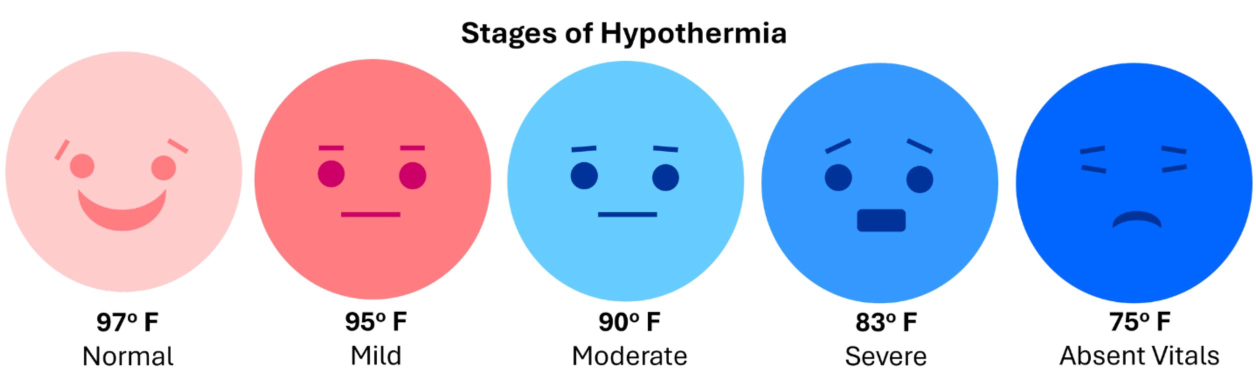
Treatment

Conserve the heat the victim has and replace the heat they have lost.

- Mild to moderate hypothermia:
    - Remove all wet clothes and shelter the victim from wind and weather.
    - Give warm fluids if the victim can drink. Do not give caffeine or alcohol.
    - Cover the person’s body with blankets and put them in a sleeping bag.
- Severe hypothermia:
    - Crawl into the sleeping bag with the victim.
    - Do not administer fluids.
    - Monitor breathing and pulse.
    - If breathing stops, perform rescue breathing and CPR until medical help arrives.

Note: With hypothermia, a person cannot be considered dead until they have been adequately warmed.

[Scouting America Safety Moment: Hypothermia]



3.5.2.4 Heat Exhaustion

Normally, our bodies cool by sweating, but there are factors that can interrupt or impede this process. Children under 5, the aged, people on certain medications, folks who are not used to extreme heat and humidity, and those who are not properly hydrated are the most at risk. When we sweat, our body loses a combination of fluids and salts. If these are not replaced with an adequate intake of fluids, then heat exhaustion occurs.

Prevention

- If working or playing in extreme heat, drink plenty of fluids before, during and after the activity.
- Drink more than usual.
- Avoid caffeine and sugar.
- Wear loose and lightweight clothing.

Symptoms

- Heat exhaustion's symptoms are like the symptoms of shock:
- Heavy sweating
- Feeling faint or nauseous
- Pale, clammy skin
- Extreme thirst
- Headache
- Extreme fatigue
- Cramps
- Dark-colored urine

Treatment

- Get out of the sun and into the shade. Air conditioning is even better.
- Drink cool fluids.
- Cool the body by spraying or sponging with water. Fan the skin.
- Loosen clothing.
- Rest, lie down, and elevate legs and feet.

3.5.2.5 Heatstroke

Heatstroke occurs when a person's core temperature rises to a life-threatening level (above 105 degrees). Causal factors include dehydration and overexertion in hot environments. Symptoms can include hot, red skin that can be either dry or sweaty; confusion; and a rapid pulse.

Treatment

A heatstroke victim must be cooled immediately. They are in danger of dying. To quickly lower the body temperature and begin restoring hydration, move the victim ashore to a cool, shady spot and cool them any way you can. Keep the victim lying down and comfortable, with head and shoulders slightly raised. Remove outer clothing and sponge the victim with cold water. Cover the victim with wet towels, wet clothing, or whatever else is handy, and fan them. Place the victim in a stream, in a tub filled with cool (not ice-cold) water, or in front of an air conditioner running full blast in a house or car. Use combinations of all available treatments.

Get emergency medical help as soon as possible. The victim's temperature might go up again, or they might vomit or require rescue breathing.

Scouting America Safety Moment: Heat Related Illness

3.5.3 Other Common Cases

All ship members should know how to deal with the following emergencies that commonly occur when on the water.

3.5.3.1 Dehydration

Dehydration can play a significant role in several maladies including heat exhaustion, heatstroke, hypothermia, and frostbite.

Water is essential for nearly every bodily function, including brain activity and temperature control. We lose moisture through breathing, sweating, digestion, and urination. A person who loses more water than they take in risks becoming dehydrated. The first sign of dehydration usually is dark urine. Other signs can include weariness, headache and body aches, and confusion.

Prevention

Help keep your body in balance by drinking enough throughout the day. The importance of drinking plenty of fluids cannot be overemphasized. Don't wait until you feel thirsty—that's an indication that you are already becoming a bit dehydrated. Replenish your water supplies at every opportunity and drink often in warm weather and cold alike.

Treatment

A person showing any indications of dehydration should rest in the shade and sip water until the symptoms subside.

3.5.3.2 Sunburn

Although skin appears to recover from sunburn, damage to its cellular structure accumulates. That can lead to premature wrinkling and is a primary cause of skin cancer.

Prevention

Use long sleeve clothing and sunscreen to protect exposed skin, giving special attention to your face, ears, nose, and neck.

Apply it liberally before sunlight exposure and reapply if you are sweating and after immersion in water. Hats with large brims, long-sleeved shirts, and long pants will provide further protection.

Sunlight reflected by water can intensify the damaging effects of solar radiation. Zinc oxide offers total blockage of the sun's rays and might be what you need for your face and ears during watercraft adventures. Wear sunglasses with UV protection to prevent eyestrain, and shield your lips against chapping and sun injury by applying a lip balm with an SPF of 15 or higher.

Treatment

Prevent further injury by getting out of the sun, either by seeking shade or by putting on a hat and clothing that affords protection. Treat painful sunburn with damp cloths. Remedies containing aloe vera also might provide relief.

3.5.3.3 Anaphylactic Shock

In rare cases, stings or bites of insects can cause anaphylactic shock, a condition that restricts breathing passages and requires immediate treatment by a physician or a person trained in emergency first aid. People who are allergic to peanuts, shellfish, and certain other foods can have similar reactions if they ingest those items.

Prevention and Treatment

Scouts and Scouters who know they are susceptible to anaphylactic reactions (and anyone dealing with asthma) should consult with their physicians to prepare themselves for the outdoors with strategies and treatment kits and should share that information with the leaders of their groups. For example, the emergency kits carried by people who know they might suffer from anaphylactic shock often include an EpiPen for injecting a measured dose of epinephrine.

Scouting America Safety Moment: Anaphylaxis

3.5.3.4 Asthma

The symptoms of an asthma attack can be like those of a person suffering anaphylactic shock—a constriction of the throat and increasing difficulty in breathing. Conditions afloat that might trigger an asthma attack include physical exertion, changes in humidity, and weather.

Prevention and Treatment

Many people coping with asthma use inhalers and other forms of medication to treat asthma episodes. Before a cruise begins, they should fully inform group leaders of their health histories, treatment regimens, medications, and the locations of those medications.

Scouting America Safety Moment: Asthma

3.5.3.5 Jellyfish Stings

Your trips along shorelines and on the open sea can bring you within proximity of a variety of animals that are best observed from a distance. The Portuguese man-of- war and jellyfish have stinging cells on their tentacles. When touched, the toxins in those cells may attach to the skin and cause a sharp, burning pain.

Treatment

Do not wash affected skin with fresh water, as that can cause the release of more toxins. Instead, soak the injury for 30 minutes in alcohol or vinegar, and then use tweezers to remove the remaining tentacles. Quickly get the victim under medical care. People who are allergic to jellyfish stings might go into deep shock.

3.6 General Safety

Vessel and equipment safety rules that apply to a ship vary across the nation; however, there are some general rules that have broad application. No matter what, each individual needs to exercise care and common sense around boats.

3.6.1 Vessel Safety

1. Before you even get on the boat, don't forget to file a float plan; and before you leave the dock, make sure you have all the safety equipment required by law on board.
2. Make sure you have enough fuel, oil, water, food, and sunscreen.
3. Stow everything properly. Make sure there are no tripping hazards on deck and down below.
4. Wear your life jacket!
5. Keep hands, feet, loose clothing, long hair, and jewelry away from winches. Braid the hair or tuck it under a hat and leave the jewelry at home.
6. Operate the boat at safe speeds.
7. Stay away from beaches and people. Propellers can cause serious injuries.
8. Have a designated lookout. It's the law.
9. Be courteous to others on and around the water. Know and practice the rules of the road (Navigation Rules).
10. Know where you are and where you are going. Pay attention to posted signs and markers and keep an eye on the weather.
11. Pack out what you pack in and leave the water better than you found it.

3.6.2 Tool Safety

1. Wear safety glasses with most hand and power tools.
2. Wear the appropriate protective equipment for the tool being used—gloves, helmets, shoes, aprons, etc.
3. Inspect all tools before using them. Check for wear, cracks, breaks, etc.
4. Make sure all power tool shields are in place and safety interconnects are working.
5. The work area should be well lit, clean, dry, and free of obstructions.
6. Avoid loose clothing and secure long hair.
7. Use the right tool for the job.

8. Do not use power tools unless you have been properly trained, and only use them with adult permission and supervision.
9. Disconnect power when changing blades or bits and during cleaning or maintenance.
10. If lifting is necessary, plan before you lift. Know where you are taking the object and clear the path. Get help with bulky loads and use the appropriate equipment for loads too heavy to carry safely.
11. If you are tired, stop. If you are distracted, stop. Fatigue and inattention cause accidents and injuries.

Apprentice 5d. *Know the safety rules that apply to vessels and equipment used by your ship, and safety standards in the use of power tools, machinery, lifting heavy objects, and other safety devices used by your ship.*

3.6.3 Galley Safety

Stoves aboard ship are a potential source of fire and explosion. They must be kept in good repair. Always shut off the fuel source at the tank when the stove is not in use and have a fire extinguisher within arm's length of the cook in the galley.

3.6.3.1 Propane

Various types of stoves are used aboard ships. Each type has unique characteristics. Propane stoves use compressed gas that is heavier than air. While propane is relatively inexpensive, a leak could let the heavy gas sink into the bilge or engine area and cause an explosion. The stove must have both an electrical and manual shutoff. The stove should be thermocoupled, meaning that if a flame is blown out, the gas automatically turns off.

Scouting America Safety Moment: Propane Stoves

3.6.3.2 Pressurized Alcohol

Pressurized alcohol fuel stoves have a complex lighting sequence. The bowl under the burner must be filled with fuel and the stove valve turned off. The bowl is then ignited, and more fuel added a little at a time until the fuel vaporizes when it reaches the hot burner. No liquid fuel should be visible in the bowl when the burner valve is opened. If an alcohol fire begins, remember, it can be put out with water.

3.6.3.3 Compressed Natural Gas

Compressed natural gas is lighter than air and for that reason is safer. This fuel unfortunately is difficult to find and does not last as long as propane. A compressed natural gas stove works like a home gas stove.

3.6.3.4 Charcoal

Your ship may carry a charcoal grill for shore use. Charcoal produces carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas, which can accumulate to toxic levels in a closed environment. Charcoal should never be used inside, even if ventilation is provided. Charcoal continues to produce carbon monoxide until it is completely extinguished.

It is recommended that you wait 48 hours before disposing of ashes; however, if you need to dispose of ashes before they are completely cooled, soak them completely in water, wrap in heavy duty foil and dispose of them in a non-combustible container. When using charcoal that is not "ready to light," arrange the briquettes in a pyramid and douse them with lighter fluid. While waiting for the fluid to soak into the briquettes, stow the fluid a safe distance from the grill. **Caution:** Never add lighter fluid to coals that are already hot or warm. When using instant light briquettes, do not add lighter fluid.

Ordinary 5g. ii. *Explain the use of charcoal, pressurized alcohol, and propane. Include the safety precautions for each.*

3.6.3.5 Isopropyl Alcohol

Isopropyl alcohol stoves generally have a simple lightweight design making them ideal for smaller craft. Isopropyl alcohol is considered safer than traditional fuels like propane or pressurized alcohol but burn at a lower temperature than other fuels, making it less efficient for cooking large meals or boiling water quickly.

3.6.3.6 Food Safety

Thousands of bacteria are naturally present in our environment—some beneficial, some deadly. Bacteria in foods can cause nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, fever, and worse, but foodborne illness can be prevented. Proper storage, processing, and cooking of food reduces and destroys bacteria.

1. Wash your hands and clean all surfaces often. Clean and sanitize everything used in food preparation prior to its use.
2. When purchasing and storing food, separate raw meats, poultry, and seafood from other foods. The same goes for food preparation. Do not process vegetables on the same cutting board you used for meat unless it has been thoroughly washed.
3. Bacteria multiply rapidly from 40°F–140°F, so make sure foods are stored quickly and at the correct temperatures.
4. Cook food, especially meat, to the proper temperatures.
5. Wash all fruits and vegetables that are to be eaten raw.
6. Pure drinking water is essential. It should be available in clean, tightly covered containers. You must also be sure that it is dispensed in a sanitary manner—each person drinks from their own cup if paper cups are not available.

Ordinary 5e.iv. *Demonstrate appropriate sanitation techniques for food preparation and meal cleanup.*

Scouting America Safety Moment: Food Borne Illness

Scouting America Safety Moment: Food Allergies

3.6.4 Overloading or Improper Loading and Boating Accidents

United States Coast Guard statistics show the most common cause of boating accidents is overloading and improper loading of small boats. Most fatal accidents caused by a loading error involved boats under 26 feet in length, and half of these vessels had 10 horsepower or less.

The number of seats is not indicative of the number of passengers a boat can carry safely. A safe load capacity depends on the boat's construction and characteristics. Weather and sea conditions must also be considered.

There are several things to keep in mind before leaving the dock. First, when loading a boat, distribute the load evenly. Keep the load low. Don't let anyone stand up in a small boat. A boat under 26 feet can be very unstable with just one person moving around. If moving is necessary, stop or slow the boat. Keep low and toward the centerline of the boat. Above all, don't overload your boat. An overloaded boat will easily swamp or capsize because it cannot react to waves and other actions properly.

Manufacturers install a plate on their boats showing the recommended weight capacity (a capacity plate may not be installed on older boats). This usually indicates the number of people the boat can carry as well as the number of pounds for persons, motor, fuel, and gear. The recommendations on the capacity plate are for fair weather, however, and do not relieve the operator of the responsibility for exercising their judgment. If weather and water conditions are adverse, the load should be reduced accordingly.

America's Boating Channel: Capacity Compliance

3.6.5 Low Head Dams

Low head dams are defined as those dams whose overflow, or spillway, discharges water of a foot or more depth measured at the lip of the outfall in normal weather.

The downstream portions of such dams should be treated with the greatest respect. A swimmer or boater caught in the boil, backwash, or eddy currents on such downstream side is in dire peril. Not only are they unable to swim out of such boils, falling water has such force they may be pitchpoled under water, like a shirt in a clothes dryer, until they drown. Rescue is almost impossible.

If you plan to cruise rivers and canals in unfamiliar territory, your wisest investment is a topographical chart. Know where your portages are and go ashore at least 100 yards upstream from any low head dam.

3.6.6 Lightning Safety

Open water can be a hazardous place during lightning storms. Plan to be off the water before afternoon when thunderstorms are more prevalent. If you are caught in a dangerous area, quickly move to shore, ideally away from the direction of the approaching storm. Bodies of water can conduct electricity.

If a lightning storm catches your group on land and in the open, spread out so that people are at least 30 feet from one another. Further minimize your risk by staying low with a life jacket or pad between you and your boat. Stay aboard and keep hands and paddles out of the water.

Those struck by lightning might suffer varying degrees of burns. Of more immediate concern is the likelihood that their hearts have stopped beating, and they are no longer breathing. Treat by checking their circulation and respiration; if necessary, perform CPR. Once they are stabilized, attend to burns or other injuries, treat for shock, and closely monitor their vital signs until they are under a physician’s care.

Scouting America Safety Moment: Weather Related Safety

3.6.7 Animal Safety

Seeing animals such as whales, seals, and dolphins in their natural habitat is always a pleasure, but it’s wise to remember that they are the residents of the water while we humans are the visitors. Whales, seals, and dolphins are large and interesting, but we need to treat them with respect, give them enough space so they won’t feel threatened by our presence. If we do so, they will seldom present a risk to our safety.

When helping victims of bites or stings, do whatever you can to avoid being bitten or stung yourself. A rescuer who gets injured could greatly complicate any emergency.

3.6.8 Shark Safety

Though rare, shark attacks on humans create dramatic headlines in the media. Many more people die each year from the effects of bee stings than from shark bites. Reduce the remote likelihood of a shark attack by avoiding areas where sharks are known to congregate.

Don’t enter the water alone. Blood, fish bait, and human waste in the water might attract sharks, as can bright objects such as jewelry. If sharks are sighted, return to shore quickly but with a minimum of splashing.

3.6.9 Carbon Monoxide Safety

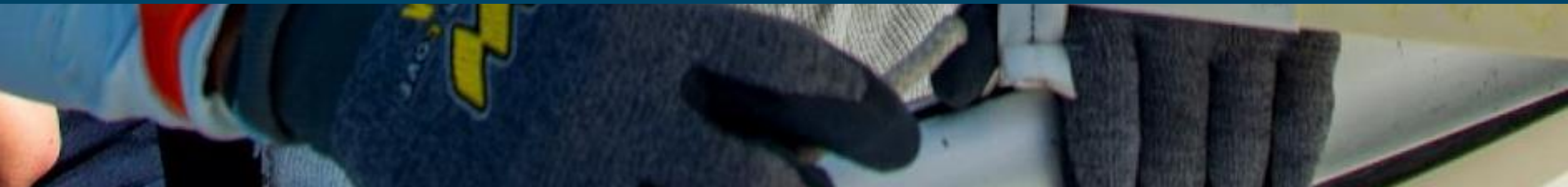
Carbon monoxide is an odorless, tasteless gas that can silently build up from onboard engines, generators, and even some stoves, leading to dizziness, nausea, headaches, and ultimately death. To protect yourself from carbon monoxide poisoning, you should install and maintain working carbon monoxide detectors. They should be placed near sleeping quarters and in enclosed areas where fuel-burning appliances are located. All engines and generators should be regularly inspected and serviced and should be properly ventilated. When anchoring or docking downwind of other boats, be aware of running engines.

Common warning signs of carbon monoxide poisoning include headache, dizziness, nausea, fatigue, and drowsiness. If you or someone in your group experience any of these symptoms, get fresh air immediately and seek medical attention.

Scouting America Safety Moment: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning
USCG Carbon Monoxide Resources

4.0 General Seamanship

Sea Scout Manual



4.0 General Seamanship

Mastering the fundamentals in this chapter unlocks the door to confident seamanship aboard any vessel, whether paddlecraft, sailing, or power. You'll learn essential skills like marlinspike, block and tackle, line handling, docking, and practical deck work, along with vessel maintenance, trailering, and construction.

4.1 Marlinspike

Marlinspike seamanship is the care, handling, knotting, splicing, and use of fiber and wire rope. A marlinspike is a pointed metal tool (or its wooden equivalent, the fid) used in marling or in separating rope strands for splicing.

In the days when sailing vessels ruled the seas, every sailor had to be an expert in this field. They developed marlinspike seamanship into a leisure-time art that produced hundreds of knots, hitches, bends, and splices. Today, however, only about a dozen of these are of any regular use to sailors of small boats.

4.1.1 Rope

Rope is perhaps one of the oldest and most useful tools of man. In small boats, it is used for mooring, anchoring, towing, and general utility. Sailboats have many uses for rope, including standing rigging (wire), halyards (wire and/or rope), sheets, etc. All rope aboard a vessel is referred to as line unless it has a specific name such as a halyard, sheet, etc.

Rope is made from three types of material – vegetable fibers, synthetic materials, and wire. In the early days, rope was made from whatever material was available, such as vines or strips of animal hides, but these crude materials were gradually replaced by stronger fibers like flax, cotton, and ramie. These products were replaced by jute, sisal, and Manila hemp. The last two are still widely used for certain applications.

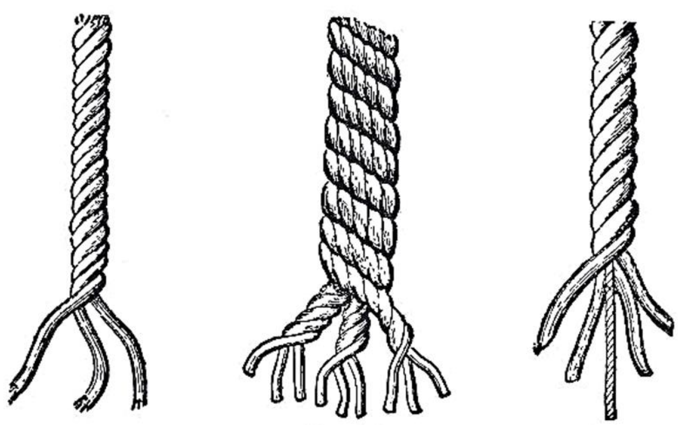
During World War II, the scarcity of sisal and Manila hemp prompted scientists to develop a substitute. As a result, many synthetic rope-making materials were produced. Some of these new products proved superior to the vegetable fibers used for so many years.

Ordinary 6a. *Name the various materials used to manufacture rope, the advantages and disadvantages of each, and the characteristics of laid and braided rope. Discuss the meaning of lay, thread, strand, and hawser. Explain how rope is sized and measured.*

Dacron and nylon have proved particularly effective, and polyethylene and polypropylene have many uses in rope manufacture. Sometimes two synthetic materials are used together such as a polyethylene cover over a dacron center. Although braided synthetic lines are proving to be increasingly popular, laid rope of either a natural or synthetic fiber is still most widely used. It is made in diameters from 3/16 to 4 inches. The manufacture of laid rope involves four principal steps:

1. Clean fibers, lubricated to withstand internal friction, are laid parallel and drawn into continuous “slivers.” (This first step is not necessary with synthetic fibers.)
2. The slivers are spun into yarns of uniform size, twisted in one direction. Synthetic fibers are spun directly into yarns.
3. The yarns are twisted in opposite directions to form strands.
4. The strands are laid, again in opposite directions, to form the finished rope. Reversing the direction of the twist twice makes the three elements work against each other; otherwise, the rope would come apart quite easily. Rope is laid normally with three strands but sometimes with four. Except for several special purpose ropes, it is laid right-handed, i.e., spiraling upward to the right if the rope is held vertically.

4.1.1.1 The Various Lays



Plain Laid — Cable Laid — Four Stranded Plain Laid With Heart

Plain-laid rope is three-stranded, right or left. The most common lay is right-handed.

Cable-laid rope consists of three ropes, laid together into a larger rope. In laying any rope, plain or cable, the component strands or ropes are given an extra twist, or a fore turn as rope makers call it. This is taken out when the rope is laid because the back turn of the laying counterbalances the fore turn of the forming.

Four-stranded rope is plain-laid but consists of four strands. As four strands will not lie together without a hole in the center, this center space is filled in by a small rope known as the heart. Therefore, four-stranded rope is stronger than three-stranded rope of the same size.

A **hawser** is any rope 5 inches or more in circumference. Such ropes are used for towing vessels, making fast alongside wharves, warping, etc.

A **coil** is the standard method of preparing rope for shipment. It is usually 200 fathoms in length (1,200 feet). Great care must be exercised in taking rope out of a coil. First, determine the lay, whether right or left. If right-laid, proceed as follows:

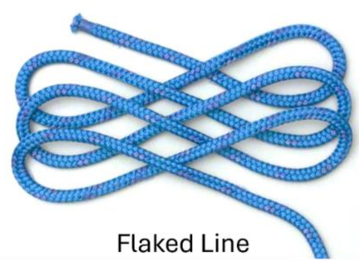
1. Loosen the cover, lay the coil on the flat side with the inside end nearest the deck.
2. Reach down through the center of the coil and draw the inside up and out of the coil. Never uncoil from the outside since extra turns are put into the rope and kinks are liable to form.
3. Coil down loosely, right-handed, or clockwise.

As you coil a line, place a slight twist in the line to flatten the coils. Wrap the last of the line three or more times near the top of the coils. Form a loop in the end of the line and pass it through the coils. You can either hand the coiled line from the loop or pass the loop over the top of the coil so the line can be stored in a compartment.

One way to keep kinks from forming is to flake the line. To flake a line, start at the free end, remove all twists from the rope, and lay the rope out in overlapping figure-eight layers so it will run out freely without tangling.

Suppose a rope becomes full of turns and kinks are forming. You may get the order, "**Thoroughfoot** that rope!" To thoroughfoot, first determine if the twists are to the left or the right. If the turns are left-handed, the rope should be coiled down left-handed and then dip the end through the coil. If the turns are right-handed, the rope is coiled down right-handed before dipping the end through the coil.

A **Flemish coil** is made by taking the end of a line and spiraling it into a flat coil on the deck. It is a way to tidy up loose ends and reduce tripping hazards.



Flaked Line

Flemish Coil

***Ordinary 6c.** Demonstrate your ability to secure a line to pilings, cleats, and rings, and to coil, flake, and Flemish a line.*

4.1.1.2 Sizing Rope

Rope sizes are sometimes measured by circumference, but the diameter is more commonly used. The strength of rope is measured by the load that it will support without breaking. Different kinds of ropes vary considerably in their strength characteristics.

In any strenuous boating use, the minimum safe tensile strength under normal conditions is five times the weight of the object attached to the rope. Thus, a water-skier weighing 175 pounds needs a towing line of about 875-pound tensile strength. This 5 to 1 safety factor allows for sudden strains and for normal deterioration.

The size of rope is proportional to its strength, other things being equal. However, the best rope for a given purpose is not always the size indicated by the tensile strength specification.

Another important factor is the use of the rope. This is particularly important in rope used to run through blocks. If the diameter is too small, the rope will tend to slip and roll in the sheave, wearing out quickly. A rope that is too large for a particular block will chafe against the sides of the block and wear out before it should.

The stretching quality or elasticity is an important consideration in choosing rope. Two elements are involved in determining this—permanent elongation and working elasticity.

Permanent elongation refers to the permanent increase in length the first time a load is put on a rope. Under normal conditions, Manila stretches approximately 1.5 percent; Dacron, 0.5 percent; and nylon, 4 percent.

Working elasticity measures the amount that rope can be stretched and recover while in use. This quality varies considerably in types of rope materials as well as the load applied and how long the rope might be free of strain between uses. Under a normal (20 percent) load and relaxation period, working elasticity varies from 7 percent in Manila to 9 percent in Dacron to 22 percent in nylon.

These stretching qualities make nylon well suited to mooring and anchor lines, where it can act as a shock absorber. On the other hand, nylon is much too elastic for use on sailboat halyards or sheets. Dacron or Manila rope is best for this.

Rope Weight and Strength Specifications

Nominal Cir. (inches)	Dia. (inches)	Tensile Strength of **Manila** in Pounds	Tensile Strength of **Polyethylene** in Pounds	Tensile Strength of **Dacron** in Pounds	Tensile Strength of **Nylon** in Pounds
3/4	1/4	600	1,200	1,750	1,950
1	5/16	1,000	1,750	2,650	2,950
1 1/8	3/8	1,350	2,500	3,600	4,200
1 1/4	7/16	1,750	3,400	4,800	5,500
1 1/2	1/2	2,650	4,100	6,100	7,200
2	5/8	4,400	5,700	9,000	11,000
2 1/4	3/4	5,400	7,800	12,500	15,300
2 3/4	7/8	7,700	11,000	16,000	21,000
3	1	9,000	13,300	20,000	26,500

Nominal Cir. (inches)	Dia. (inches)	Weight of **Manila** (Pounds per 100 ft)	Weight of **Polyethylene** (Pounds per 100 ft)	Weight of **Dacron** (Pounds per 100 ft)	Weight of **Nylon** (Pounds per 100 ft)
3/4	1/4	1.96	1.25	2.45	1.74
1	5/16	2.84	1.88	3.60	2.65
1 1/8	3/8	4.02	2.94	5.00	3.85
1 1/4	7/16	5.15	4.00	6.60	5.25
1 ¼	1/2	7.35	5.00	8.40	6.95
2	5/8	13.10	8.10	12.80	10.60
2 ¼	3/4	16.30	11.50	18.00	15.50
2 ¾	7/8	22.00	16.20	23.50	20.80
3	1	26.50	19.60	30.00	27.50

4.1.1.3 The Care of Rope

Dry rope well before stowing it after use. To clean, wet it down with fresh water before drying and stowing. Keep rope free from sand and grit and avoid contact with acids.

To examine rope, open the lay and look at the inside strands. If the rope is powdery, or fibers are broken, use it with care. The inside yarns of a rope break first. Sometimes, when a rope has been overstressed, many of the inside yarns are broken while the cover yarns appear good and sound. It may break with a small load.

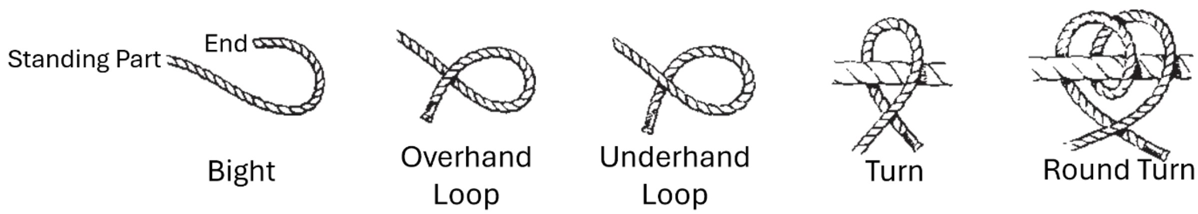
Synthetic rope fibers are not attacked by the fungi that cause rot and mildew to Manila rope. Synthetic rope absorbs little water, so it does not need to be dried after use, like Manila.

4.1.2 Helpful Knot Terminology

Old-time seamen made quite a distinction between a knot, a hitch, and a bend. A knot is used to close or stopper something (reef knot, overhand knot, etc.) A hitch is used to attach a line to an object (clove hitch, rolling hitch, etc.) A bend is used to connect two pieces of rope (sheet bend, Carrick bend, etc.) Over the years these definitions have become blurred, and the general term “knot” is commonly used today.

- The **end** of a rope is what you work with in tying a knot. (If passing through a block, it is called the fall.)
- The **standing part** is the long unused or belayed end of a rope.
- The **bight** is the loop or half loop formed by turning the rope back on itself.
- An **overhand loop** is made by crossing the end over the standing part.
- An **underhand loop** is made by crossing the end under the standing part.
- A **turn** is one loop around an object. A round turn is two loops around an object.

Knot Terminology



There are three additional points to remember in knot tying:

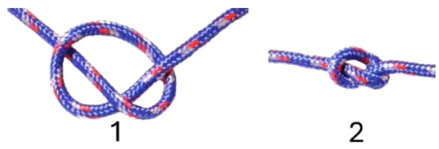
1. Every knot requires passing rope either over or under itself or both. If this is not done carefully, the wrong knot, or no knot at all, will result.
2. A knot must be tightened slowly and evenly with all elements of the knot in proper relationship. If this is not done, an embarrassing snarl may result.
3. In joining two lengths of rope, you can reduce the rope’s strength up to 50 percent by using a knot. A well-made splice, however, retains about 90 percent of the rope’s strength. Therefore, a carefully made splice is preferable to a knot when strength is important.

4.1.3 Knots

4.1.3.1 Overhand Knot

The overhand knot is the smallest and simplest of knots and is the basis of many other knots. It can be an effective stopper but will jam when pulled too tight. To make an overhand knot, make an overhand loop and pass the end under and up through the loop.

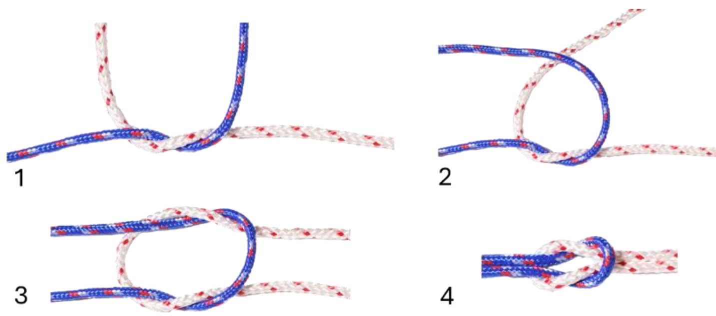
Overhand Knot



4.1.3.2 Reef or Square Knot

This knot is used to tie the reef points when reefing a sail. The knot is often tied as a slipped hitch to permit a rapid release. Never use this knot to join two lines. It would be unreliable. Unless this knot is tied carefully, you will come up with a worthless granny knot.

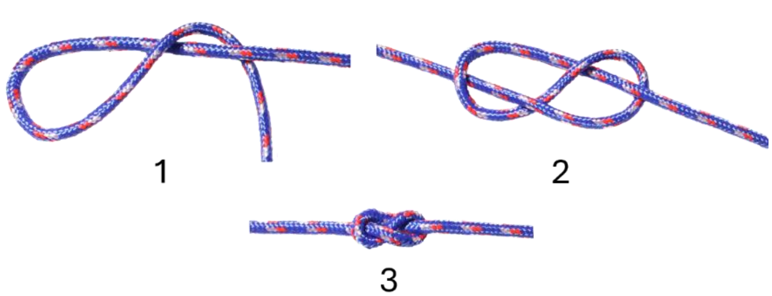
Square Knot



4.1.3.3 Figure Eight Knot

An extra turn made to an overhand knot will give you a figure eight knot. This knot is easily untied and gentle to fiber. It is the best knot for keeping a rope end from running through a fairlead or block. To make this knot, make an underhand loop; then bring the end around and over the standing part, under and up through the loop.

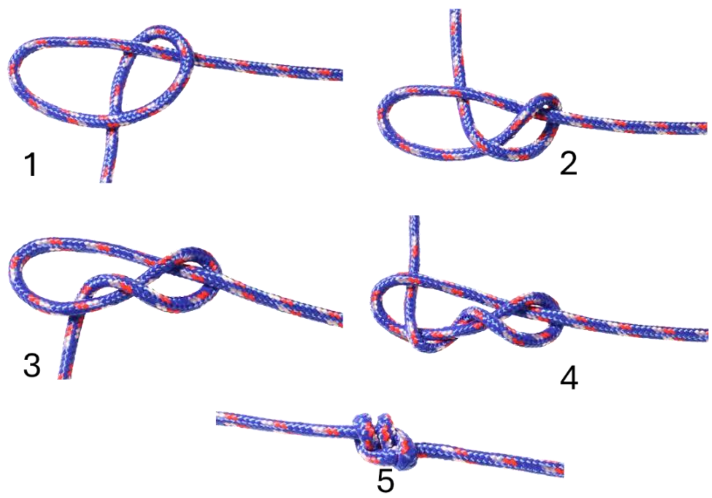
Figure 8 Knot



4.1.3.4 Stevedore's Knot

The stevedore's knot is used to prevent the end of a fall from running through the large swallow of a cargo block. Make a bight in the end of the rope and then wrap the working end once around the standing part. Make a half turn and take it back up to the top of the knot. Tuck the end up through the top loop and tighten the knot.

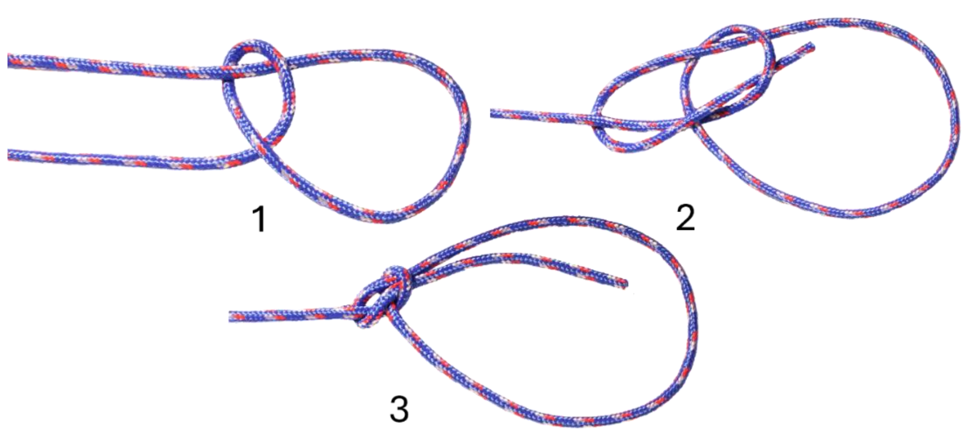
Stevedore's Knot



4.1.3.5 Bowline

This has been called the king of knots. Nothing can jam it. It will never slip if properly made. It can be tied in the hand and dropped over a cleat, bitt, or piling or formed around a mooring ring. To tie a bowline, make an overhand loop with the end held toward you, pass the end under and up through the loop, then behind the standing part and down through the loop again, adjust the bight carefully, and draw tight. This is a knot you can both trust and be proud of. The bowline as a knot has no connection with the bow line used to tie up the bow of your boat. The bowline was first described by Thomas Bowling. In use, "Bowling's knot" became the "bowline."

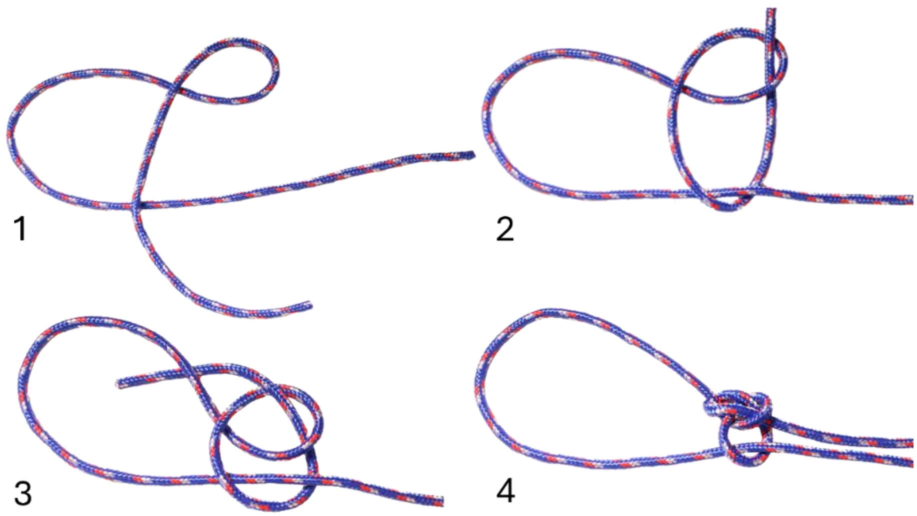
Bowline



4.1.3.6 Running Bowline

The running bowline is simply a bowline with the loop first passed about the standing part before the bowline is formed. The illustration shows the result, but it is more easily understood when you see it tied.

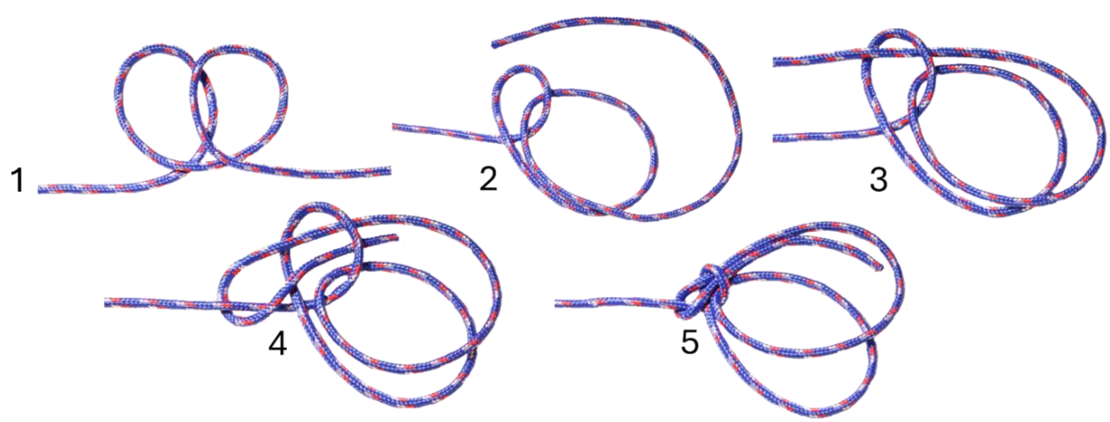
Running Bowline



4.1.3.7 French (Double) Bowline

The French bowline provides two nonslip loops used for hoisting, lowering, etc. To tie this knot, start with an overhand loop as on a regular bowline, but pass the end through twice to form two larger loops: finish as on a regular bowline by passing the line behind the standing part and down through the original loop.

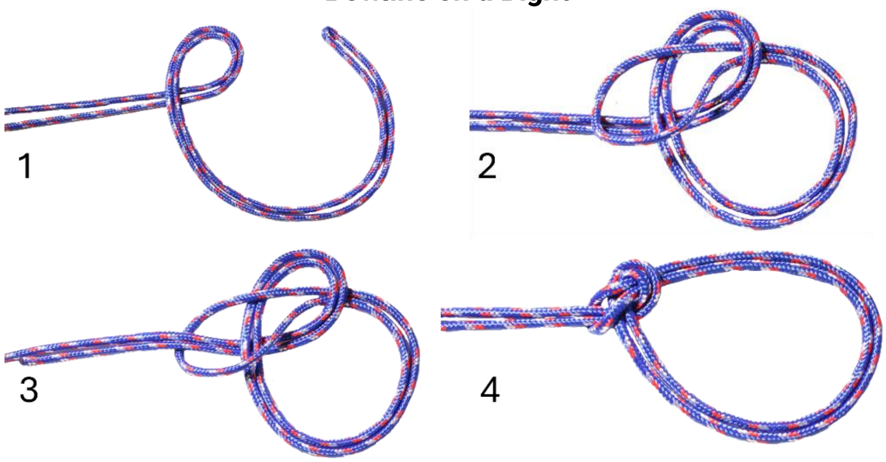
French Bowline



4.1.3.8 Bowline on a Bight

The bowline on a bight increases the strength of a bowline and makes several loops for various purposes. It is formed in the same way as a bowline using the bight instead of the end, the parts being double. When the bight is brought up through the gooseneck, it is passed down around the loop and up behind the standing part. The illustration shows this.

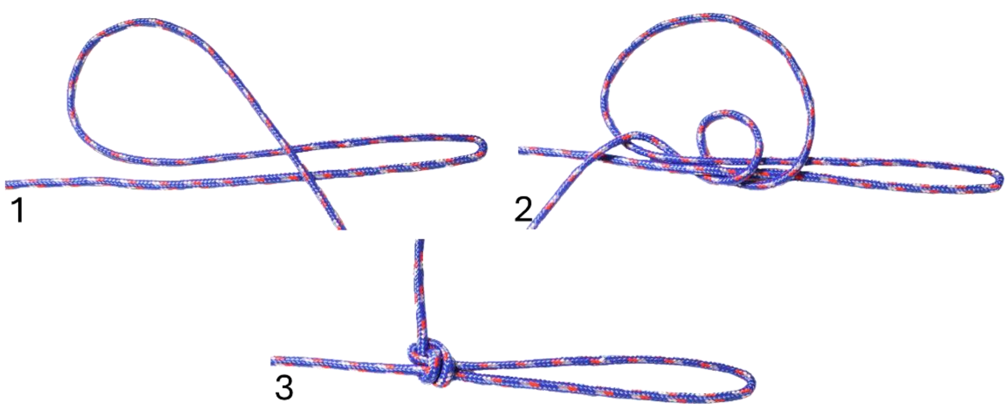
Bowline on a Bight



4.1.3.9 Slipknot

This knot with a sliding noose is useful for various purposes. When pulled tight, it may be hard to break free. To tie, make an overhand knot around the standing part.

Slipknot



4.1.3.10 Fisherman's Knot

This is an excellent way to join lengths of small line together, such as a fishing line. Lay end portions of two lines side by side. Tie overhand knots around opposite strands and pull the knots together. When drawn tight, this will not slip.

Fisherman's Knot

Apprentice 6. *Using both large and small lines, tie and explain the use of the following knots: overhand, square, figure eight, bowline, two half hitches, clove hitch, sheet bend, and cleat hitch.*

4.1.4 Hitches

4.1.4.1 Half Hitch

This is the smallest and simplest of all hitches and the start of others. It may be used to fasten to an object with only a right-hand pull, but quickly slips if not reinforced. To tie, pass the end of the rope around the object and tie an overhand knot to the standing part.

Half Hitch

4.1.4.2 Two Half Hitches

This is a quick and very reliable knot employed when making lines fast at a mooring. To tie, make a half hitch and then add another next to it. Additional half hitches will add strength.

Two Half Hitches

4.1.4.3 Clove Hitch

The clove hitch is a simple, handy way to fasten a rope temporarily around a pile or spar. To tie a clove hitch, take a turn around the object, bringing the end of the rope over itself from below; then, take a second turn with the end under itself. This knot consists of two half hitches in opposite directions.

Clove Hitch

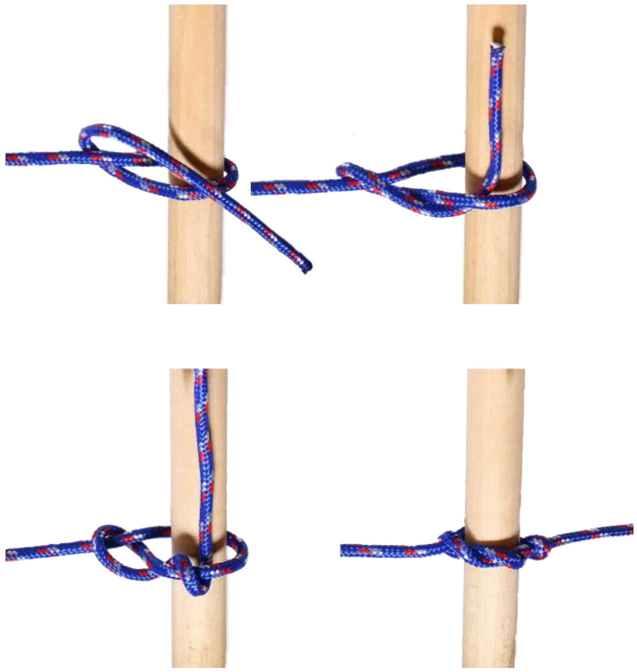
4.1.4.4 Rolling Hitch

This is a very effective hitch when a pull is to be resisted along the length of a spar. However, it is only effective for a steady pull. Slacking and jerking are liable to loosen it.

4.1.4.5 Timber Hitch

The timber hitch is useful when lowering or hoisting a spar or pole. To tie, pass the rope around the spar and take a turn on the standing part; twist the end back on itself for at least three turns, following the lay of the rope. Adding a half hitch enables one to tow a spar end first on a straight course.

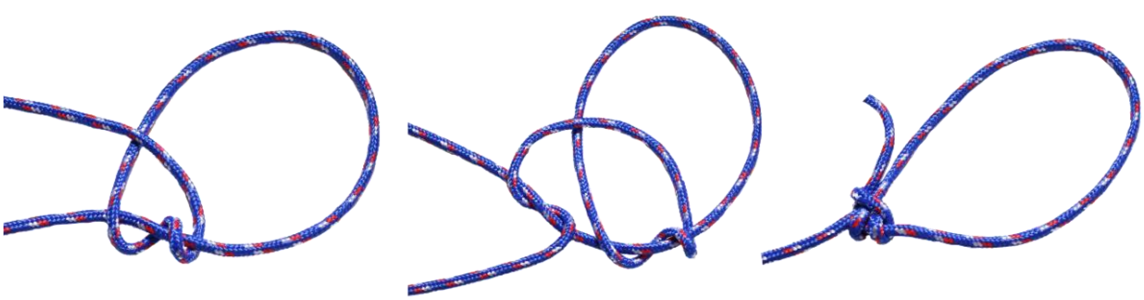
Timber Hitch



4.1.4.6 Midshipman's (Taut-Line) Hitch

This hitch is used to keep a line taut. It is like two half hitches with the first half hitch doubled. It is easy to untie if the second half hitch is slippery. Frequently used for tent guy lines.

Midshipman's Hitch



4.1.4.7 Marline Hitch

This is a very simple hitch, used in lashing hammocks, marling down canvas chafing gear on large ropes, etc. It is often made wrong. The ends of the rope, coming out of the hitch, should always come out from underneath.

Marline Hitch

4.1.4.8 Cleat Hitch

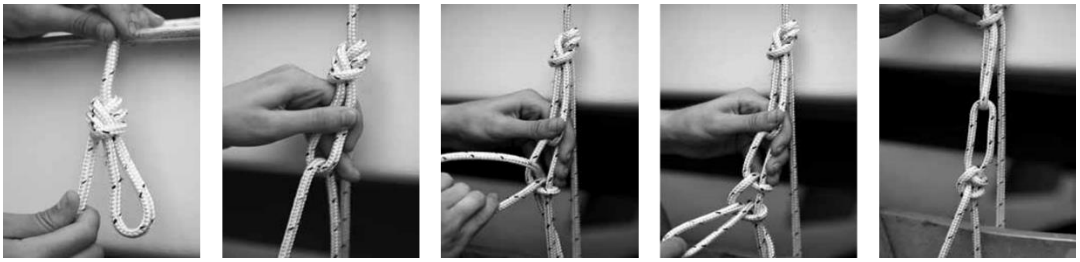
This hitch is a turn secured to a cleat with figure eights and is locked in place with a half hitch.

Cleat Hitch

4.1.4.9 Trucker's Hitch

This hitch provides mechanical advantage when tightened. It is especially useful for securing boats to trailers. To complete this hitch, first tie one end of the rope to a fixed object. Midway along the rope, tie a slippery half hitch to form a loop in the middle of the line. Next, make a wrap around another fixed point opposite the tie-in point and feed the free end through the loop. Using the loop as a pulley, pull down with the free end as tight as possible and secure the knot with two half hitches around one or both lines.

Trucker's Hitch



4.1.5 Bends

4.1.5.1 Sheet (Becket) Bend

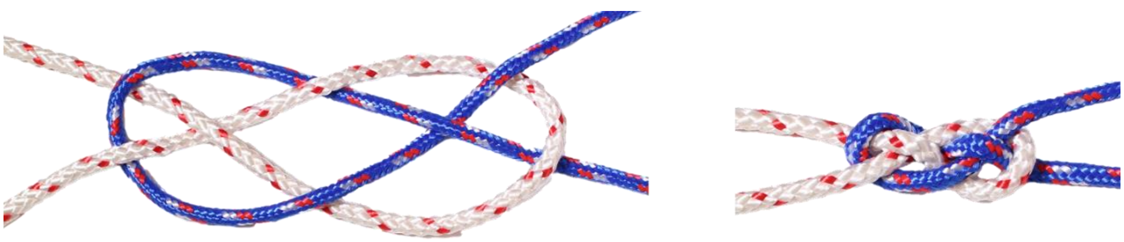
A sheet bend is used for securing a small rope to the bight of a larger rope. It is very much like the bowline but uses two ropes rather than one. To tie a sheet bend, make an overhand loop with the end of one rope; pass the end of the other rope under and up through this loop, behind the first loop's standing part and down through the loop again.

Sheet Bend

4.1.5.2 Carrick Bend

The Carrick bend is used for joining two lines. It is particularly appropriate for very heavy rope or cable that is too large and stiff to be easily formed into other common bends.

Carrick Bend



Ordinary 6b. *Using both large and small lines, tie and explain the use of the following knots: stevedore's knot, French (double) bowline, bowline on a bight, timber hitch, rolling hitch, midshipman's (taut-line) hitch, and marline hitch.*

4.1.6 Whipping

All ropes should be whipped or heat-sealed to prevent the ends from unraveling. On Manila and larger rope, whipping is done with small stuff (marline, spun yarn, etc.), and waxed cord is used for smaller rope.

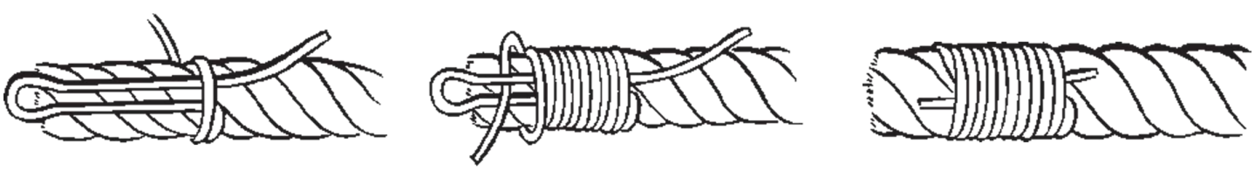
4.1.6.1 Heat-Sealing Synthetic Rope

Synthetic rope ends can be sealed by melting with a special heat tool for the purpose of cutting and sealing or by melting over a flame to fuse the fibers. Tape wound around the ends can provide a temporary whip.

Ordinary 6d. *Demonstrate how to cut and heat-seal a synthetic line and whip the end of plain-laid line using waxed cord or similar material.*

4.1.6.2 Common Whipping

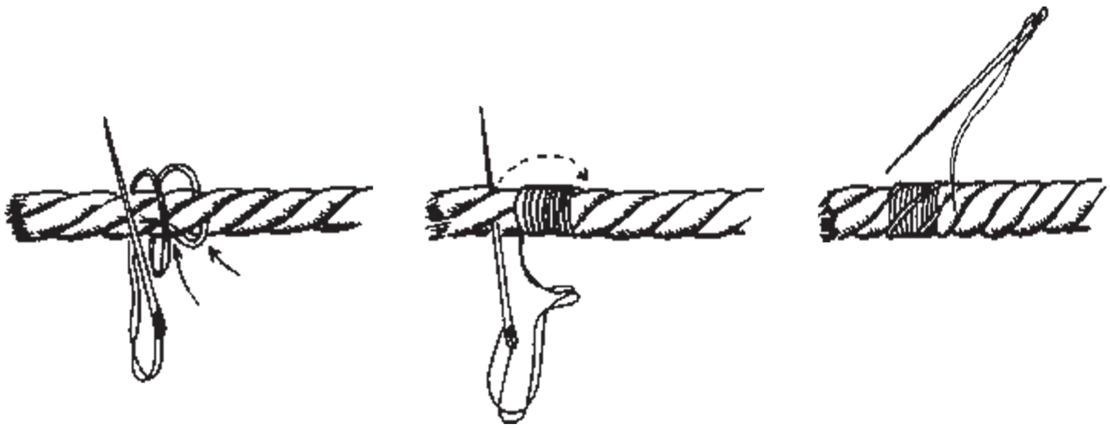
1. Place the end of the yarn at the end of the rope and lay a loop of it along the rope.
2. Wind the yarn tightly around both rope and loop for a distance about equal to the rope's diameter.
3. To finish, put the winding end through the loop and pull the original end to draw the loop under the whipping. Trim both ends. This method is also recommended for synthetic rope.



4.1.6.3 Palm-and-Needle Whipping

The advantage of this method over a common whipping is that the end turns never become unwound.

The whipping should be started "inboard" and wound to the end of the rope. Then, put on the binding turns in the lay, as shown. If you were to start the binding from the end of the rope and work in, your last binding turn would come "outboard" and the whole thing would loosen.



Able 6a. *Complete a back splice, eye splice, short splice, long splice, and a palm-and- needle whipping.*

4.1.7 Splicing

Splicing is the sailor's art of joining any two parts of rope together permanently. The most important step in splicing is the start. Marry the strands correctly, and the remaining steps follow easily.

To prepare a rope for splicing, unlay the end adequately and whip each strand with a temporary whipping of small stuff or tape. Extra care is needed with nylon as the strands do not retain their set and will quickly frizz.

Splicing requires several tools. The first is a knife. The second is a fid. A rigging knife is also handy, since it combines a blade and a small marlinspike in one tool.

Fids

4.1.7.1 Fid

A fid is a tool used in ropework for tasks such as unlaying rope for splicing and untying knots. A fid is a cone tapered to a rounded or flattened point that is usually 6 to 10 inches long. The size of the rope being worked determines the size of the fid required. A marlinspike (for which the marlin fish was named) is a similar tool but is made from metal while a fid is typically made from wood or bone.

4.1.7.2 Tucks

A tuck occurs when you pass an unlaid strand under a fixed strand. Four tucks will hold any splice in normal fiber rope, providing they are full strands, i.e., not tapered off. Tapering off is made after the fourth tuck and is done by reducing each of the strands by one-third; tucking, reducing by another third; and finally, tucking and trimming off close. Six tucks are advised for more slippery synthetic rope.

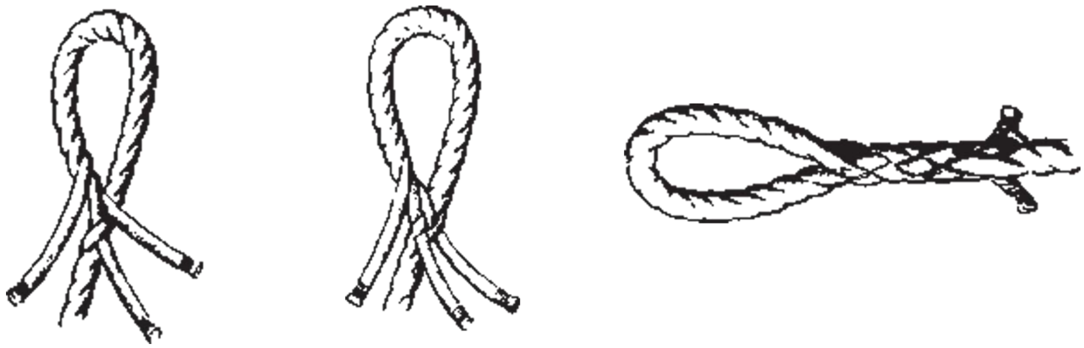
4.1.7.3 Eye Splice

The eye splice is the strongest type of rope loop and may be formed around a thimble. Unlay the rope for a distance of about 12 times the rope's diameter. If you are a beginner in the art of splicing, it is a good idea to put on a temporary whipping at the point where the strands begin to unlay or at the crotch. This whipping should be cut off after the splice is formed.

Use a fid or marlinspike to lift one strand of the standing part. Tuck one of the unlaid strands under it and draw it taut (left). The other two strands are to lie on each side of this middle strand. Have the eye toward you and the strands and standing part of the rope away from you.

Then take the left strand, tuck it from right to left under the next strand of the rope, and haul firmly taut (center). Then the last strand is to be tucked to the right. Give it an extra turn and tuck from right to left (right).

Make certain the three strands are properly taut (all equally so) and each under its proper strand of rope. Also, make certain that the eye thus formed is the required size, and the eye itself is not distorted in any way.

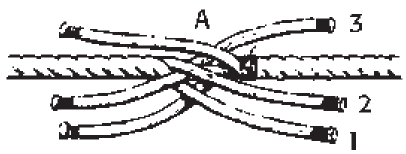


4.1.7.4 Short Splice

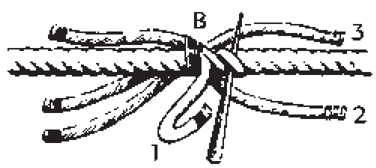
The short splice joins two ropes or two ends of the same rope. It is the strongest of splices, but because it increases the diameter, it cannot run through a correctly sized block. Its bulk can be reduced by tapering the strands toward the end of the splice, but this tends to weaken it somewhat.

Both ends should be unlaid for about a distance equal to 12 times the rope's diameter.

Temporarily, whip the crotch at A and the ends of the strands of each rope. Bring the two ends together as shown, alternating the strands, and pull them taut.



Temporarily, tie down the unlaid strands of the right-hand rope at B (in cut). Remove the lashing from that rope. Using a fid, raise one strand of it as shown so that strand 1 from the left-hand rope can be tucked under it.



Pass strand 1 over the intervening strand and under the raised one. Tuck it against the lay of the rope and pull it taut.

Raise the next strand and tuck the left-hand strand 2 under it. Do the same with strand 3. This completes one full tuck. Continue tucking the strands in sequence until you have at least four tucks.

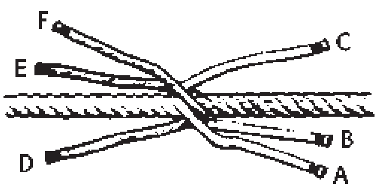
Remove the temporary tie B and the lashing A from the other rope. Tuck the strands one after the other as with the first rope.

To taper the splice, finish four complete tucks; then, remove the whipping from each of the strands. With a sharp razor, cut about one-third of the yarn from each strand. Retwist the yarns, whip as before, and make another full tuck. Again, untwist and slice about half of the remaining yarn on each strand for the remaining tuck.

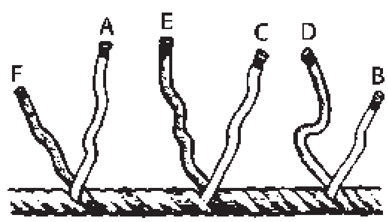
4.1.7.5 Long Splice

Properly made, the splice is hard to detect and will run over the sheaves of a block without trouble. It uses considerable rope but does not affect the rope's strength to any great extent, although it is not quite as strong as the short splice.

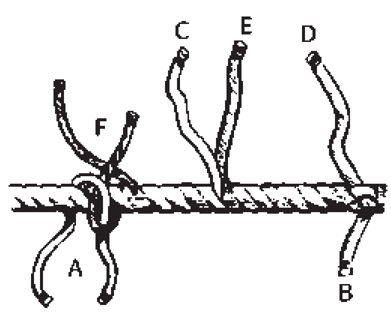
To begin, unlay the ends of each rope about 15 turns (six times the circumference) and whip the ends of the strands. Bring the two ends together as shown in the illustration, with the strands alternating: A, D, B, E, C, F.



Start with any opposite pair of strands, A and F, and unlay A enough farther so that F can be laid in its place. Do the same with another pair, B and D, in the opposite direction. Leave the third pair, C and E, protruding from between the strands, as shown.



Tie each pair of strands with an overhand knot, as shown with B and D. To reduce the diameter of the finished splice, untwist the strands, separate them lengthwise into half strands, retwist them, and again whip or tape before knotting, as shown with A and F.



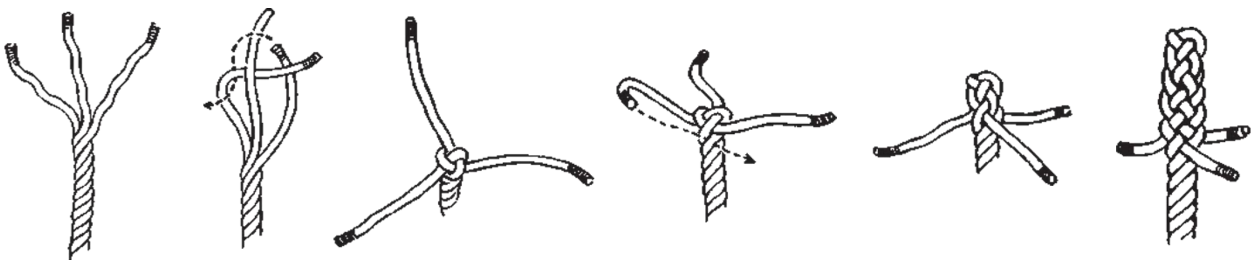
This is a kind of compromise between splicing and tapering. It sacrifices some strength, though less than tapering alone.

After knotting each pair of strands, tuck them under alternate strands as above. Two tucks are enough. Finish by rolling or pounding the splice well and trimming the ends of the strands.

4.1.7.6 Back Splice

This is merely a method of preventing the end of a rope from unlaying. The ends are first laid over each other or crowned. The drawing illustrates this. Then the ends, sticking out of the crown point back along the standing part of the rope, are tucked in a short splice.

A neat whipping at the ends of the splice helps make it more durable. If the strands are tucked back without tapering, it forms a bit of a knob on the end of the rope that may be useful.



4.1.7.7 Splicing Braided Rope

Polyethylene and polypropylene braided rope is easy to splice since it seldom has a core. Heat the end with a flame and shape it into a point. Be careful not to burn your fingers. Form a loop and open the braid at the desired point by “pushing” the rope. Work the pointed end down into the opened braid 5 or 6 inches. Now pull the rope and the braid will close around the end. A whipping at the base of the loop will keep the braid from opening and releasing the end.

4.1.7.8 Eye Splice in Double-Braided Rope

Rope that is formed from wire strands rather than fiber yarn is wire rope. As with fiber, the wires are twisted into strands and the strands are then twisted the opposite way around a center strand to make the finished wire rope.

There are many variations that give wire rope great versatility. Wires are made from a number of metals, including galvanized iron, cast steel, plow steel, stainless steel, and sometimes copper, bronze, or phosphor bronze.

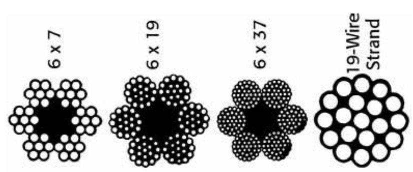
Copper is generally not as strong as iron wire of the same diameter. For yacht and small boat use, long-lasting wire is made of stainless steel and other alloys that make it non-rusting and much stronger than ordinary steel wire. Wire rope is almost universally preferred for standing rigging and halyards on sailboats (sometimes spliced to fiber rope). It also is often used on both sailboats and powerboats for tiller and steering cables, handrails, mooring pennants, and similar applications.

Wire rope is often coated with plastic materials, usually nylon or vinyl, which make it tough, flexible, smooth running, and easier to handle. This coated rope is used for steering lines or handrails.

Wire rope is made in diameters from 1⁄16 to 1½ inches or larger and is designated always by the diameter of the rope, not the circumference as sometimes with fiber rope. Wire sizes above 1 inch are called cable. It is also classified by the number of strands. Wire rope cannot be knotted like fiber rope but, if made of flexible material, will run through blocks, sheaves, or fairleads. In handling wire rope, use leather palm gloves to protect your hands against frayed ends or splinters.

The ends of wire rope should be whipped with seizing or serving wire, just as fiber rope should be whipped with small stuff. Wire rope can also be spliced end to end using a long splice, or to form an eye, either plain or around a thimble. In most cases a rigger's screw is used to hold the eye. Then the strands are opened up with a steel marlinspike for tucking.

Today, most eyes in wire are "swaged" by fitting a metal sleeve, or ferrule, around the standing part and the end of the wire just below the eye and squeezing with a hand or power press. Wire rope requires special tools and equipment and is not easy to handle by the inexperienced.



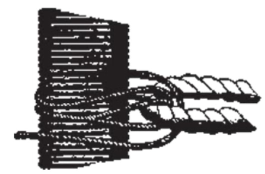
4.1.7.9 Seizings

These are really small lashings that bind or fasten together two lines or a line to a spar. They are often of a permanent character and should be carefully made. The seizing is made with small stuff, such as marline or other tarred material, if it is to be exposed to the elements.

Round Seizing

Throat Seizing

Racking Seizing



Rattling Down

4.2 Blocks and Tackles

4.2.1 Blocks

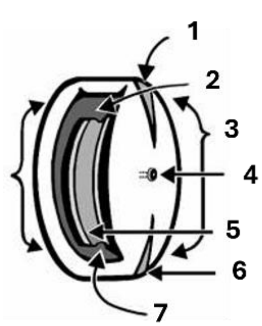
A block is a mechanical device made up of one or more scored wheels called sheaves (pulleys) over which a rope or ropes are worked. The sheaves are mounted in a shell that is fitted with a hookeye, shackle, or other means of attaching it to an object. Blocks are used to change the direction of an applied force and gain a mechanical advantage. Blocks are single, double, treble, etc., according to the number of sheaves. They are also spoken of as single, twofold, threefold, etc.

Snatch blocks are fitted with an opening by which the bight of a line may be snatched into the block without going to the trouble of **reeving** (passing the rope through the block and over the sheave) through the end. These particular blocks are very useful onboard for snatching boat **falls** (the part of the tackle made of rope, wire or fiber), to give them a proper lead along the deck.

The block to which the **standing part** (the part of a fall to which the power is applied) of a fall is made fast has a becket worked into its heel. A becket is an eye designed to take the hook of a block.

Parts of a Block

1. Score
2. Swallow
3. Shell
4. Pin
5. Sheave
6. Score
7. Breech Block



Blocks are sized differently depending on the type of rope. The circumference of natural or synthetic line is multiplied two times to determine sheave diameter, and three times to determine the block shell size. For example, half-inch diameter line is 1½ inch circumference and requires a sheave 3 inches in diameter. Because wire rope should not have a sharp bend, the sheave size should be at least 20 times the diameter of the rope.

In choosing a block, use the block manufacturer's rating of the load the block will carry safely. Of secondary importance is the rated strength of the rope being used, as this is normally greater than that of the block.

Types of Blocks


Single Block


Double Block


Runner Block


Snatch Block

Able 6c. *Describe the parts of a block and explain how blocks are sized. Describe the following types of tackle: luff, gun, double purchase, single whip, and runner. With the help of another shipmate, reeve a double purchase tackle.*

4.2.2 Tackle

When a block or blocks and rope are combined to multiply power, it is called a tackle. The following terms are used in connection with tackle:

- **Hauling part**—the end of the fall to which power is applied
- **Round in**—to bring the two blocks together
- **Overhaul**—to separate the two blocks

Tackle is a rope and block system. The rope transmits a linear motion force to a load through one or more blocks for the purpose of pulling a load.

In a system using a single rope and blocks, when friction is not considered, the mechanical advantage gained can be calculated by counting the number of rope lengths or exerting force on the load. Since the tension in each rope length is equal to the force exerted on the free end or hauling part of the rope, the mechanical advantage is simply equal to the number of ropes pulling on the load. Therefore, mechanical advantage is increased by looping more rope around more pulleys.

On a vessel, a tackle consists of a certain fixed block on some solid fixture, like a mast, and a movable block on the object to be moved. The power loss, due to friction, in a tackle is variable, about one-fourth is normal. With well-designed blocks, wide swallows, and large sheaves, the power loss will be less than when a heavy rope is rove through small blocks.

4.2.2.1 Types of Tackle

Single Whip

The single whip is simply a rope rove through a single block. If the block is stationary, no power is gained. If the block is attached to the object to be moved, the power gained is two.

Runner

The runner is simply the whip with the block at the movable object. These combinations of a single block and rope, whip, or runner are found in many parts of the rigging of ships. In modern vessels, the cargo whip is a good example of its use.

Gun Tackle

In days of old, the gun tackle was attached to the gun carriages of smoothbore cannon and helped to train the guns. The tackle is made of two single blocks with the standing and hauling parts of the fall leading from the same block. The diagram shows the method of reeving the fall. The power gained is two or three, according to the block attached to the movable object.

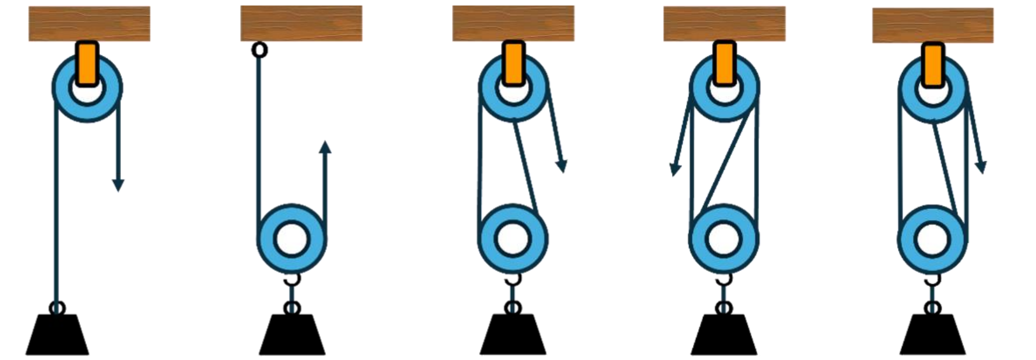
Luff Tackle

Luff tackle consists of a single and double block. The standing part of the fall is made fast to the becket of a single block and rove back again through the second sheave of the double block. When the double block is attached to the object to be moved, the power gained is four times (disregarding friction). When the object to be moved is attached to the single block, the power gained is three times the pull (disregarding friction).

Here we see the rule: Count the number of rope parts leading from the movable block and you have the theoretical number of times the power is increased. The luff tackle is one of the most useful tackles.

Twofold or Double Purchase Tackle

The twofold tackle consists of a tackle rove off with two double blocks. The diagram shows that the power gained is either four or five, depending on which is the movable block.



4.2.2.2 Reeving Tackle

Place the two blocks to be used on the deck, hooks up. Take the end of rope you intend for the starting part and enter it into the sheave you intend to lead the hauling part out of. Reeve off the tackle from right to left or counterclockwise. When your standing part comes to an end, use a thimble and splice or hitch it into the becket of the block to which it is to be made fast.

4.2.2.3 To Make Up a Tackle

Place the blocks about 3 feet apart for an ordinary watch tackle, hooks pointing up, coil the fall around the blocks clockwise. With the end of the fall, clove hitch about the coil between the blocks. When ready to use, cast off the hitch, laying the tackle on the deck in the same position as when being made up, lift the coil clear and then capsize it.

Take hold of the blocks, two people pulling them apart, and fleet the tackle (fleeting—the pulling apart of the blocks, so they will be ready for use). When a tackle is in use and the blocks come together, the tackle is said to be “two blocked.

4.2.2.4 Mousing Hooks

When tackles are to be used where there is a chance of unhooking, the hooks should be moused.

4.3 Ground Tackle

Ground tackle is a general term for the anchors, cables, warps, springs, etc., used for securing a vessel at anchor.

4.3.1 Anchor Parts

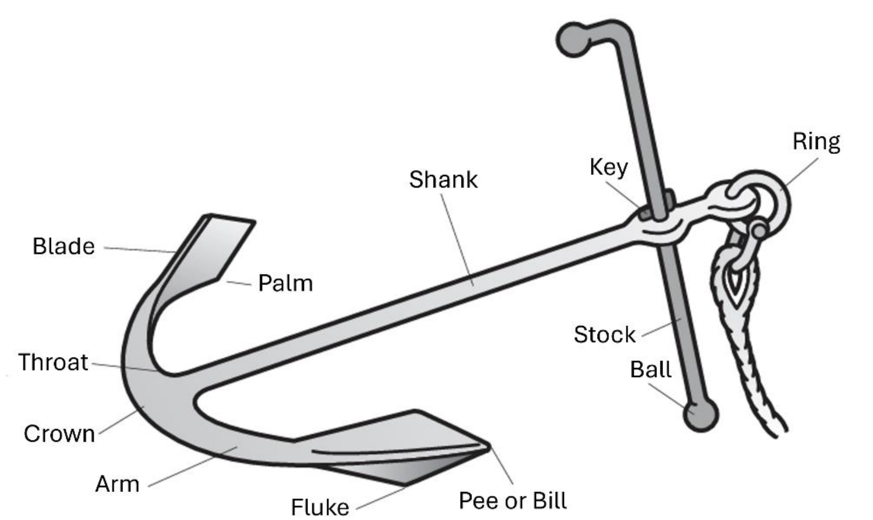
Consider the parts of the old-fashioned anchor or its very close relative, the yachtsman's stock anchor in general use today. The shank, which is the main stem of the anchor, is its most important part. The arms, branching off from the bottom of the shank, form the holding element. They are slightly curved and branch upward at an angle. The arms join the shank at the crown. At the upper side, on either side of the shank, is the throat. When a buoy rope is hitched about an anchor, it is attached here.

The arms are tipped by the flukes or palms and these in turn by the bill or pee. The metal shod boards on the bow of ships are called billboards, where the bill of the anchor touches the side when hoisted inboard.

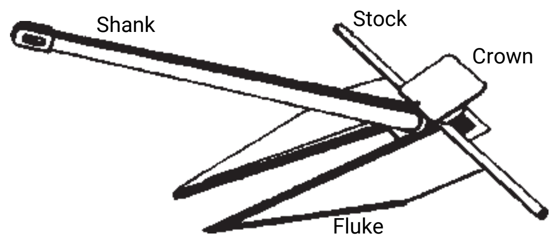
The outside of the palm, where the fluke tapers down and acts as a support, is called the blade.

The stock turns the anchor into an attitude that enables the flukes to dig into the bottom. Just above the stock, the upper end of the shank carries a large eye where the anchor shackle is attached. This is where the anchor cable is joined to the anchor.

Parts of a Yachtsman's or Old-Fashioned Anchor



Parts of a Danforth Anchor



Ordinary 8a. *Name the parts of a stock anchor and a stockless anchor.*

4.3.2 Types of Anchors

4.3.2.1 Yachtsman's or Old-Fashioned

The yachtsman's anchor is very similar to the anchor used for centuries that had a wooden stock. In suitable weight, it has excellent holding power. The stock, running across the shank, is designed to make the anchor lie on the bottom so that when a horizontal pull comes from the boat, the fluke digs into the bottom.

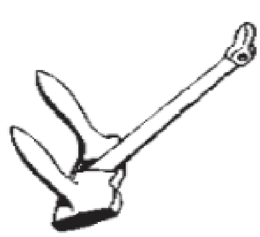
The yachtsman's anchor in general use today is constructed so the stock slides through the shank and folds down alongside it for convenience in stowage. The one disadvantage of the yachtsman's anchor is that it can easily be fouled by the protruding fluke as the boat swings or "walks" while anchored.

4.3.2.2 Navy Anchor

The stockless or navy anchor, sometimes called patent, has no stock and, therefore, is free of the danger of fouling the cable. Its effectiveness depends on its weight and the bottom conditions that enable the flukes and heavy crown to dig in.

The crown is pivoted on the end of the shank, and this allows the flukes to turn down into the bottom. This type of anchor is used on large ships that can handle and stow it efficiently. The navy anchor is not effective for small craft.

Navy Anchor



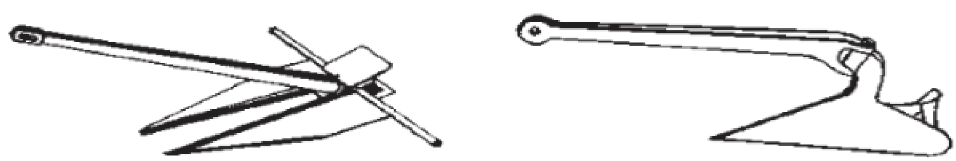
4.3.2.3 Lightweight Anchors

The most widely used anchors for small craft today are the lightweight type. Developed by R. S. Danforth in 1939, this design produces strong holding power because of thin large flukes that heavy strains bury deeply. Instead of a stock through the head of the anchor, the Danforth has a round rod through the crown that prevents the anchor from rolling. This type of anchor has the unique feature of being equally adaptable to large or small craft.

A comparable model is the Northill. This anchor is light and relatively efficient. The Northill has a stock at the crown instead of at the ring end, adding to the anchor's holding power when the flukes are buried. The arms are at right angles to the shank, and the broad flukes are set at a carefully engineered angle to ensure a quick bite into the bottom.

Another efficient anchor is the CQR, or plow, of English design. As it does not have a stock, it rarely fouls. It can dig in again promptly even after a 180-degree change of direction of a boat at anchor caused by changes in the wind or tide. This type of anchor is not stowed as easily as some of the other lightweight anchors.

Danforth and CQR/Plow Anchor



4.3.2.4 Mushroom Anchor

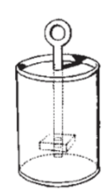
The mushroom anchor is standard for permanent moorings. In heavy weights, it has excellent holding power. It has a cast-iron bowl at the end of the shank.

Mushroom Anchor

4.3.2.5 Homemade Anchor

You can fashion a simple anchor by placing a large bolt in a No. 10 can and then filling the can with concrete. This is suitable only for a very small boat in calm waters.

Homemade Anchor



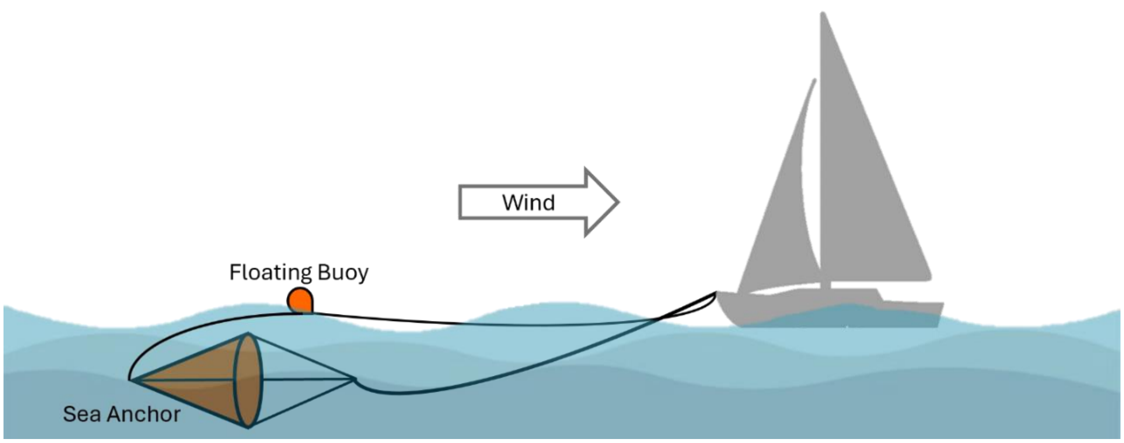
4.3.2.6 Grapnel

The grapnel is frequently used by small craft for temporary use. It has three or more flukes uplifted around the shank. It is a handy piece of equipment for retrieving gear lost overboard by dragging along the bottom.

Grapnel

4.3.2.7 Sea Anchor

A sea anchor is used to stabilize a boat and keep its head to the wind and waves in heavy weather. Since it does not attach to the sea bottom, the sea anchor acts as a brake by pulling large amounts of water to create drag. Sea anchors can be improvised from spare parts on board if a commercial sea anchor or drogue is unavailable. Commercial sea anchors are typically shaped like a parachute or cone. They float just below the surface of the water with the larger end pointing in the direction of the boat's movement.



4.3.3 Anchor Selection

Choosing the proper anchor or anchors for any given boat depends on several factors: the load that the boat may place on an anchor, the types of bottoms in which a particular anchor may be used, and the type of anchor rode and anchoring materials. All of these are interrelated.

The load that a particular boat may place on its ground tackle depends upon its weight and several external conditions such as the force created by the wind above the waterline, the currents below the waterline, and the wave action at any particular time.

A good rule of thumb for cruising sailboats calls for a working anchor weighing about 1 pound per foot of the boat's overall length, plus a "storm" anchor of about twice that weight for bad weather. A "lunch hook" of about half a pound per foot may be satisfactory for temporary anchoring. Motorboats and centerboard sailboats may use smaller anchors.

All of these weights may be reduced for the more efficient lightweight anchors but increased for the navy-type ones. Check with the anchor manufacturer's recommendations before trusting the holding power of any anchor.

The holding power of an anchor varies greatly with the type of bottom. An anchor that might develop 1,500 pounds of holding power in hard sand may only be able to hold a 500-pound load in a soft bottom. You cannot always tell in advance where you might anchor your ship, so you must have ground tackle available for the most difficult anchoring conditions you might face.

The horizontal pull generated by a particular boat will determine the type of anchor rode. To be effective, the rode must be long and strong enough. The length of the rode—or scope—must be such that the pull on the anchor shank is almost horizontal. A scope of at least 7 to 1, seven times as long as the vertical distance at high tide from the bow chock to the bottom, is considered safe. In storm conditions, you may need a scope of 10 to 1 to ensure a horizontal pull on your anchor.

For example: If you are anchoring in 12 feet of water and the distance from your bow chock to the water is 3 feet, you should pay out seven times the total of 15 feet or 105 feet of anchor rode. Any scope less than 5 to 1 would be considered unsafe in anything but very calm weather.

Ordinary 8c. *Calculate the amount of anchor rode necessary for your ship's primary vessel in the following depths: 10, 20, 30 feet in normal and storm conditions.*

Small-craft anchor rodes are usually made of rope. Until the newly developed synthetic ropes came onto the market, Manila had been the traditional rope for anchor rodes. Manila is weaker than the synthetic materials and does not have the elasticity of synthetic fibers, particularly nylon, which is strong, light, easy to handle, and elastic. Nylon is particularly effective in minimizing shock loads caused by winds and tides. The synthetic materials dry quicker and are more durable than Manila.

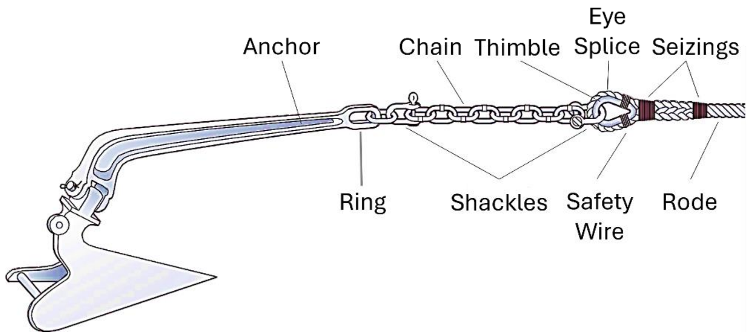
Able 8a. *Describe the various kinds of anchor rode and the advantages and disadvantages of each type.*

A short chain between the end of the rope line and the anchor is effective. It tends to lie on the bottom and further lessens the shock by adding weight to help maintain the important horizontal pull.

All components of the anchoring materials should be joined with good-quality galvanized shackles, and the line should have an eye with a thimble where it meets the chain to reduce abrasion as much as possible.

In constructing a proper anchor rode, limit the working load to one-fifth of the rated breaking strength of the rope and one-half of the proof test of the chain used. Thus, a boat developing a load of some 2,000 pounds should have a rode in which the rope is rated at 10,000 pounds.

Plow Anchor Rig



__Able 8b.__ Identify the parts of the anchor cable starting with the anchor and ending at the vessel.

4.3.4 Stowage of Ground Tackle

Though some small boats carry only a single anchor, this is by no means adequate. Even if you discount the possibility of fouling an anchor so that it cannot be retrieved, there are many occasions when it is desirable to lay two anchors. Also, having just one anchor heavy enough for heavy-weather conditions would be a nuisance in ordinary conditions.

Many boats carry three anchors. Two are kept on deck, ready for use. A light one is used for brief stops while someone is aboard. A medium-weight anchor is used for ordinary service, including overnight anchorage in a harbor. The third anchor might be considered a spare that has been chosen for extreme holding conditions. It is usually carried below.

To prevent deck anchors from coming adrift when the boat rolls and pitches, carry them in chocks and be sure they are securely lashed.

Except for very small craft that carry their line coiled forward on the deck or in an open cockpit, the usual practice in boat manufacture is to provide rope and chain lockers in the forepeak. Chain dries quickly as it comes from the water and can be fed down through a deck pipe as it comes off the winch or is hauled by hand.

If Manila rope is used, it should be thoroughly dried before it is stowed in the chain locker. Some boats have gratings on the deck as an aid in drying rope. The chain lockers should be well ventilated to permit circulation of air. A dark, wet locker is a likely place for dry rot to happen.

Anchors and chain often become foul from the muddy bottom of harbors and should be washed before stowage. Manila requires care if it is to give good service as an anchor rode. It is subject to chafe and deterioration and should be inspected often.

4.3.5 Anchor Cable for Larger Vessels

Larger vessels sailing in deeper water require large amounts of chain when anchoring. Modern anchor chain is made of die-lock chain with studs to prevent the chain from kinking and the links from damaging adjacent links.

The lengths of chain that are connected to make up a ship's anchor cable are called shots. A standard shot is 15 fathoms (90 feet) long.

Shots of anchor chain are joined by a detachable link which is painted so sailors can quickly know how much anchor chain has been paid out. In the military, for example, at 15 fathoms (one shot) the detachable link is red. One link on either side is painted white. At 30 fathoms (two shots) the detachable link is white and adjacent links are white. Links next to the detachable link in the next-to-last shot are painted yellow to alert the crew that they are running out of chain. Each link in the last shot is painted red. Recreational boaters with smaller vessels have adopted a variety of methods to mark chain and each will work if everyone on board understands the markings and what they mean. Many use the military system, but others mark their chain every 10 feet. Some use paint and others use colored strips of cloth.

Able 8c. *Describe the methods of marking chain and demonstrate that you know the chain markings on your ship's vessel.*

4.3.6 Anchoring

There are certain basic steps to be taken in anchoring small boats under normal conditions.

4.3.6.1 Approaching the Anchorage

Do not anchor where it is so shallow there is a possibility of being aground at low water. Conversely, you need not anchor in 50 feet of water if you can find 20 feet a little closer to shore.

One prudent rule in strange waters is to check the depth of the water in the area of any possible swing of the boat with a lead line or suitable measuring device. Note the location of other boats or empty moorings so you will not anchor so close to boats that you swing into others with shifts of tide or wind.

Hard sand is the first choice for the bottom. Soft mud is the last. A rocky bottom is generally between these two. However, you cannot know just what the bottom is until after the anchor is down.

Quartermaster 8b. *Know the methods of bringing a vessel to anchor and a mooring with special emphasis on wind and current with respect to the vessel's course and speed.*

4.3.6.2 Dropping Anchor

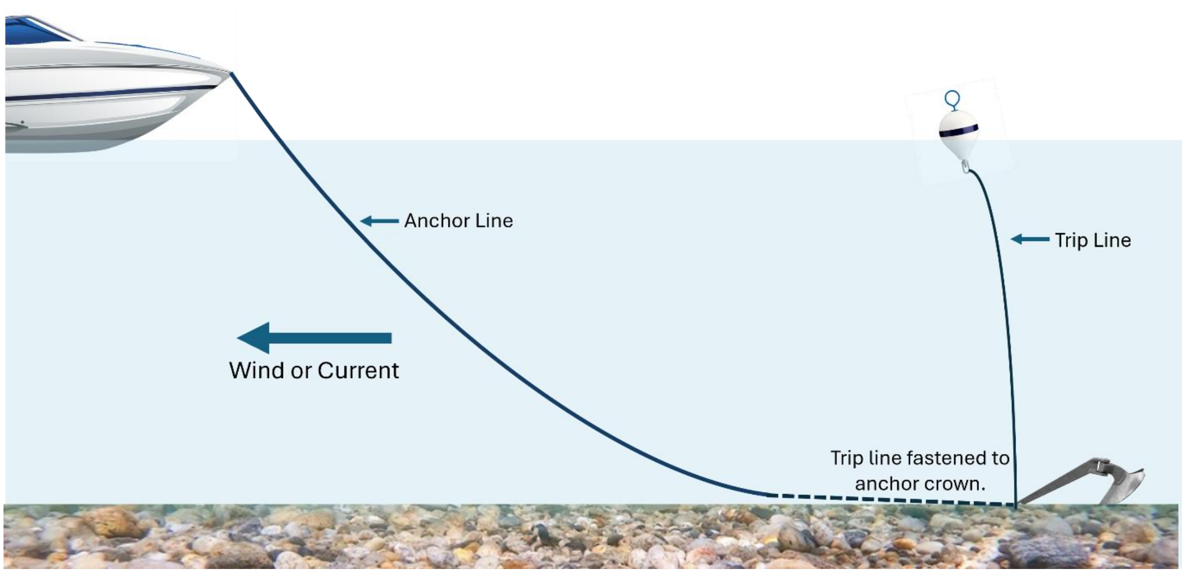
Under either power or sail, come up to your chosen anchorage into the wind or tidal current (whichever is stronger). Under power, bring the boat to a dead stop and then reverse very slowly. At this point a crew member already stationed forward lowers the anchor gently, always maintaining control of the rode. **Never throw an anchor.**

Reverse the boat slowly as the rode is paid out to keep the anchor from fouling. Keep reversing until it takes hold and ample scope has been paid out. If the anchor drags at this point, it is usually because it has been fouled or is resting on poor holding ground at the bottom.

If it does drag, then you must raise the anchor and try it again. Once the anchor takes hold, check to be certain you are clear of the shore and other boats before shutting off the engine. Under sail, of course, you cannot reverse your boat to help you take hold. However, you can use the tide or wind as a natural reversing power.

The moment you come to a standstill, drop the anchor quickly, but smoothly, and pay out ample scope. Then belay the rode to the bitt or a cleat and wait until you are certain the anchor is not dragging.

Anchor Tackle



Ordinary 8d. *Demonstrate the ability to set and weigh anchor.*

[America's Boating Channel: Anchoring]

4.3.6.3 Orders to the Crew

Before anchoring or weighing anchor, the crew must know what is expected of them. Duties and deck positions need to be explained and assigned. There is usually some distance between those handling the anchor and the helmsman; so, if radios are not available, basic hand signals need to be established so the helmsman and anchor handler can communicate.

Basic helm commands are: LET GO THE ANCHOR or DROP THE ANCHOR, RETREIVE THE ANCHOR, FEED OUT MORE SCOPE, and SNUB or CLEAT OFF THE ANCHOR RODE. Anchor handlers need to communicate: ANCHOR IS READY, ANCHOR IS AWEIGH (up) or DOWN, ANCHOR IS IN SIGHT, ANCHOR IS CLEAR, ANCHOR IS SECURED FOR SEA. The anchor handler sometimes needs to communicate the need to move forward, into neutral or reverse.

If you are in a crowded anchorage, are experiencing poor weather conditions, or are concerned that you may drag anchor, an anchor watch should be established. While on duty, the anchor watch should:

- Conduct frequent visual checks of landmarks and surrounding boats. Check their position relative to yours to see if your anchor or a nearby boat is dragging.
- Monitor GPS, VHF, and other electronics, and have an air horn ready.
- Keep your eye on depth, wind speed and direction, and the anchor rode.
- If another boat drags toward you, prepare to fend.

Quartermaster 8c. *Take charge of a vessel used by your ship and give all commands to the crew for setting and weighing anchor in several wind and current situations.*

4.3.6.4 Leaving the Boat

If you go ashore after properly anchoring, carefully note the boat's relative bearing to other boats, or better still, to nearby shore objects. By doing this, you can spot a change in your ship's position caused by the anchor dragging.

If a boat stays at anchor during a change of tide or wind shift, she may swing through a 180-degree arc. This movement can foul the rode of some types of anchors, twisting it around an arm or stock, causing the fluke to be easily pulled from the bottom. Under these conditions it is wise not to leave a boat unattended.

4.3.6.5 Weighing Anchor

When under power, move slowly toward the anchor while a crewman forward hauls in the slack of the rode. When the anchor breaks loose, come to a stop while you bring it in. This must be done carefully to avoid gouging the boat. If your boat is allowed much headway while bringing in the anchor, there is a good possibility of damaging it with the anchor. When the anchor is brought aboard, it should be secured at once. The wet line should be allowed to dry before stowing.

If the anchor does not break loose easily, bring the boat carefully up to the approximate position of the anchor and belay the rode to the foredeck bitt. After this, apply just enough power to give steerageway and run the boat past the anchor. If it does not work the first time, try this maneuver again.

Under sail you can usually sail right up to the anchor, while a crewman takes in slack slowly and raises the anchor as described above. If the anchor is firmly embedded in the bottom, you may have to sail forward to put added strain on the rope in the opposite direction to the anchoring pull.

If you know beforehand that the bottom where you plan to anchor your boat is likely to be foul, use a trip line. This is merely a light, but strong line secured to the crown of the anchor long enough to reach a pickup buoy that is left floating on the surface. When the time comes to weigh anchor, the buoy is retrieved, and the trip line pulled to haul the anchor out crown first.

Sometimes it is necessary to carry the anchor away from the ship in a small boat. The ship is then pulled to it by means of capstans or winches. This is called kedging. Grounded vessels may sometimes pull themselves clear in this manner.

When a boat lies mostly at her home port, it is best to set a permanent mooring. This would make her more secure than being at anchor. A safe permanent mooring must be able to hold in any weather condition. It must be as antifouling as possible.

A mooring anchor should be of the mushroom type in muddy or sandy bottoms. There should be a bulb on the upper end of the shank to help keep the anchor down in a digging position.

A common rule of thumb for mushroom anchor weights is about 10 pounds for every foot of the boat's overall length. This may be lessened somewhat for small, lightweight racing sailboats, but should be increased for larger cruising craft, both power and sail. In hard or rocky bottoms, other types of moorings with sufficient weight would be adequate.

Discarded railroad wheels, concrete blocks, old engine blocks, etc., might make adequate permanent mooring anchors, but in bad storms, the mushroom anchor is the most effective anchor.

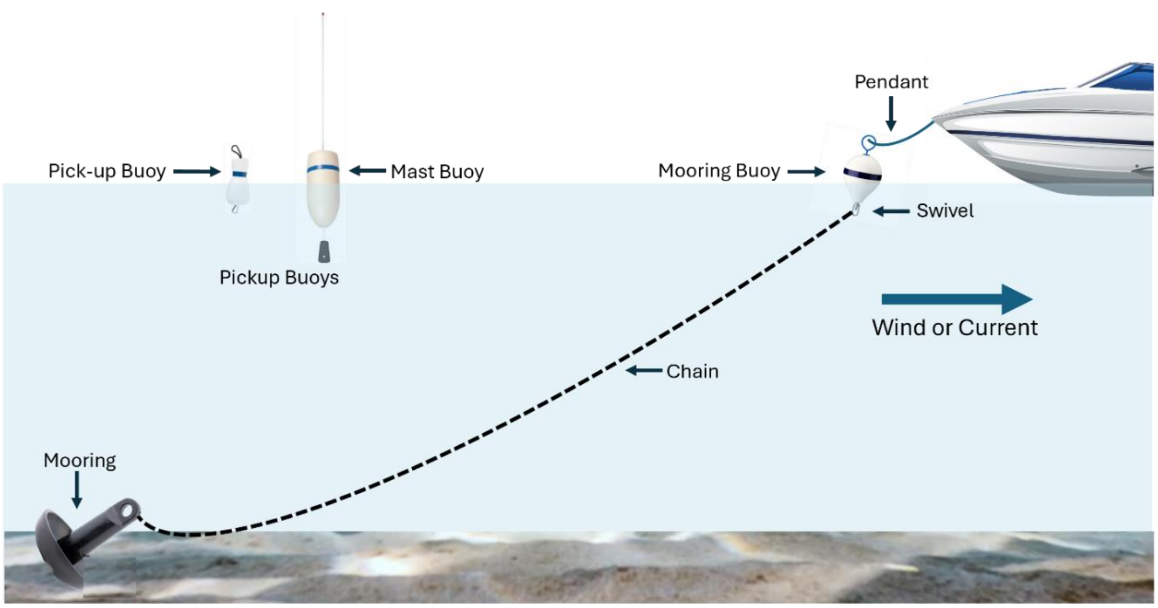
The chain used in permanent moorings is standard link steel chain that is usually galvanized to resist corrosion. The diameter should be large enough for holding power consistent with the strain that will be placed on it.

Some two-thirds of the total length of chain to be used should be of heavy chain (¾ to 1 inch in diameter). The balance should be lighter. The chain and all fittings should be checked annually for any possible looseness or worn links.

The mooring buoy that the light chain connects to is often a steel sphere, although often wooden spars or Styrofoam buoys are used. If a metal buoy is used, it should have some form of a bumper to cushion any possible striking against the boat's hull.

The pendant or line by which a boat is connected to the mooring buoy should be about the same strength as the chain and often is made of Manila or nylon. Nylon is good for several seasons; Manila should be replaced each year. As the pendant will run through the bow chock at angles depending upon the swinging of the boat, the edges of the chock should be smooth to minimize any abrasions. The pendant itself should be protected by tape, cloth, canvas, or a hose tied around it to protect it from chafing where it rubs along the chock. The pickup buoy can be made of many things. Whatever the material, it should have a ring or handle on top to aid in picking it up.

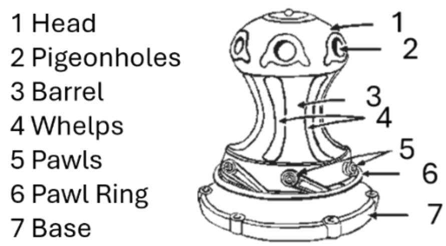
Mooring Tackle



Capstan

The capstan is a rotating device, operated by power or by hand, employed on board ship for the application of extreme power to ropes and wires in the hauling in of heavy objects such as an anchor. The main element of a capstan is its upright drum or barrel, which distinguishes it from a windlass.

Parts of a Capstan



Able 8e. *Identify a capstan or windlass and explain its use in handling line, wire rope, or chain.*

Windlass

A windlass is a powerful winch on which a rope can be taken in or paid out. In the old days the windlass consisted of a horizontal barrel of wood around which a cable was wound. This was mounted on a windlass frame and revolved, the barrel being fitted with pawls, and with a brake arm and driving gear working with ratchets. The modern windlass embodies these same principles. It is driven by a steam engine or a motor but can be worked by hand. Usually, there is a capstan on the forecastle head which works the windlass by means of a screw running in the driving gear.

4.4 Line Handling

4.4.1 Heaving a Line

A few preparations and practice will give you the ability to handle a line properly. There are four things to remember.

1. The line must be considerably longer than the distance it is to be thrown or it will probably fall short of the target.
2. The line must be coiled carefully and evenly with the draw of the loops toward the free end; the loops should be smaller than those made for other purposes.
3. Hold the shipboard end of the line in one hand and the coil to be thrown in the other.
4. The coil must be thrown properly—in an underhand motion with a strong, swinging motion. Release it when the arm is well above the shoulders and at not too great a distance. Always aim at the head and shoulders of the person receiving it. Otherwise, the throw is apt to be low. If necessary, a weight can be used to help carry the line a greater distance, but in small-boat handling this is seldom necessary.

Apprentice 7c. *Demonstrate the ability to use a heaving line.*

4.5 Wharfs, Piers, Docks, and Slips

A **wharf** is a structure parallel to the shore (and usually attached to it) to which boats and ships are tied. A **pier** is a structure perpendicular to the shore. Vessels can be tied along either side. A **dock** is the space alongside a wharf or pier that the boat occupies.

You cannot tie a boat to a dock since the dock is the space the boat occupies. A **slip** is the docking space between two piers. A marina usually contains many slips in a row. In common usage the slip can include both the docking space, piers, and other structures.

4.5.1 Docking Orders to the Crew

On larger vessels there are specific orders used in connection with the handling of lines at a dock.

1. When docking, the order STAND BY TO DOCK puts the crew at readiness, each standing by his or her station with his or her line coiled, ready to heave. If no one is available at the dock to receive lines, other crew members stand ready to step ashore to receive the lines.
2. At the command HEAVE THE BOW LINE (or whatever line is to be used), the deckhand assigned to this line heaves it to the dock.
3. TAKE IN SLACK means that deckhands are to pull in the slack and take a turn on the cleat or bitt.
4. TAKE A STRAIN means that deckhands are to pull on the line named, taking a turn on the cleat or bitt but allowing it to slip.
5. EASE OFF means that the line is to be allowed to slip off more freely. HOLD means to check the line temporarily.
6. SECURE LINES means to make fast permanently, adjusting to proper length.
7. On leaving a dock, the order STAND BY THE LINES tells the people on the wharf or pier to be ready to cast off the lines and the people on the deck to be ready to take them in. This is followed by the order CAST OFF THE LINES at which time the dock men clear the lines from the bollards and toss them to the deck men, keeping them clear of the water if possible.

On a small boat, the procedures explained above are greatly simplified. Docking may involve one person stepping ashore for the bow and stern lines with simple instructions from the Skipper.

Warning: Never allow docking lines, or any other lines, to go over the side where they can be sucked down into the propeller and wrapped around the shaft.

America's Boating Channel: Preparing for Arrival

4.5.2 Mooring to a Pier

When making fast to a wharf or pier, sufficient and proper lines must be run out, fenders placed, and provisions made to protect the ship in case of change of tide or wind, or against the wash of passing vessels.

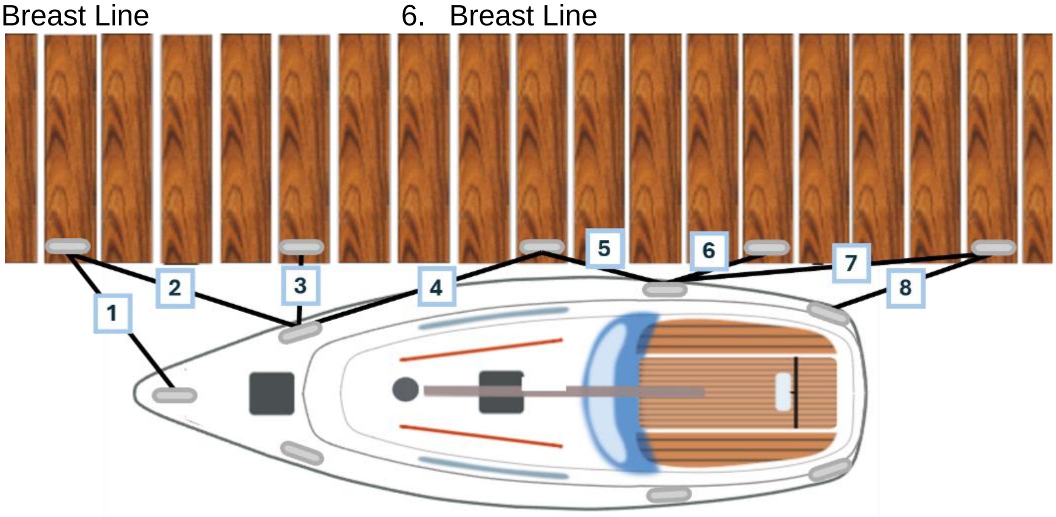
For a short stay, bow and stern lines are adequate, and someone should remain on board to fend off if necessary. The sketch shows the proper way to moor for a long stay. Note the diagonal lines. These are to gradually check slight movements of the vessel away from the wharf so that sudden strain will not snap the lines. They also prevent any motion ahead or astern.

A good way to moor to a pier, especially when there is considerable current, is to set an anchor astern, leaving plenty of extra line coiled up on the after deck. Then pass a bow line to the pier. By slacking off on the stern line and hauling in on the bow line, the vessel can be brought to the pier. Of course, this is only practical on a small boat, up to 40 feet.

Sometimes the vessel can be laid between bow and stern anchors, off the wharf or pier, and a gangplank rigged for passage between ship and shore. A sailboat will some- times lay to a pier with a single line and the mizzen set or the mainsail sheeted in flat. The wind, of course, must be offshore to do this.

Mooring Line Diagram

1. Bowline
2. Bowline
3. Breast Line
4. Spring Line
5. Spring Line
6. Breast Line
7. Stern Line
8. Stern Line



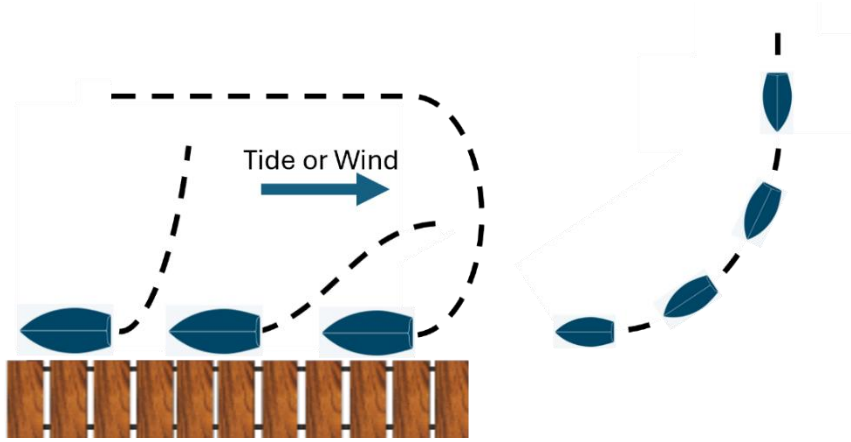
Able 7b. *Know the names and functions of lines used to secure a vessel to a wharf or pier. Understand and execute docking commands used in handling lines on your ship's primary vessel.*

4.5.2.1 Mooring a Powerboat

In bringing a powerboat to a dock, take careful notice of wind and tide direction. Remember also that a powerboat steers by the stern. The point of pivoting is near midships, on a center line. When the bow is directed to the right, the stern will swing to the left. This must be allowed for in any close maneuvering.

Note stern swinging in opposite direction from the bow. A turning vessel pivots near the center, not at the stern.

Mooring Technique for a Powerboat



4.5.2.2 Docking to a Mooring Buoy

A mooring buoy is a float in the water that is attached on the bottom end to the ground, either by an anchor or by being drilled into the ground. The top end of the buoy has some way of connecting a line to your boat.

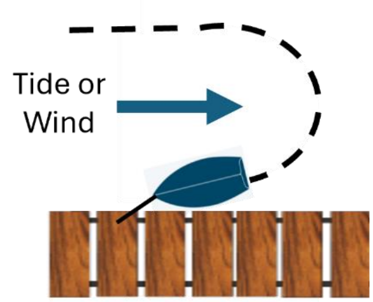
1. Slowly approach the buoy from downwind and/or down current. If the wind and current are going in different directions, approach against the one that has more effect on your boat.
2. Use a mooring line about half the length of your boat. Tie one end of the line to a cleat on the deck of your boat and pass the other end through the eyebolt of the pickup line on the buoy. Secure the second end to the same cleat.
3. Check to see how your boat is pulling on the buoy. If it isn't a horizontal pull, increase the length of the mooring line.


[America's Boating Channel: Mooring and Shoreline Landing]

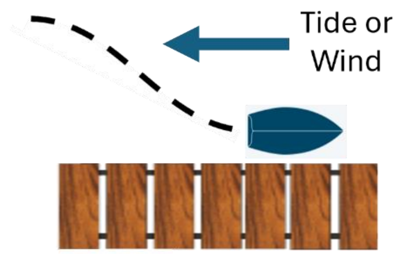
4.5.3 Maneuvering at a Dock

The possibilities of maneuvering a boat around docks and moorings are almost infinite in number. The boat's characteristics, the wind and tide, and types of rudders and propellers are all considerations. You should think out the maneuver in advance, step by step, to always keep the boat under control. Here are a few situations that may confront you.

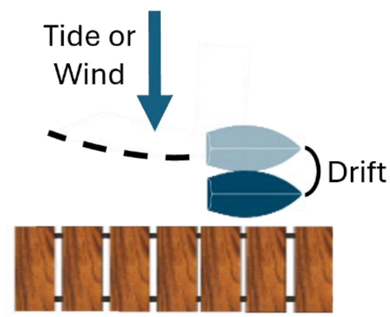
- **Approaching the Wind:** Turn to face the wind or tide, get a bow line out first and let the stern drift alongside.



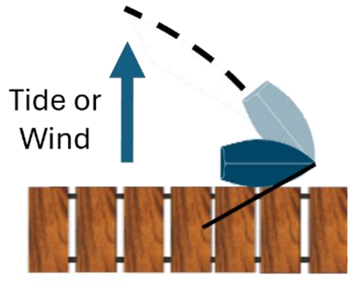
- **Approaching Against the Wind:** Maneuver alongside the pier, get a bow line out first and let the stern drift alongside.



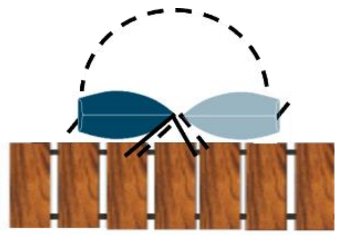
- **Approaching the Windward Side:** Stop alongside and parallel, drift into the pier. The bow will probably touch first.



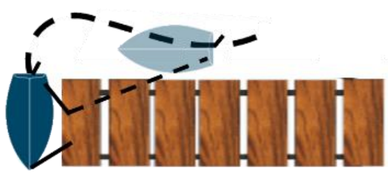
- **Approaching the Leeward Side (Springing In):** Touch with the bow, put a bow spring lineout. Go forward under power with the rudder away from the pier to swing the stern in.



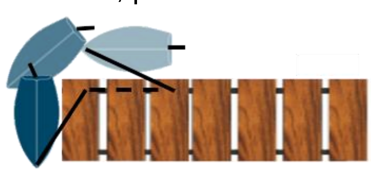
- **To Reverse Heading While at Pier:** Put out double bow lines, swing the rudder toward the pier, and go forward under engine power. When halfway around, stop the engine, reverse; then, as the bow strains against the opposite line, proceed as before.



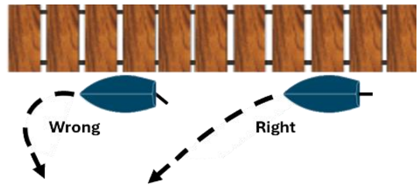
- **To Warp from a Pierhead to Alongside:** Put out the stern spring line, rudder toward pier and reverse on the engine, tending the bow line. As the boat swings alongside, slack and tend the spring line.



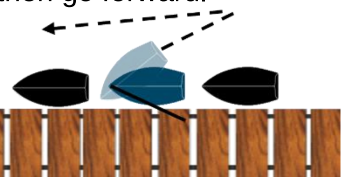
- **To Warp from Alongside to a Pierhead:** Put out a bow spring line. Go forward with the rudder amidships, until pivot point is beyond the pier head. Then put the rudder toward the pier and, as the boat comes around, put the rudder away from the pier.



- **Right and Wrong Way to Leave a Pier:** Go forward with the rudder amidships, and as speed is picked up move away from the pier slightly increasing the angle as the boat slowly clears the pier. Setting the rudder sharply away from the pier as the boat leaves will swing the stern into the wharf and may damage the boat.



- **Clearing a Pier When Between Two Boats (Springing Out from the Bow):** Put out a bow spring line and with the rudder toward the wharf or pier go forward on the engine. When clear, cast off and reverse; then go forward.

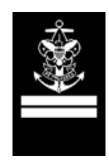


- **Clearing a Pier When Between Two Boats (Springing Out from the Stern):** Leave a spring line attached to the stern cleat and turned around a cleat or a post on the dock. Bring the bitter end back into the boat. Because the stern will be swinging close to the dock, it is important to make sure there isn't a piling or other obstruction that can damage the boat. Release all other dock lines and slowly back up the boat.

  As the spring line tensions, the stern will pivot, and the bow will swing out. When the bow is clear, retrieve the spring line and go forward.


[America's Boating Channel: Docking]

Quartermaster 7b. *Demonstrate and teach the principles of springing into and out from a dock, from both bow and stern, using an engine depending on the type of vessel used by your ship.*



4.6 Practical Deck Seamanship

Deck seamanship concerns the general work that goes on about the ship's deck. Drills, damage control, handling lines, marlinspike, and handling ground tackle are deck seamanship skills. There are many other deck seamanship skills that make us safer and more competent sailors.

4.6.1 Watches

Watches are work shifts. In days gone by, the standard was "four-on" and "four-off" referring to duty hours. Today, the general rule on larger vessels is four-on and eight-off. This system always keeps a third of the crew on duty. Dog watches occur to stagger the shifts and allow the crew an opportunity to eat an evening meal.

Standard Watches

First Watch	2000-2400
Middle Watch	2400-0400
Morning Watch	0400-0800
Forenoon Watch	0800-1200
Afternoon Watch	1200-1600
First Dog Watch	1600-1800
Second Dog Watch	1800-2000

In the second dog watch, to indicate that a new watch has taken over, the sequence of bells is varied as follows: 1 bell, 6:30 p.m.; 2 bells, 7 p.m.; 3 bells 7:30 p.m.; 8 bells, 8 p.m. The ship's clock, of course, repeats the sequence of 1 to 8 bells every four hours (day and night) without variation.

Able 8d. *While on a cruise, assist in the construction of an anchor watch schedule and stand one watch.*

4.6.1.1 Bells

Clocks, as we know them, were not invented until the 14th century. Hourglasses were used to keep time onboard. Sand passed from the top half of the hourglass to the bottom approximately every half hour.

One strike on the bell indicates the first half hour of the watch has passed. The bell is struck an additional time for each half hour. Thus, eight bells signal the end of a four-hour watch. This process is repeated for every watch.

When the bell is struck more than once, it is sounded in twos. At 1430, for example, you will hear ring-ring, ring-ring, ring.

Bells and How Struck

1 bell	(.)
2 bells	(..)
3 bells	(.. .)
4 bells	(.. ..)
5 bells	(.. .. .)
6 bells	(.. .. ..)
7 bells	(.. .. .. .)
8 bells	(.. .. .. ..)

Each dot represents one strike of the bell.

Ordinary 11a. *Name the seven watches and explain bell time.*

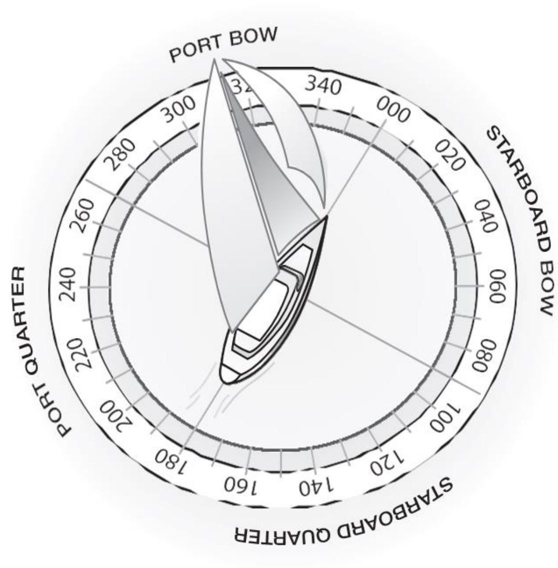
4.6.2 The Lookout

The Navigation Rules require a vessel to keep a proper lookout. In fog, at least one lookout should be forward and one aft. A lookout aft is also required when backing out of a slip, and a lookout is required at anchor.

The lookout must be able to report accurately the bearing of any vessels, aids to navigation, and objects that are sighted or heard to the person in charge of the vessel. The lookout should relate any other pertinent information that is evident such as estimated distance, course, and speed of other vessels. The lookout must be vigilant, have no other duties or distractions, and be able to clearly see and hear.

Ordinary 11b. *Explain the duties of a lookout and demonstrate how to report objects in view and wind directions with respect to the vessel.*

To communicate the location of objects in view, the lookout should use **relative bearings.** Relative bearings are bearings *relative* to the ship's bow. Relative bearings are based on an imaginary 360-degree circle drawn around the vessel. The bow is at 000°, the starboard beam is 90°, the stern is 180°, and the port beam is 270°. Lookouts cannot have accurate compasses at hand and be effective at their watch, nor will they know the compass course of the ship and the and the true direction of objects they sight. By using the system of relative bearings measured in degrees from the bow of the ship, the lookout can report the position of objects quickly and accurately.



Ordinary 11c. *Name relative bearings expressed in degrees.*

4.6.3 Helmsmanship

One of the marks of a good seaman is the ability to steer well. This skill is not developed by study, but by a good deal of practice.

Some commands given to a helmsman need explanation. To turn right, say RIGHT RUDDER, and to turn left, say LEFT RUDDER. These commands allow no confusion.

Rudders usually have a limited amount of travel. Small boats can have 180 degrees of movement, but larger vessels may have only 70 degrees of travel. That means there is just 35 degrees of movement on either side of centerline. If the maximum available rudder arc is 35 degrees, full rudder is likely to be only 30 degrees, the remaining degrees being used only for emergencies.

RIGHT FULL RUDDER means to go the normal maximum deflection to the right. RUDDER AMIDSHIPS means to center the rudder. RIGHT 15 DEGREES RUDDER means to move the rudder 15 degrees to the right and hold it there. EASE THE RUDDER means to begin to move the rudder back toward midships. EASE TO 10 means to reduce the rudder to 10 degrees right. HANDSOMELY means do it slowly.

Once a ship starts to turn, it will continue to do so. MEET HER means to slow down the swing without completely stopping it.

NOTHING TO THE RIGHT or NOTHING TO THE LEFT means that you cannot go right or left of the directed heading.

SHIFT YOUR RUDDER means to move it a corresponding amount to the other side. MIND YOUR RUDDER has two meanings: first, to stand by for an order; or second, to pay more attention, you are not steering as requested.

The helm always responds to the order by repeating the order. If told, “Right 10 degrees rudder,” the helm immediately says, “Right 10 degrees rudder,” and starts moving the wheel. When the rudder is stable at 10 degrees right, the helm will say, “Rudder right 10 degrees,” and the report will be acknowledged.

There is a second category of helm orders. They are heading commands. STEADY AS YOU GO means holding the heading under the lubber’s line when the command is given. Alternatively, STEER COURSE 045 DEGREES directs the helm to turn to 045° and hold that course until told otherwise.

At sea, most steering is done by compass, requiring the helmsman to keep the lubber’s line of the compass on the mark of the compass card that indicates the course to be steered. Remember that the card stands still while the ship swings.

As a vessel swings with a change in course, there is a tendency for the inexperienced helmsman to allow the vessel to swing too far. A crooked course, yawing side to side, is the result. When piloting a small boat, pick out a distant landmark or a star at night to steer by. When using a star as a mark, remember that stars, like the sun and moon, move across the sky, so every 15 minutes, you must pick out a new star and check constantly with the compass.

The compass on a small boat is more affected by pitching and rolling than a compass on a large vessel. Using a landmark by day or a star at night, the helmsman can steer a good course by dropping his eye occasionally to the compass to check that they are on course.

Ordinary 11e. *Demonstrate the use of wheel or helm commands found in the Sea Scout Manual.*

4.6.4 Cruise Log

Every time you go out on the water with your ship, you have an opportunity to record information that is useful, and you can document the highlights of the cruise.

Many ships have developed their own cruise log format, and you will find that most logs begin by recording the date, prevailing weather conditions, wind direction and speed, persons aboard, departure location and time, and arrival location and time.

Observations such as the difficulty in lining up landmarks when entering a new harbor or the time it takes to get from one point to another against an incoming tide are instructional and helpful when planning a future cruise. Capturing events such as a hat or the Skipper’s sandwich going overboard are especially fun for later reflection.

Ordinary 11f. *Describe the deck log kept aboard your ship's principal craft. Contribute to a cruise log for three days of cruising (one cruise or a combination of day cruises). Submit the logs to your Skipper.*

4.7 Vessel Selection and Maintenance

Each Sea Scout ship is different and must select the correct vessel for its program. If the home waters are the Mississippi River, choosing a 54-foot sailboat is not appropriate. A powerboat would be better. If you are sailing on the Gulf of Mexico, something larger than a Sunfish will be necessary.

The ship should also assess the sailing, boating, engine maintenance, and vessel maintenance skills available within the unit before choosing craft for the ship. No matter which type boat the ship chooses, it must be seaworthy. While painting, cleaning, and routine maintenance are well within the capabilities of most ships, major structural repairs or engine rebuilds are not. A good rule of thumb is to never accept a boat that has been offered to you just because it is free. Select the type of boat you want for the ship and then find that boat.

In general, boats are fragile. Whether a paddlecraft or a large power cruiser, they have been designed to travel under skillful direction in an element that could be overwhelming. The best design and the sturdiest construction won't amount to much if the craft has been allowed to deteriorate through neglect or ignorance.

The real mariner is always alert for signs of trouble - a strained hull, evidence of dry rot, corrosion, worn gear, frayed lines, sluggish performance of hull or engine, worn stitching on the seams of a sail. Flaking finish or crazed varnish can mean impending trouble. The knowledgeable boatman keeps his vessel shipshape. It is good practice to keep a maintenance log every sail, and enter all discrepancies in it, both those you fix at the time and those that must wait for a while to be fixed.

First and foremost, the safety of the ship and its passengers can be seriously jeopardized by neglecting the hull, fittings, sail, rigging, power plant, or gear. The continuing value of the boat depends almost entirely on its care and upkeep. The true seafarer takes pride in the sparkling appearance of the ship.

There are boats today that are 30 to 50 years old that retain their full seaworthiness and original appearance because they have been kept up. There are boats only a few years old that are worthless hulks because of simple neglect. Sun, rain, salt water, acids, and fumes are considered the great enemies of finish, appearance, and integrity; however, the real enemy is neglect.

Sample Work Schedule

Outfitting Checklist

ITEM	TO BE DONE BY	DATE TO BE DONE	MATERIALS	COST
• Remove cover • Store and inspect boat • Develop checklist	• Skipper • Mate • Crew Leaders • Committee	April 1		
• Scrub and clean Inside • Outside	• Crew 1 on deck • Crew 2 on hull	April 15	Compound	$100
• Clean and check seams, fittings, etc. for leaks. • Caulk leaks	• Crew 1 on deck • Crew 2 on hull • Crew 3 • Mate	April 15	• Frame • Fastenings • Parts and labor	$200
• Remove and replace plank - portside	• Crew 3 • Mate	April 15	• Plank	$50
• Install sister frame starboard amidships	• Skipper • Consultant		• Frame • Fastenings • Parts and labor	$200
• Cut away and install new section of coaming	• Crew 4 • Committee	April 15		$50

4.7.1 Fitting Out

Normally the overall condition of the boat is analyzed, and necessary corrective action is taken two times per year, in the spring and the fall. Spring is the traditional fitting-out time. Winter covers come off, the hull is carefully inspected inside and out, the power plant or sails and rigging are checked, all equipment is looked over, and repairs are made. Small boats are included in the work schedule.

The development of a checklist is the first step. From it can be determined the jobs to be done and their priority, the materials and tools required, and the costs and time that the fitting out will take. Another question that must be answered is who is to do the work: the crew, volunteers, a shipyard, or special technicians.

If it is a small sailboat or powerboat up to 20 feet, usually the work can be done quickly and simply by Sea Scouts at little cost. If it is a larger boat, fitting out can be time-consuming, difficult, and—if professional services are needed—very expensive.

Set up a time schedule and assign people to the work to be done. The plan should involve all hands, including the Skipper, mates, committee members, consultants, and specialists.

Remember, you can save on repair and maintenance costs by careful selection of the boat in the first place. Then, by employing good workmanship with quality materials, you can avoid many problems.

4.7.2 Laying Up

This is a procedure to be followed when a boat is to be stored for the winter. In preparation, much equipment should be removed. Cushions, blankets, mattresses (and other fabrics), charts, books, navigation gear, fire extinguishers, anchor lines, running rigging, food, and liquids, etc., should be placed ashore for storage in a safe, dry place. The hauling-out process is important. If the boat is a small one that can be hauled and stored on a trailer, the problem is relatively simple. If the boat needs to be hauled on a railway and is to be stored in a cradle or shored up with blocks and poppets, attention must be given to hull support at four points at least to prevent the boat from hogging or sagging.

The boat should be thoroughly cleaned. The bottom should be washed and scrubbed clean of all marine growth and slime. The bilges should be cleaned and thoroughly drained.

The engine should be cleaned, the oil drained, and the exterior sprayed with light oil to prevent corrosion. The spark plugs should be removed, and oil injected into the cylinder heads. Spars should be removed and stored.

The great enemies of a boat in storage are rot, mildew, and corrosion. Ventilation must be adequate. Remove all floorboards and open all hatches, skylights, drawers, and locker doors.

Unless stored inside, make a frame and cover the boat with canvas, allowing for ample ventilation. The battery or batteries should be removed and stored, preferably on a low (trickle) charge. Here again, a checklist and work schedule should be developed, and the costs estimated.

Working in a marine environment multiplies the safety hazards you will encounter. All the safety procedures you practice on land must be followed. Wear safety glasses or a face shield. Wear protective clothing, including a hard hat if it is appropriate. Use dust masks where needed and use a safety harness if you are working where a fall is possible. Wear a life vest if going overboard could occur, and never work alone. Always have someone nearby on deck or in a compartment in case something goes awry.

Able 11a. *Demonstrate your knowledge of personal safety equipment needed while cleaning, maintaining, or repairing your vessel.*

4.7.3 Tools

Every ship needs certain hand tools because all vessels need tuning, adjustment, and repair regularly. Each ship is unique in its needs, but there are a number of useful hand tools that are commonly needed by all vessels.

- Pliers give you a grip on almost anything, but often damage that item as well. Don’t use pliers if you have a wrench that fits the job.
- Wrenches come in many varieties: open end, box end, specialty. Each is sized for a specific nut, metric or English. Have the right set.
- Screwdrivers also come in a wide variety of heads, mostly flat-head or Phillips, but there are others. Use the right size.
- Hammers (ball-peen and claw), hacksaws, knives, and other small hand tools are often needed.

For woodworking, you’ll need saws, chisels, planes, nail sets, rivet blocks, scrapers, clamps, files, drills, bit brace and bits, putty knife, spirit level, and rule. On-deck tools should include wire cutters (of a size to cut any diameter wire aboard), routing iron, fid, needles, palm, wax, twine, wire brush, electrician’s tape, Mystik tape, sail repair tape, hand ax, tin snips, sandpaper, putty, caulking compound, sealer, etc. A good extension light should be included.

All hand tools need reasonable care. Store them in a dry area so they won’t rust. Don’t abuse them by using them for something they are not designed to do. A screwdriver is not a pry bar. If tools become worn, replace them before they become dangerous.

Able 11b. *Know the names, uses, sizes, and proper care of the common hand tools used by your ship.*

4.7.4 Hardware

Everything on a boat will regularly be put to the test, and it is imperative for your safety and the safety of others that you use the right tool for the job. When selecting hardware for your boat, you need to know the purpose and your needs. You need to consider things like safe working load, working load limit, breaking strength, and correct size of connecting pieces.

4.7.4.1 Common Boat Hardware

Pelican Hook

The pelican hook is a hinged hook shaped like a pelican's beak that is held closed by a ring that is easily released. It has various uses aboard a boat and is commonly seen securing lifelines. The upper hook is sized by length. The lower part of the pelican hook is sized by the wire or thread that is attached to the hook.

Shackle

Usually, this is a U-shaped piece of metal with a removable pin across the open end. Shackles are connectors. A clevis shackle can be used to connect the mainsail to the main halyard on a sloop or the anchor to the chain. A snap shackle is often used to connect the jib halyard to the jib or a topping lift to the boom. Clevis shackles are sized by the diameter of the clevis pin. Snap shackles are sized by the opening eye inner diameter and the bail inner diameter.

Thimble

When there is a loop in wire rope, it is fitted around a thimble to keep it from bending too tightly. The thimble also keeps the cable from pinching and abrading the inside of a loop.

A rope spliced over a thimble is also protected from chaffing. You are likely to find a thimble with your anchor rode. Rope galvanized thimbles are sized according to the rope size, and stainless wire thimbles are sized according to the wire size to be wrapped around it.

Turnbuckle

This device adjusts the tension or length of ropes, cables, rigging, and other systems that need tensioning. The threaded part of the turnbuckle goes through two different eyelets in the body of the turnbuckle. One thread is left-handed, the other is right-handed. When the turnbuckle is turned, it tightens or loosens the attached lines.

Most standing rigging has turnbuckles for adjustment. Wire rope and cable expand and contract with temperature. Prolonged load can deform rigging. Turnbuckles allow adjustment back toward the ideal. Turnbuckles are sized by the bolt size and length of the body.

Able 11c. *Identify and explain the use of the following: thimble, shackle, turnbuckle, pelican hook, and other ship's hardware and fittings commonly used aboard your ship's vessels. Describe how each is sized.*

4.7.5 Paint and Varnish

The protection of marine surfaces covers a wide and specialized field. Surface protection must be related to the material to be covered - wood or plywood, metal, fiberglass, plastic, etc., and whether it is an exterior or interior and above or below the water's surface.

Also, it is important whether your boat operates in salt or fresh water. In any case, obtain products designed for marine use. Marine paints fall into many categories, each designed to inhibit staining, marine growth, surface erosion and corrosion, dry rot, abrasion, and the effects of oil and gasoline. They provide for stress as well as high temperatures and other weather conditions. And, finally, they reduce friction to a minimum.

Paints can be oil base, lead base, or any of the modern resin and synthetic bases. They can be hard finish (enamel) or self-flaking (flat). They can be glossy, as in a racing bottom finish, or defoliating, as in a copper or other toxic metal compound designed to kill or prevent underwater marine growth.

Common to all types of paint are three ingredients: pigment, solvents, and film formers. Varnishes and shellac contain no pigments.

- Alkyds. The most common and most versatile paint
- Vinyls. An antifouling finish for underwater surfaces
- Epoxies. A synthetic for use on plastic and fiberglass
- Polyurethanes. A hard finish that is abrasion- and friction-resistant
- Acrylics. Hull and metal protection
- Phenolics. Clear finishes such as varnish
- Lacquer hard finish. A varnish or enamel base used clear to waterproof surfaces such as wiring
- Shellac. Used as a varnish base or a sealant, frequently used to coat engine or pump gaskets

The secret of lasting protection is the care taken in preparing the surface before applying the finish.

For a new surface, sand the area smooth and clean it carefully to remove any residue. On wood or plywood, use a sealer to set the grain. Then apply a surfacing compound to fill any dents or scratches, and a primer or undercoat to provide a smooth surface and a tight bond for the final finish. Use a primer on metal surfaces, also.

On previously finished surfaces, remove the old finish by scraping, burning, chemical removers, or sanding to the point where the remaining surface offers a sound bond. If the surface is exposed, touch it up as you would a new surface. A rule of thumb is to take off as much of the old finish as you plan to put on (to prevent a heavy buildup of finish).

On wood surfaces that are to be varnished to show the grain and beauty of the wood, sand smooth, remove any discoloration with a bleach, apply stain if desired, and apply at least five coats of good marine varnish. On previously varnished surfaces, sand carefully and apply at least two coats. The secret of a good varnish job is to sand lightly between coats.

Paint should always be thoroughly agitated and mixed before applying. Never mix or agitate varnish. It will form air bubbles that are almost impossible to work out. Painting and varnishing should be done on clear days with a temperature range between 60° and 85°F. Never apply finish to damp or rotted surfaces.

Paints and varnishes should be kept in tightly sealed containers in well-ventilated lockers, but not aboard your vessel. Brushes should be cleaned carefully in a solvent or thinner and soap and warm water. Wrap in cloth or foil and hang up by the handles or lay flat (never on end on the bristles) between periods of use.

Able 11d. *Demonstrate proper surface and coating preparation, coating techniques, care of stored coatings, and cleaning of brushes and tools used to maintain surfaces on your ship's vessel.*

4.7.6 Fiberglass Repairs

As most of the contemporary boats used by Sea Scouts are constructed of fiberglass, the repair of damage to such boats should be known to all. Fiberglass is available in cloth, mats, ribbon, and powdered form. Exercise caution when working around this material as it floats in the air and is a hazard to your nose, eyes, and skin. Irritation is marked. Wear nose masks, goggles, and long-sleeve shirts.

Fiberglass is molded into a hull in a permanent mold which has been lined first with a parting compound and a layer of gelcoat. A layer of activated resin is applied followed by a layer of fiberglass cloth. Then another layer of resin and fiberglass until the desired thickness is obtained. Upon curing, the hull is removed from the mold for further processing.

To repair a hole in the hull of such a vessel, secure a patching kit from any hardware store and follow directions for activating the resin and note that mixing must be done in a glass or metal container using a disposable wooden stick. The activator will eat right through most paper cups. Depending on the ratio of activator to resin in your mix, you have about three minutes to use it before it becomes stiff.

Prepare edges of the hole to be repaired by sanding a clean surface at least 2 inches all around. Next apply a coat of activated resin and let it dry until tacky. Then cut (with scissors) a patch of cloth equal to the cleaned area. Soak this patch in a fresh batch of activated resin using a stick or putty knife. Do not use your hands if possible. Apply the patch to the opening and smooth down with a broad putty knife—from the middle outward. Smooth out wrinkles and bubbles and feather the edges. Allow to cure before application of successive layers, if needed. Complete with one or more coats of activated resin and allow to cure thoroughly.

Use 240-grit wet-or-dry sandpaper to smooth and feather edges. Finish with 400-grit paper. Use plenty of water in each case.

Let dry and paint, if required. Hands and tools may be cleaned with acetone but use it sparingly.

On occasion it may be possible to repair the gelcoat if the hole is not too large. Gelcoat repair kits are available in most marine supply stores together with instructions. It is impractical to gelcoat an entire boat unless you have had years of experience using a two-line spray gun and materials at elevated temperatures.

***Able 11e.** Explain techniques used for the maintenance, protection, and repair of hulls and decks on your ship's vessel.*

4.7.7 Canvas Work

The sewing of canvas is an art acquired by practice. Although any major repairs should be left to a professional sailmaker, every sailor should be familiar with stitches useful for construction and repair of sails. The flat stitch is usually used at the seams of a sail, where the round stitch is used for repairing tears or for constructing line covers. Grommets are made to pass line through, and they must be carefully crafted so the cloth does not rip under stress.

Canvas-sewing equipment consists of the following:

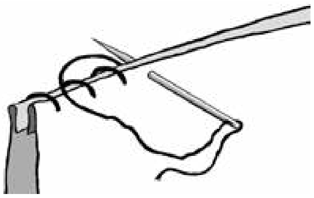
- **Sail needles.** Long spur needles, triangular in shape, rounded at the eye end for general sewing. The No. 15, which is 2½ inches long, is the needle most generally used.
- **Twine.** Use cotton twine of 4 to 8 ply for general canvas work, the heavier ply for heavier canvas. Cotton twine comes in a half-pound ball. Heavier roping is done with 9- to 12-ply twine. Synthetic line equal to what is being sewn can also be used; nylon to nylon, rayon to rayon, etc., will control shrinkage. This is also for added strength. Twine should be threaded through the eye of the needle, doubled, and well waxed for extended life.
- **Palm.** A heavy leather half-glove worn over the hand. The palm has a lead casting sewn in, and this is used to push the needle through the canvas or rope. Palms are either right- or left-handed.
- **Pricker.** A long, sharp, steel-pointed tool used to puncture a needle hole through several thicknesses of canvas.
- **Creasing stick.** A tool, having a slot at one end, is used to crease the seams in preparing the sewing of seams.
- **Beeswax.** A small cake of pure beeswax is used for waxing twine.

4.7.7.1 Round Seams

The round or overhand stitch is used for light sails and in repairing minor tears, 1 to 4 inches long. If repairing a sail, gather the two sides of the rip, starting about an inch above it. Secure the thread by passing it under the first few stitches; then sew over it and continue round and round ending about an inch below the tear. Finish off the thread by passing it back under the stitches. Do not use knots to secure the thread. They will rip out.

Round seams are also used to make line covers, especially for places where wear is likely to occur. A covering will be more stable if the stitch is passed through the line.

Round Seam

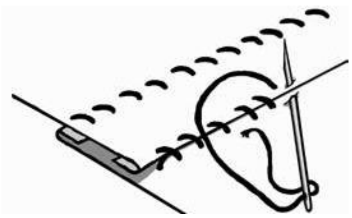


4.7.7.2 Flat Seams

Flat seams are really two seams. They are commonly used to join two pieces of canvas. To sew a flat seam, lay the two pieces of canvas on a flat surface, only overlapping the edges that you want to fasten together. You can mark the overlap with a pencil. Arrange the two cloths with the raw edge toward you and the folded edge behind it. Sew away from you. When finished, open and rub the seam flat using a creasing stick.

Fold back the second cloth and sew the edge to the doubled part of the second cloth. Rub the seam smooth. If done right, it will lie flat.

Flat Seam



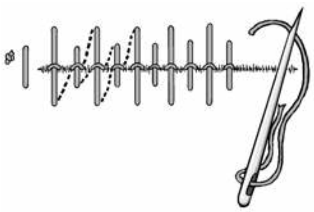
Note: The only difference between the two types shown is the direction of the needle thrust.

4.7.8 Sail Repair

4.7.8.1 Herringbone Stitch

This stitch is used for more serious repairs. Before placing the two sides of the rip together, fold under a narrow margin on each and “iron” it like a pair of pants by gently scraping the edge of the sailcloth with a creasing tool or a knife. Then make alternate long and short stitches to avoid an even line, starting about 1⁄4 inch from the end of the tear, and finish 1⁄4 inch below it. Tuck the end of the twine under the final few stitches as in the round stitch and cut.

Herringbone Stitch



4.7.8.2 Patch

Cut a patch, if possible, from the same weight and type of material as the damaged sail. Allow about 1½ inches of margin on either side of the tear and turn the patch under ½ inch all the way round. “Iron” folds with a creasing tool or knife to keep them manageable, especially heavier weight cloths. Try to get the weave of the patching cloth to run identically with the sail being repaired. Measuring the approximate area and marking the patch material with pencil before cutting is recommended.

4.7.8.3 Tape

Spinnaker and white rigging tape can be pressed into service swiftly and efficiently to help you finish - even win - a race, or perhaps withstand the wind in some cruising crisis until you reach port.

In making the repair, separate the sticky part from its guard which comes as part of the tape roll; then as you unroll the ready tape, press with your fingers on both sides of the rip or seam. It should hold until you can get to it with needle and thread or bring it ashore to the sailmaker.

4.7.8.4 Grommets

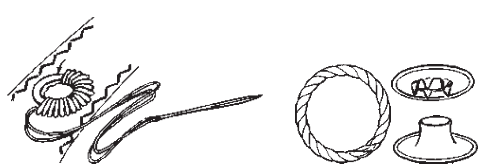
These are sail fittings that must be carefully made. Making a seagoing grommet eye takes practice. It is done as follows:

Cut a hole, somewhat smaller than that of the finished eye. This hole must be cut out of the canvas and not punched by a spike. Then, lay a brass or galvanized iron ring over the edge of the hole or, if you have no ring and wish to make a good eyelet, form a strong grommet of marline, and lay this over the hole. Then take some stout roping twine, 9 or 10 ply, wax it well, and having hitched the end around the side of the grommet away from the point of stress, work around the grommet and through the canvas, about 1⁄8 inch away from the grommet, making your stitches even and pulling them taut.

Then follow around again, stitching a bit further away, and riding your turns between those stitched first. Follow this by one or two more rings of stitching, all evenly disposed and pulled taut. Finish off by hitching the end securely under the grommet ring with a few cross-stitches.

Such a grommet eye, properly made, will not pull out or tear the canvas under any reasonable stress.

Grommet Eye, Marline Grommet, and Iron Grommet



Able 6b. *Sew a flat seam, round seam, and grommet eye in canvas or sail material. Describe how each is used in the construction of and care of sails.*

4.8 Trailering Your Boat

One of the great advantages of small boats is their mobility. A stout car hitch that is well secured is essential, and the trailer itself should be adequate for the load. Become familiar with the laws of your state regarding trailers, licenses, insurance, equipment, lights, safety chains, and restrictions on the overhang distance for masts, etc. Be sure your boat is positioned properly on the trailer and that it is well supported at all contact points.

Proper balance is important. One person should be able to lift the loaded trailer easily to attach it to the car hitch. Always be sure the boat is tied down properly and secured against fore-and-aft slippage. Most trailers are equipped with loading winches, and many have tilting arrangements to facilitate loading and launching. When ready to put your boat in the water, look for an established launching ramp. Otherwise, pick a gentle slope with a surface firm enough to support the wheels. Be sure there is sufficient water depth to float your boat. Back down to the water at right angles. Avoid, if possible, backing the trailer deeper than the wheel's hubcaps. Water—especially salt water—can ruin the wheel bearing lubricant. Do not launch while wheel bearings are hot.

Before launching, release all tiedowns, lock the motor in tilt position, release the bow winch, and rig a line to draw the boat back in when it floats free of the trailer. Disconnect the trailer lights to avoid burning out a bulb when you use the brakes. When all is ready, push the boat off the trailer or tilt the trailer so the boat rolls off. Remove the car and trailer to a parking spot and draw the boat up to the beach until you are ready to get underway.

4.8.1 Travel Tips

Before starting a trailer trip, check the security of the boat on the trailer. If you load gear into the boat, distribute the load evenly to maintain balance. Do not exceed the load capacity of the trailer. Be sure all state requirements are observed.

Check the wheel bearing lubricant, tire air pressure, lights, and the hitch and safety chains (allow enough chain slack to make sharp turns.) Be sure the boat's motor is secure on the transom.

If you have a sailboat, place the mast so there is a minimum overhang, and attach a red cloth to the end of the mast. Check all points of boat and gear contact, and pad, if necessary, to avoid chafing. Be sure the trailer tilt and winch locks are in place.

It is recommended that fuel tanks be empty when traveling. Fill them at your destination.

4.9 Small Craft Construction

Construction of small craft, particularly of paddlecraft, can be a great ship project. Whether building a paddle or rowing craft, small boats can be affordably built using readily available materials or kits. Composite materials including fiberglass and epoxies are generally used to add strength and watertightness to wooden hull forms.

Traditional builders used a method called “plank on frame” to build boats. In this method, a skeletal frame for the boat is erected using a strong, rot-resistant wood such as white oak. Planks made of a lighter wood such as cedar are then fastened to the frame using “trunnels,” rivets, or clenched nails. The planking can be installed abutting or overlapping and the spaces between the planks filled with caulking. When planking is laid side by side, it is called “carvel” planking; overlapping planking is called “lapstrake.”

The relatively high level of skill and the difficulty in finding suitable woods make the use of modern materials highly desirable. Canoes, kayaks, and skiffs made of plywood or long narrow strips glued together with epoxy are the most common homebuilt craft today. Various techniques can be used to build the basic shape of the boat. A frame can be built similar to the traditional method, using plywood planks instead of solid wood. More common are “stitch and glue” or strip-built boats. Many boat builders’ websites have videos demonstrating the two methods of construction.

“Stitch and glue” is a process where the parts of a boat are cut. Holes are drilled through the wood at regular intervals and then fine wire or wire ties are used to hold the boat together temporarily. Fiberglass is laid along the seams and epoxy is applied. When the epoxy cures, the boat retains its shape, and the ties are removed. Additional fiberglass and epoxy are added to the seams (and sometimes to the entire hull) to increase rigidity and toughness. The plywood must be water resistant or, preferably, marine grade. Marine plywood commonly is made of sapele and okuome, relatives of mahogany. These woods are imported from Africa for this purpose and are considered a renewable resource. The advantage to this method is that it is easy to build a boat without first building a mold. A disadvantage is that the plywood is rigid and limits the amount of curving that can be done.

“Strip-built” boats require making a temporary form or mold and then laying long narrow planks against the mold to take the hull form. These long narrow strips, which may be ¾ by ¾ inch or smaller, are glued together with epoxy as they are being laid. Each strip is bent around the frame and wet epoxy added along its length before the next strip is laid. The advantage to this method is that rounder hull forms can be built and different species and colors of wood can be used to create decorative designs. The disadvantage is the amount of epoxy required and the potential mess of working with it. Composite kayaks with “stitch and glue” hulls and strip-built decks are becoming common. These boats combine the relative ease of stitch and glue hull construction with the decorative aspects of strip-building. Wood patterns, geometric shapes, and inlays may all be added to reflect the builder’s creativity and artistry.

Whichever method is chosen, the ship needs to pay attention to manufacturers’ specifications when using epoxy and resins and wear the necessary safety gear— disposable gloves while gluing and respirator masks when sanding. Attention to detail and craftsmanship also matter for how the boat will look, how seaworthy it will be, and how much sanding and grinding will have to be done to remove excess epoxy.

With planning, a boatbuilding program can take about 60 hours of construction time, plus time for curing between steps, varnishing, or painting. It can be done on weekends, evenings, or at a weeklong camp. The cost per individual may vary, but at this writing, basic materials for a canoe, kayak, or skiff can be purchased for under $200. Kits are more expensive, running $700 to $800 for either stitch and glue or strip built.

5.0 Paddlecraft Seamanship

Sea Scout Manual

5.0 Paddlecraft Seamanship

Paddlecraft are among both the oldest and the newest ways to go out on the water. Native cultures developed canoes and kayaks centuries ago but constructed with modern materials such as fiberglass and plastic, these paddlecraft have increasingly become an affordable, popular way to recreate. More than 50 million Americans participate in some form of paddling activity each year, and every year the number of participants grows. Stand up paddleboards are the newest form of paddlecraft. Sea kayaks and whitewater kayaks have become more specialized for specific waters, and rafting has become an activity of choice on many rivers.

Unfortunately, as interest and participation have gone up, the number of accidents, including drowning, has also gone up. As a prudent mariner, you need to be aware of and manage risks.

To begin, ships need to study and adhere to the principles of Safety Afloat and Safe Swim Defense. It is imperative that every participant be classified as a “swimmer” to participate in training for paddlecraft activities or to paddle at a Sea Scouting function. Properly fitted U.S. Coast Guard–approved life jackets must be worn by all persons engaged in paddlecraft activities.

All persons participating in activity afloat must be trained and practiced in craft handling skills, safety, and emergency procedures. The Canoeing merit badge and the Kayaking and Stand Up Paddleboarding awards prepare Sea Scouts and unit leaders for kayaking on flat water of a limited extent. Kayak or canoe trips require additional training in emergency equipment and communication. Ocean and river trips require additional kayaking skills for dealing with waves and moving water and the ability to read the environment. Units should not undertake excursions on Class II whitewater before mastering the necessary skills on Class I rivers.

Before Sea Scouts get underway, they develop a float plan detailing their route, time schedule, and contingency plans. The float plan considers all possible water and weather conditions and all applicable rules or regulations and is shared with all who have an interest.

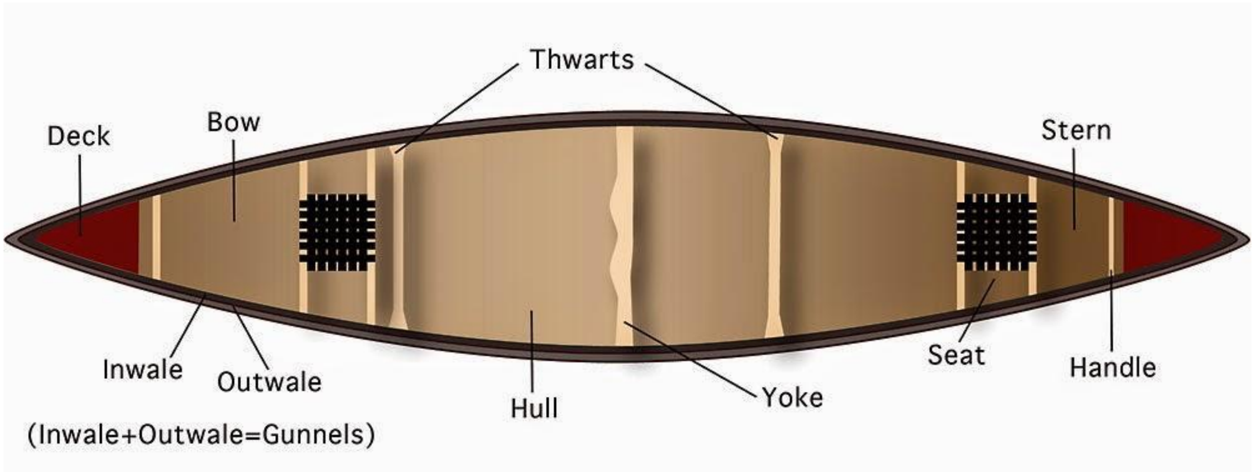
Equipment must be suited to the craft, to the water conditions, and to the individual. Equipment must be in good repair and meet all applicable standards. Appropriate rescue equipment must be available. Whitewater kayaking requires the use of safety helmets. During treks, safety gear such as navigation aids, weather radios, individual signal devices, throw bags, first-aid kits, spare paddles, and spare clothing should be carried in the kayaks or in support craft.

5.1 Types of Paddlecraft

5.1.1 Canoes

For several centuries, the canoe was a primary method of travel for explorers and settlers. Today, it remains an important part of the wilderness experience and an enjoyable leisure activity that teaches communication, teamwork, and physical fitness.

Parts of a Canoe



5.1.1.1 Canoe Shape and Performance

A canoe's dimensions affect how the canoe will perform on water. For example, a longer waterline enhances speed and improves tracking and the ability to go straight. A keel further improves a canoe's tracking ability.

A longer canoe glides farther with each stroke and can carry a heavier load than a shorter boat. Thus, a 17-foot canoe on flat water can hold more cargo and go straighter and faster than a 13-foot canoe. The shorter a canoe's waterline, the easier it is to turn.

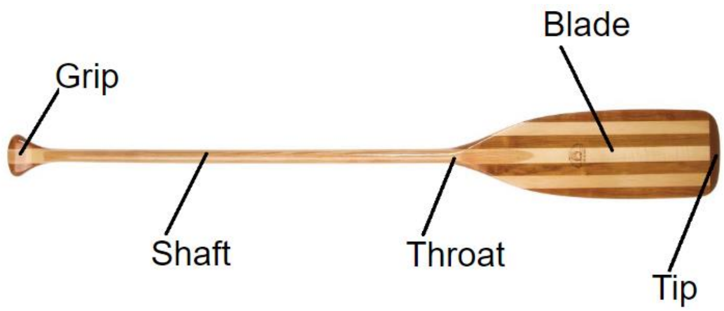
The waterline can vary depending on the length of the hull, the shape of the canoe's ends, and the curve of the bow and stern sections out of the water. The contour of the ends of a canoe as seen from the side is called the stem. The curve of the hull from bow to stern is the rocker, like the bottom of a rocking chair. The more curve in the rocker, the shorter the waterline. A canoe with a lot of rocker can turn and spin easily and is suited for whitewater paddling, which involves quick navigation. The width of a canoe, or its beam, mainly affects stability. Wider canoes can carry bigger loads and are less likely to tip over. The width of the bow is also a factor in a canoe's performance. A narrow, pointed bow cuts through the water like a knife. A wider, blunt bow more easily navigates waves and deflects rocks. A bow that is longer and narrower than the stern—asymmetrical, or irregular in shape—will slice through the water better than a symmetrical one, increasing the speed of the canoe.

5.1.1.2 Paddles

On even the shortest canoe journey, you will lift your paddle thousands of times, making a lightweight paddle worth plenty. Canoe paddles are made of wood, fiberglass, metal, plastic, or combinations of these. Shorter blades are best for shallow rivers, while blades that are long and narrow can be quieter and more manageable. A blade width of 7 to 8 inches is good for beginners.

The top of the paddle, where one hand is placed, is called the grip. The grip of your paddle should fit your hand smoothly and comfortably. The other hand should be comfortably placed along the shaft of the paddle but above the gunwale of the canoe. The blade is the wide part of the paddle that is placed into the water. The end of the blade, called the tip, is fragile. The throat is where the shaft and blade join.

Parts of a Canoe Paddle



5.1.1.3 Equipment

Whether you are setting out for an hour of paddling or a week of wilderness exploration, your canoe must be outfitted with essentials to propel it and to protect its passengers. Life jackets for each person are the most important piece of gear you have on the water, perhaps even more vital than the canoe itself. Life jackets work only if they fit well and are worn. Watertight or waterproof containers keep food, sleeping bags, and other items dry. Dry bags are extremely durable. They are made from heavy plastic and generally have a roll-up watertight closure and shoulder straps and hip belts for portaging. A backpack may be made from water-resistant fabric but does not have the watertight seal of a dry bag. Other good waterproof containers include 5-gallon resealable buckets and waterproof map cases. Simple plastic bags such as resealable freezer bags and heavy-duty garbage bags work well, too. When using garbage bags, double bag all items and close the bags with a thick rubber band. Then place the garbage bags in a duffel bag, stuff sack, or other container to protect the bag from being punctured or torn. Waterproof containers such as dry bags, plastic buckets, and plastic bags are essential for keeping canoeists' gear and food dry.

5.1.1.4 Portage Yoke

When you pick up a canoe and carry it over land from one lake or stream to another, you are portaging. The trail you follow is the portage. Canoe yokes come in handy when carrying the canoe on your shoulders.

5.1.1.5 Paddling a Canoe

Good position and body mechanics lead to effective paddling. Whether you canoe with a partner or alone, either kneel in the canoe or sit solidly on a seat for stability and more efficient paddling. Think of yourself as part of the canoe, locked in place.

Most canoes have bow and stern seats. Whether paddling tandem or solo, sitting is comfortable for long cruises on open water. However, sitting also raises the joint center of gravity of the canoe and paddler, making the combination less stable. Paddling from the seat is acceptable on quiet waters, but on rough water or a windy day it is best to kneel. Kneeling lowers your center of gravity and makes the canoe more stable, especially in windy conditions. It is important to learn a few kneeling positions so that you can change positions and give your muscles and joints some rest. You can use them whether paddling solo or in tandem.

Always use a kneeling pad to protect your knees. The most common kneeling position is the cruising position. Kneel with your knees apart and with your weight against a thwart or the edge of a seat. To improve stability and control, wedge the knee on the paddling side against the bilge.

5.1.1.6 Strokes

When paddling, maintain a smooth rhythm with your paddle, keeping your strokes steady and crisp and in sync with your paddling partner. Use your arms to guide your paddle but power the strokes with the larger muscle groups of your abdomen, shoulders, and back. Practice the forward stroke, backstroke, draw stroke, push away, forward sweep, reverse sweep, and J-stroke using the following key principles:

- Maintain good posture. Sitting straight will allow you to balance the boat more easily and to use your muscles more efficiently. Try not to hunch forward or over-reach with your arms.
- Center your body over the boat. When your head is over your abdomen, your center of gravity will help keep the boat balanced. Even when sitting or kneeling close to the side of the boat, you can still maintain good balance by following this principle.
- Paddle in the box. Imagine a box about as wide as your shoulders, as high as the top of your head, and as low as the top of the gunwales. It extends forward from your back to as far as your arms will reach while keeping good posture. Keeping your hands and arms in this box while you paddle will help prevent muscle strain and help you use the larger muscle groups of your abdomen, shoulders, and back to power your strokes.
- Rotate from the waist. If you rotate your upper body to perform each stroke, the large, strong muscles of the torso will power the stroke and prevent fatigue. As you paddle, imagine your torso twisting around your backbone.
- Following the paddle blade with your eyes will help you learn to rotate your torso through each stroke.

5.1.2 Kayaks

Originally, kayaks were made of seal skins stretched over a wood and bone frame. The Inuit used them for hunting and fishing. Early recreational kayaks were made of cloth over wooden frames. Some models of folding kayaks still use fabric on a frame, but most modern kayaks are made of rigid plastics such as polyethylene, fiberglass, or Kevlar. Kayak designs vary according to usage and construction. A flatwater racer differs from a whitewater racer. Recreational kayaks are multipurpose craft suitable for a variety of water conditions. Touring kayaks are larger and have storage capacity for camping gear. They are also known as sea kayaks, due to their use around ocean shorelines. They can be long—up to 20 feet—to aid in tracking, and often have a rudder or skeg. Special play boats or squirt boats are used in heavy whitewater. They are short—down to 6 feet—for easy turning. Some play boat designs are adapted for surfing. Sit-on-tops do away with the traditional cockpit and deck in favor of a recessed well that is self-bailing. The paddler also sits on the floor of portable inflatable kayaks.

Kayak Types

5.1.2.1 Basic Paddling Maneuvers

- You should become proficient in each of the following techniques:
- Strokes - forward, forward sweep, reverse sweep, draw, rudder, and backstroke
- Getting in and out; entering and launching a kayak from dock or shore; landing or docking; and exiting a kayak from dock or shore
- Aiding a capsized paddler
- Assisted rescues
- Self-rescues

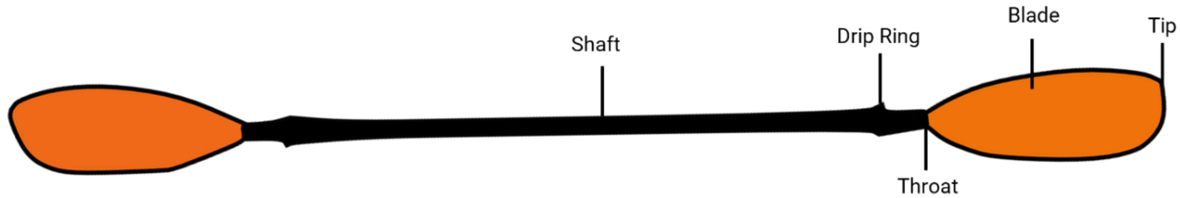
5.1.2.2 Equipment

All equipment must be suited to the craft—whether sit-on-top, decked, or inflatable—ready for the water conditions, and fitted to the individual. Equipment must be in good repair and meet all applicable standards. Appropriate rescue equipment must be available. Whitewater kayaking requires the use of safety helmets. During treks, safety gear such as navigation aids, weather radios, individual signal devices, throw bags, first aid kits, spare paddles, and spare clothing should be carried in the kayaks or in support craft. A whistle and life jacket are both required by the Coast Guard.

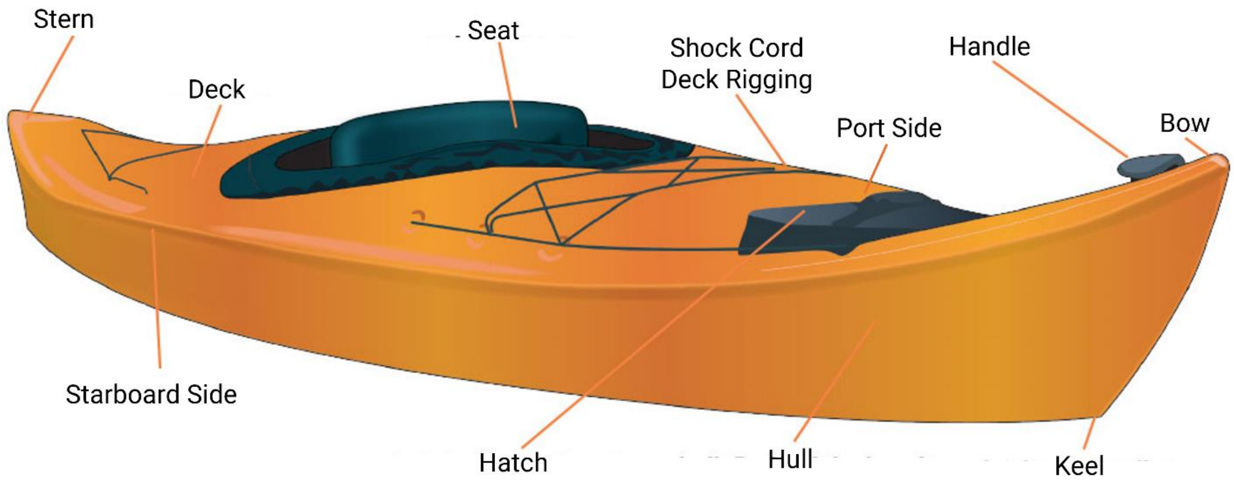
5.1.2.3 Paddles

The blades of kayak paddles are made in various designs, such as flat or spoon shaped. Many blades are set at an angle to one another, from 45 to 90 degrees. The offset angle allows the blade out of the water to be automatically feathered. Feathering reduces wind and splash resistance. A paddle with offset blades is controlled by firmly gripping the shaft with one hand, the right being the most common. The paddle should rotate freely in the loose grip of the opposite hand. Grasp the paddle with your hands just over shoulder-width apart. The knuckles of your control hand should be aligned with the edge of the blade nearest that hand. Some shafts are oval in cross-section to make hand placement easier and more comfortable. The grip of the control hand never changes. Practice rotating the blade 90 degrees by bending your wrist to raise your knuckles while also allowing your elbow to bend. Allow the paddle shaft to rotate freely in your other hand. This will turn the blade near your slip hand into the correct position for an efficient stroke. Correct paddle length depends on both your size and that of the boat. Your instructor will be able to suggest an appropriate size. You will then need to test the paddle in your kayak to be sure you can perform the strokes correctly.

Parts of a Kayak Paddle



Kayak Components



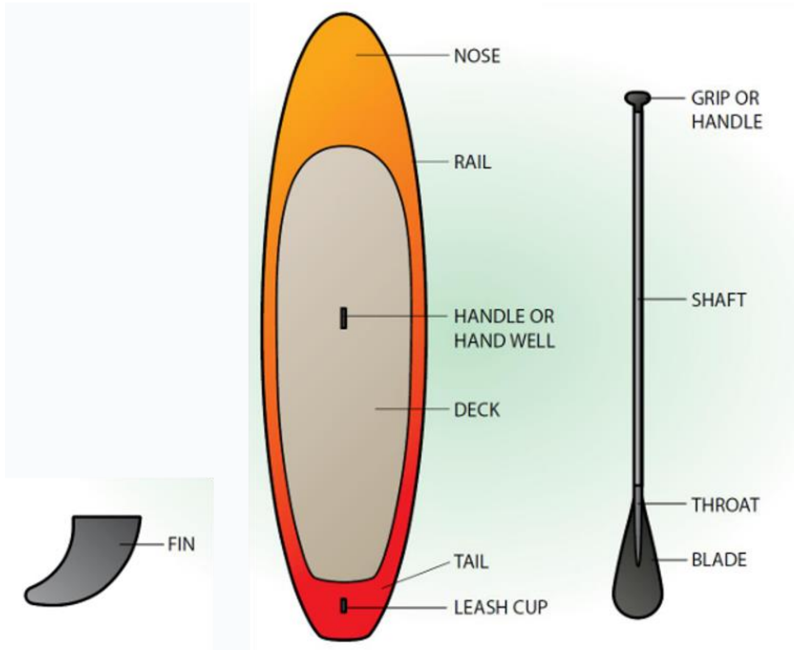
5.1.3 Stand Up Paddleboards (SUPs)

Stand up paddleboarding originated as an offshoot of surfing. It is still used in the surf and has expanded into whitewater. Sea Scout training for SUP should be conducted in calm, flat water free from wind, waves, current, and outside boat traffic, and be within swimming distance of shore. There should be no submerged trees or structures that could injure an individual falling off a board. Completion of the training should prepare Sea Scouts and leaders to enjoy SUP activities in similar environments. That, in turn, can lead to opportunities such as flatwater racing. However, the farther you venture from shore, the more you need to know about handling wind, waves, and currents. Flatwater touring is another possibility. Gear can be carried on the deck in waterproof bags. Consult other resources for what to carry, where to go, and how to deal with changing environments. Operating a SUP in the surf zone or on whitewater requires skills beyond those covered in the Stand Up Paddleboarding award. Such skills are best acquired from a qualified instructor. Check local paddling clubs and the American Canoe Association at americancanoe.org for opportunities to learn more advanced skills.

Stand up paddleboards come in a range of materials, styles, widths, and lengths. Some boards are highly specialized either for a specific activity or for a certain water venue. Other all-around boards can be used for different activities across a range of water venues. Generally, the wider a board is the more stable it will be on the water.

America's Boating Channel: Stand-Up Paddleboard Safety

Stand Up Paddleboards Components



5.1.3.1 Paddles

There are many different materials and styles of paddles. Key components to understand when choosing a good paddle are length and weight. Heavy paddles will tire a person quickly, but lighter paddles can be more expensive. There are also numerous techniques for sizing a paddle, so consider going with the manufacturer's recommendation. However, the key point when sizing a paddle is that when the blade is fully immersed in the water, the grip should not be higher than your shoulder. In addition, different SUP activities might be better executed with a different length of paddle. For example, some ocean SUP surfers prefer a shorter paddle length than when they are paddling on flat water.

5.1.3.2 Equipment

In addition to a board, paddle, and properly sized life jacket, each participant in a SUP activity on calm water should have a whistle and an appropriate leash. All equipment should be safety checked and repaired as needed prior to use. Dress should be appropriate for air and water temperatures. Shoes, sunscreen, a hat, sunglasses, and a water bottle are also recommended.

Leashes are a crucial piece of equipment in numerous situations. In flat water, a leash will keep your board from blowing away in the wind and may keep it from striking another paddler if you fall. Leashes are straight, coiled, or a hybrid of both. A coiled leash is appropriate for flat water because a straight leash may drag in the water and snag paddle blades or other objects. One end of the leash is attached with a Velcro cuff to your ankle or calf. The other end is attached to a fitting on the tail of the board.

Straight or hybrid leashes are typically used in surf. In flowing rivers, with or without whitewater, leash use is not as straightforward because there is a possibility the leash could lead to entanglement. For river use, the leash should be attached to your life jacket with a quick-release mechanism, never to your ankle or calf. Seek specialized training before attempting SUP in moving water, rivers, or whitewater, and follow the advice of your instructor. When in doubt, do not wear a leash in moving water or whitewater.

For more information, review the Scouting America Stand Up Paddleboarding award material, No. 430-189.

5.1.4 Rafts

Rafting, especially whitewater rafting, is a challenging recreational activity using an inflatable craft to navigate a river, usually on white or rough water. Modern rafting as a leisure sport has become popular since the mid-1970s, evolving from individuals paddling small 10-foot rafts with double-bladed paddles to multi-person rafts propelled by single- bladed paddles and steered by a tour guide at the stern. The modern raft is an inflatable boat, consisting of very durable, multilayered rubberized (hypalon) or vinyl fabrics (PVC) with multiple air chambers. They range in size from 20 feet long by 8 feet wide to single- person packable rafts that may be as small as 5 feet long and weigh as little as 4 pounds.

In the “Whitewater” chapter of Aquatics Supervision there are two pages on how to select a commercial rafting service. The Aquatics Supervision manual does not currently cover rafting techniques for youth rafting without a guide on board. More and more outfitters are offering four- to six-man rafts and duckies (single or tandem inflatable kayaks) for rent in lieu of rigid canoes and kayaks. The whitewater program at the Paul R. Christen National High Adventure Base, located at the Summit Bechtel Family National Scout Reserve, is a good place for Sea Scouts to experience this paddling opportunity. For more information about high-adventure programs at the Summit Bechtel Reserve, visit summitbsa.org/programs/national-high-adventure-base/summit-experience.

5.1.5 Rowing

Rowing is a skill acquired by practice. However, a few hints may help. Before starting to row, be certain the oars are the right length. Good oarsmen generally prefer to have the ends of the oar handles touch each other or overlap slightly, since this gives more power to the stroke.

The complete stroke is made up of four distinct movements:

1. Catch: placing the blades in the water ready to pull.
2. Pull: sweeping the blades aft to give headway.
3. Feather: raising the blades and turning them flat.
4. Recover: swinging the oars to the position of catch.

To give the stroke full power, keep the upper edge of the blades at the surface of the water, your hands as level as possible. They should move fore and aft in a smooth motion.

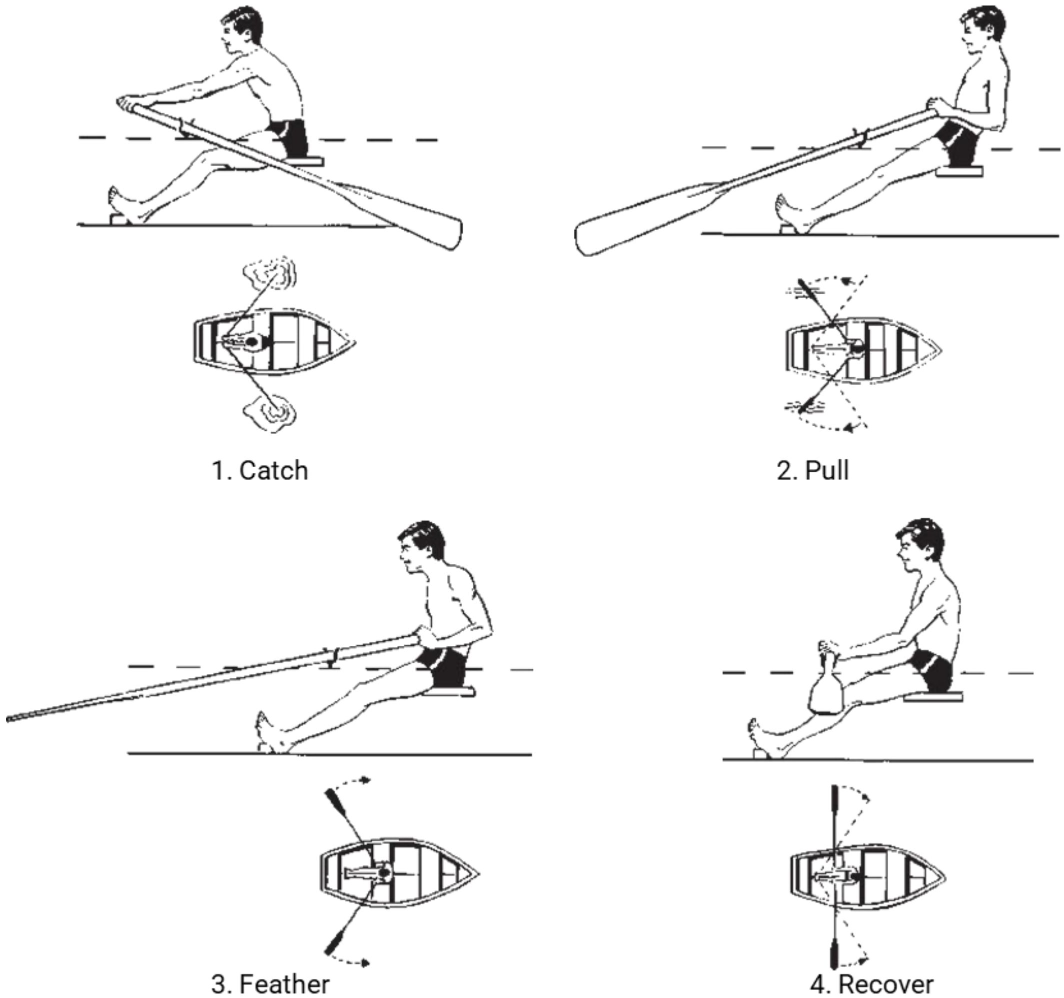
As the stroke is finished, give your wrists a smart flip so the blades come out of the water at about a 45-degree angle. Keep your elbows close to the body and your back straight, chin up and in, and your feet against the stretcher or otherwise well braced. Your weight should be centered slightly abaft.

The pin-type rowlock will not permit proper rowing technique. This kind of oarlock is used principally on lakes for trolling where the oars are often trailed. A ring rowlock is better, and a preventer inboard of the oar is used so the oar will not move overboard.

In rowing, learn to set a course making allowance for tide or wind. Once your course has been determined, steer by the wake or by taking a range over some point off the quarter. It is tiresome to be turning continually after every few strokes to look forward.

Ordinary 7b. *Demonstrate your ability to handle a vessel with paddles or oars by doing one of the following: Safely board a rowboat and row in a straight line for 200 yards/meters, stop, make a pivot turn, return to the starting point, and backwater in a straight line for 50 yards/ meters. Make a turn and return to the starting point. Or safely board a canoe, kayak, or paddleboard and paddle a straight line for 200 yards/ meters. Make a turn and return to the starting point. Demonstrate a draw stroke to move the boat sideways both right and left, and forward and reverse sweeps to spin the boat both clockwise and counterclockwise.*

Rowing Strokes



5.2 Personal Safety Skills

Participants are required to have personal safety skills, including how to select, and fit life jackets, how to float in moving water, how to deal with cold water, and how to perform capsize drills. Everyone wears a life jacket while paddling. There are exceptions in Scouting Americ policy, but they do not apply to paddlecraft such as canoes, kayaks, and rafts, or even dragon boats or war canoes more than 20 feet long.

5.2.1 Swimming

Conditions that limit swimming ability will also limit boating activities because of the swimmer requirement, but limit is not the same as prohibit. The requirements for the Scouting America swimmer test are to jump feetfirst into water over your head in depth, level off, and swim 75 yards in a strong manner using one or more of the following strokes: sidestroke, breaststroke, trudgen, crawl. Then swim 25 yards using an easy, restful backstroke. The 100 yards must be swum continuously and include at least one sharp turn. After completing the swim, rest by floating. Those not classified as a swimmer are limited to multi-person craft during outings or float trips on calm water with little likelihood of capsizing or falling overboard. They may ride in a canoe or other paddlecraft with an adult swimmer skilled in that craft as a buddy.

5.2.2 Communications

Modern mobile phones are ubiquitous. They offer what seems to be a handy solution to general communications. Many incorporate a GPS receiver that can transmit latitude and longitude, but they also have limitations. Battery life, cell tower distance and location, and waterproofing are all issues that can make a cellphone less desirable than a marine radio. A good, floating, waterproof VHS radio with a built-in GPS receiver and digital selective calling is a good investment for a Sea Scout group going offshore.

5.2.3 Flotation

Your paddlecraft may have built-in flotation and bulkheads to limit taking on water. To prevent more water from coming in, add inflatable flotation bags at bow and stern to displace that water and reduce the amount you may have to bail out. In an incident, you will stay with your vessel, and improving its flotation can make it a long, hard, lifesaving device.

5.2.4 Visibility

When other vessels, particularly powered vessels, are bearing down on paddlecraft, they are likely to see you at a distance of only about a quarter of a mile. Depending on their speed, they may have less than a minute to respond to avoid you. Help them see you by being aware that your paddle glint and motion will be the first things they see. Next, they will see your clothing, so wear colors that contrast with your background and are bright.

5.2.5 Fitness

As with all physical activities, paddling requires fitness—endurance to paddle for long periods, strength to lift the paddlecraft or portage it, and agility and balance to react to wind and waves. Develop your own fitness plan that focuses on core strength, upper-body strength, and endurance.

5.3 Aquatics Supervision

5.3.1 Swimming and Water Rescue and Aquatics Supervision

Paddle Craft Safety covers skills needed to meet Safe Swim Defense and Safety Afloat policies applied at the unit level. These training courses are provided locally by qualified instructors who are authorized by the local council. They are also available online. Sea Scout youth (ages 16 and older per the requirements) are encouraged to attend the Aquatics Supervision training sessions held by the National Council. Offering training programs to older youth meets the objective of preparing the unit to safely conduct its own aquatics activities and is therefore appropriate. Sea Scouts are encouraged to earn the Lifesaving merit badge prior to taking Swimming and Water Rescue, and to complete the requirements for the Canoeing or Kayaking merit badge and/or Kayaking prior to taking Paddle Craft Safety. All youth with an active interest in paddlecraft, lifeguarding, or positions as summer camp aquatics staff are encouraged to attend a Scouting America Lifeguard program.

America's Boating Channel: Safety Tips for Paddle Sports

5.4 Risk Management

An injury that doesn't happen needs no treatment. An emergency that doesn't occur requires no response. An illness that doesn't develop demands no remedy. The best way to stay safe on the water is to avoid getting into trouble in the first place. That requires planning, training, leadership, good judgment, and accepting responsibility—in short, risk management.

We manage risk in almost every aspect of our lives. There is risk involved in stepping out of our homes in the morning, but we go anyway. There are risks in crossing a street, catching a bus, and taking part in sports, but we find ways to minimize these risks and maximize our safety and well-being.

Risk management is so much a part of paddlecraft adventures that often we hardly notice we are doing it. When we fill bottles with water from streams and lakes, we deal with the risk of parasites by treating the water with a filter or chemicals, or by boiling it. When we share the water with sea mammals or fish, we protect them and ourselves by staying out of their reach, eliminating human odors from ourselves, and keeping alert. When foul weather blows in and we become uncomfortably exposed, we consider all the available information and then make decisions that keep risks at acceptable levels.

Perceived risk can energize paddlecraft activities by bringing to them an immediacy that is sharper than what we normally experience. The actual risk on a well-managed paddling trek, for example, is relatively low, but participants experiencing the events of the trip might perceive that the risk is much higher than it actually is. That heightened awareness can take them beyond their usual comfort levels and encourage them to accept challenges that will stretch their abilities and build their confidence.

The only way to eliminate risk completely on the water is to give up the pleasures, challenges, and satisfaction of taking part in an adventure. Rather than attempting to do away with it, group members and leaders can manage risk by identifying its sources, understanding its boundaries, and tailoring their behavior to minimize exposure to danger.

5.4.1 Shared Management of Risks

Many outdoors-oriented organizations have guidelines to address certain hazards they believe to be of particular concern to their members. This chapter, for example, will discuss hypothermia, lightning, and several other potential risks of great interest to Sea Scouts. A truly effective approach to risk management, though, is found not just in the details but also in the willingness of everyone in a group to take an active role in maximizing his or her own safety and the safety of others.

Here are three keys to effective risk management:

- Everyone in the group commits to having a safe experience.
- Everyone understands and follows group guidelines established to minimize risk.
- Everyone has a say in recognizing and dealing with risks that arise during a trek.

A leader who empowers group members with resources, training, and responsibilities for conducting successful paddling trips often will find that they also can be trusted to do their part to manage risk. When each person has a part to play in the success of a trek, everyone has a stake in risk management. Group members are far better prepared to deal with illnesses or injuries if they are versed in response plans and if they know where they are, what resources are at their disposal, and what skills they can draw upon. On the other hand, leaders who expect group members simply to obey rules and instructions—to be followers rather than thinkers and problem solvers—might discover that their groups aren't able to deal effectively with the changing nature of risk.

A critical aspect of risk management is letting others know when you are having difficulties or are aware of a concern that might affect you or the group. Many people tend to keep things to themselves. They don't want to slow down the group, or they are worried about what others will think of them. Stopping for a few moments to deal with a hot spot helps avoid bringing the group to a long halt later in the day when blisters break out. Voicing concern about changing weather or questionable route decisions can bring important matters to the attention of the rest of your group.

Ways individuals can help manage personal risks include:

- Stay in good shape so you are ready for the physical demands of a paddling adventure.
- Know where you are going and what to expect.
- Adjust clothing layers to match changing conditions.
- Drink plenty of water.
- Protect yourself from exposure to the sun.
- Take care of your gear.

5.4.2 Outdoor-Oriented First Aid

Take care of yourself, and you will be far less likely to have trouble on the water. You also will be much better able to help others deal with difficult situations.

When we get away from it all, among the things we are getting away from is quick access to emergency support and care. If someone has an accident in an American city, calling 911 will bring an emergency team to the scene within minutes.

The farther group members are from medical facilities, the more important is their ability to deal with emergencies on their own. Responding to incidents during paddling adventures can involve not only immediate treatment but also evacuating ill or injured persons to shore or stabilizing them and maintaining their safety for hours until medical assistance arrives.

Those who intend to paddle offshore should prepare themselves with first aid training, ideally including training in caring for injured and ill persons in remote settings. Among the training courses available in various parts of the country are Red Cross Wilderness First Aid Basic, Wilderness First Responder, Wilderness Emergency Medical Technician, and Mountaineering Oriented First Aid.

5.4.3 Preparing a Group to Manage Risk

The Coast Guard and rescue team professionals and trained volunteers responding to calls can be exposed to considerable risk. Never hesitate to summon help when you need it but minimize the need for assistance by preparing well and doing your best to proceed in ways that maximize your safety and that of others.

Risks associated with the outdoors can involve rain, wind, heat, cold, water, wildlife, and falling overboard. Human elements affecting risk include lack of physical preparation, improper training, poor judgment, and unreasonable expectations by group members, leaders, parents, and others. Many of these concerns can be addressed by leaders helping group members decide upon activities that are appropriate to their skills, experience levels, and interests. Preparing a group to manage risk also involves a certain amount of pre-trip planning and paperwork and development of an emergency response plan.

5.4.3.1 Paperwork

The policies of a given organization will determine the paperwork that must be completed before a trek begins—releases for medical treatment, for example, proof of health insurance, float plans, and any forms required by land management agencies. Leaders also should be fully informed in writing if a group member requires medications or has any medical issues or allergies. Always prepare a written itinerary of where you plan to be on each day and night of a trek. Leave copies with several responsible people who will take appropriate action if you haven't returned according to schedule.

5.4.3.2 Emergency Response Plan

Developing a written emergency response plan requires group members to figure out the steps to be taken during emergencies and to write down contact information for agency personnel, law enforcement authorities, and medical response networks. The plan should outline strategies for contacting help if help is needed. Along with your group's roster, itinerary, intended route, and expected time of return, give copies of the emergency response plan to support people at home before you get underway.

5.4.3.3 Mobile Telephones and Risk Management

GPS receivers allow travelers to pinpoint locations, but they are no substitute for mastering the use of maps and compasses. Likewise, mobile telephones can be a convenient means for groups to contact emergency response personnel, but phones are useless if they malfunction, the batteries are exhausted, or distance and terrain prevent clear reception of signals. Mobile phones can be made waterproof, but few float, and you can be out of the range of a cell tower when you are offshore.

Frivolous use of mobile phones can seriously diminish solitude, independence, and challenge in the outdoors. If you carry a mobile phone, stow it in a waterproof container and bring it out only for emergency calls. Most of all, never assume that having a mobile phone grants you any protection for attempting activities beyond your levels of skill and experience, especially if you are far from emergency support.

5.4.3.4 Managing Risk Afloat

The degree of risk in a situation depends on many factors. Managing risk often is a matter of considering the “what if” of a situation: What if I fall in? What if I lose my paddle? What if I hurt my shoulder paddling? What if I get too tired to paddle back? Other considerations are the time of day; your group’s level of fatigue, hunger, or anxiety; and the amount of experience they have had with similar situations.

Put lots of faith in your gut feeling about a situation. If it doesn’t seem right but you’re not sure why, your instincts might be telling you something you need to know but do not yet fully understand. Take plenty of time to consider your options. Anyone in a group should feel empowered to call a halt to group activities whenever they perceive a risk that should be addressed. In turn, group leaders and other members must respect those concerns and give them full consideration.

While the tone of a group is best when it is upbeat and members strive to see the positive in every situation, it’s good to be a pessimist about hazards, erring on the side of too much caution rather than not enough. The risk management portion of your brain should be focused on what could go wrong so that you can act in ways that increase the likelihood of things going right.

5.4.3.5 Incident Response

Risk management is not built on a list of rules but rather on good judgment and a willingness to accept responsibility for one’s own safety and that of others. Incident response is what happens when an injury or illness has occurred during a trek and a group must decide how to handle it.

Accounts of injuries and illnesses outdoors often try to pinpoint a specific cause. Hypothermia, for example, often is blamed on chilly weather, cotton clothing, and precipitation. Of course, the steps that led to poorly dressed travelers shivering in the rain can be traced back to decisions that might easily have prevented that dangerous situation from occurring at all. With qualified leadership, personal responsibility, and effective planning, those travelers would have had warm clothing and rain gear. They would have been well-hydrated and have had energy food in their packs. They would have kept an eye on the weather and made timely decisions about where to go, when to go ashore, and whether to turn around and go home.

5.4.3.6 Keeping Risk in Perspective

Perhaps the greatest risk to be managed during cruises is also one of its real attractions—the simple matter of distance. The farther you travel from clinics, physicians, and rescue squads, the more you must rely upon yourself and your companions to maintain your safety. Of course, the best response to risk is to stay out of trouble in the first place. That requires planning, leadership, and an awareness of your surroundings so that you can make good decisions every step of the way. Add the first aid training you need to respond effectively to an illness or injury that might arise, and you can make the management of risk second nature on every paddling adventure.

6.0 Sailboat Seamanship

Sea Scout Manual

6.0 Sailboat Seamanship

6.1 Parts of a Sailboat

Just like other disciplines and sports, boating has its own vocabulary. If you do not know the language, you cannot participate fully; and you may actually be a risk to yourself and others. Some words such as aboard and ahead have crossed over into general language, but other common boating terms have not made it into the landlubber's vocabulary. For example, chafing gear is not lip gloss. It is a protective cover or tubing that protects your line, and line is not something you use to get the attention of someone who interests you. Line is the rope used for various purposes aboard a boat.

Some parts of a boat are universal. All boats have the following:

- **Bow -** The front of the boat
- **Stern -** The back of the boat
- **Port -** The left side of the boat if you are looking toward the bow
- **Starboard -** The right side of the boat if you are looking toward the bow
- **Hull -** The boat's main body or outer shell
- **Freeboard -** The distance between the waterline and the main deck or gunwale
- **Draft -** The depth of a hull from the waterline to the lowest part of the keel
- **Keel -** The backbone of the boat, the basic support extending from bow to stern

Types of Sails

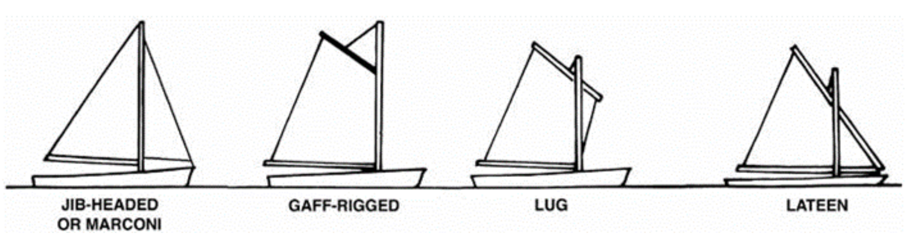


Diagram of Day Sailer

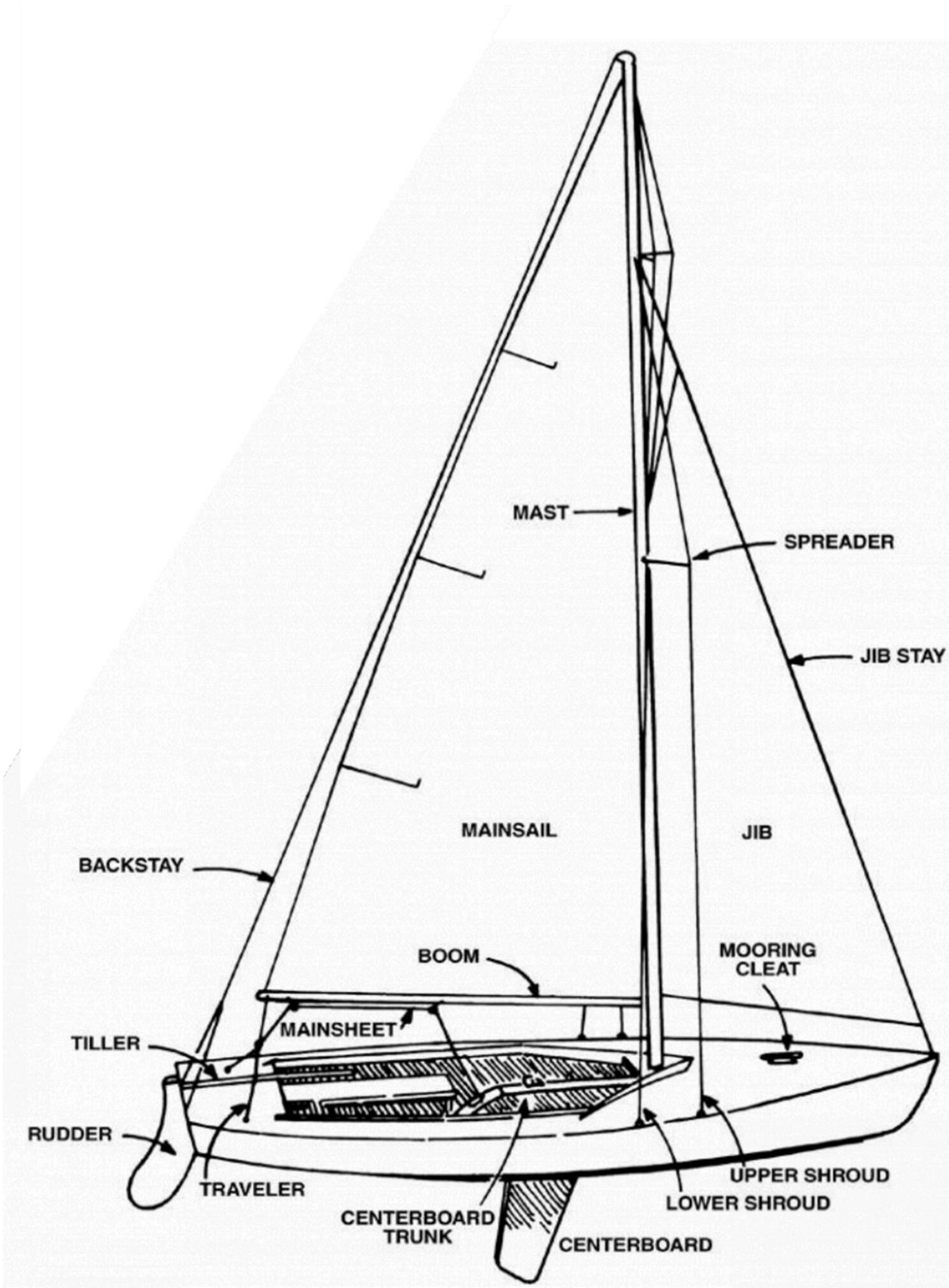
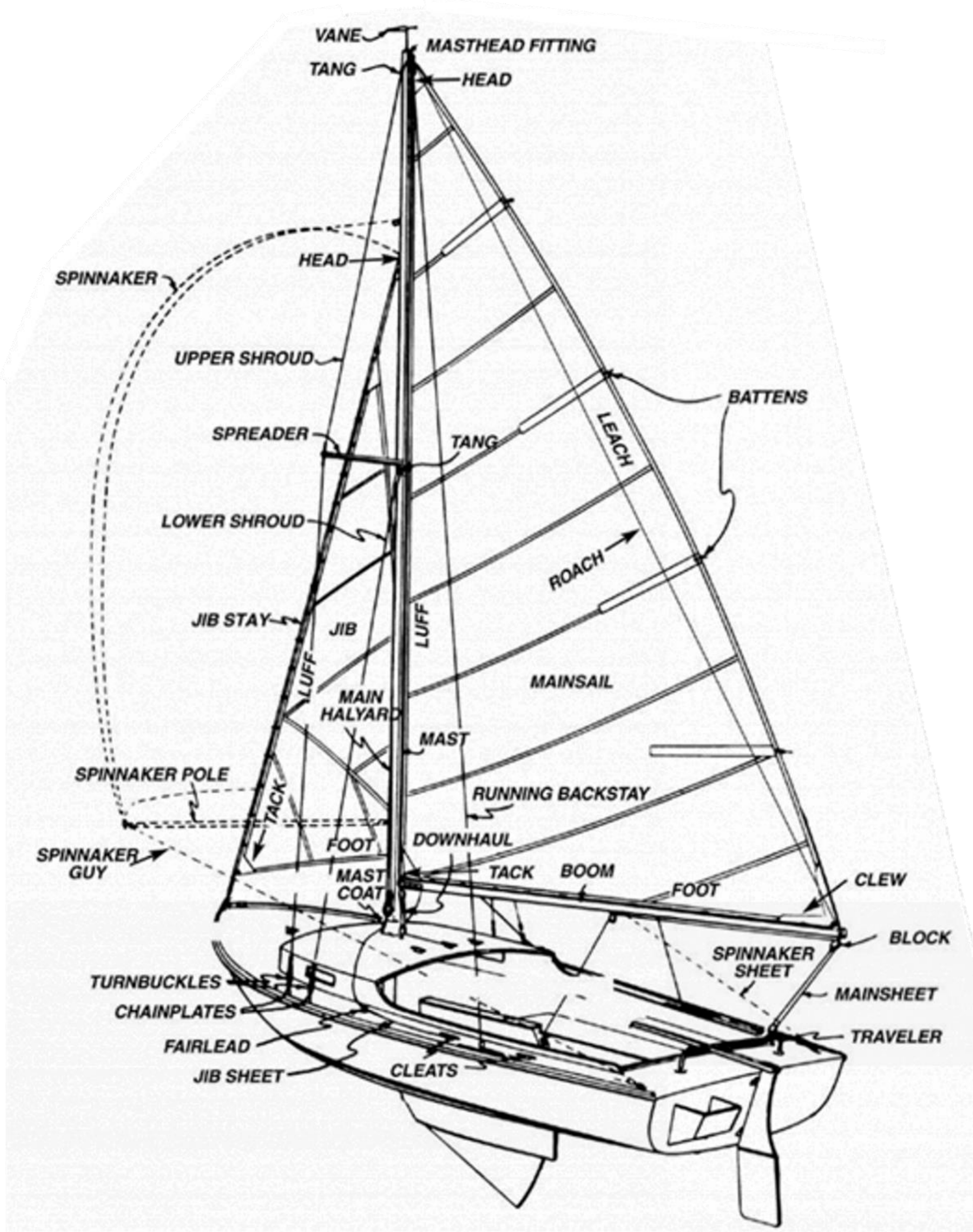


Diagram of a Sloop



Ordinary 7a. *Name the principal parts of the masts, booms, spars, standing and running rigging, and sails on a gaff- or Marconi-rigged sloop, schooner, and ketch or yawl.*

6.2 Types of Sailing Craft

There is a vast range of makes and types of sailing craft, however, rigs fall into a few basic types.

6.2.1 Sunfish

A Sunfish, with its pole mast straight up in the bow, carries a single sail and is easily handled by a single sailor.

6.2.2 Sloop

The sloop is a single-masted vessel with the mast far enough aft to enable it to carry one or more headsails—forestaysail, jib, or spinnaker.

6.2.3 Cutter

A cutter is a small, single-masted vessel that is fore and aft rigged with two or more headsails. The mast is set further back than a sloop. The cutter carries a staysail directly in front of the mast that is set from the forestay.

6.2.4 Yawl

The yawl has two masts. The shorter mast is stepped aft of the rudder post or wheel. The smaller sail is called the mizzen or jigger and aids in sailing balance. In heavy weather this boat can be sailed with a whole or reefed mainsail or do well under jib and jigger. The sail area of the mizzen or jigger is about one-fifth the area of the mainsail.

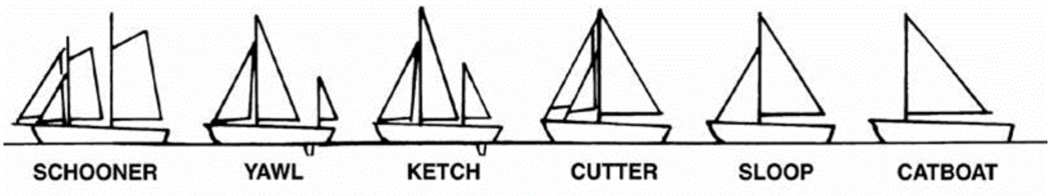
6.2.5 Ketch

The ketch is somewhat like a yawl except that her after mast is somewhat larger and is stepped forward of the rudderpost. This mast is also called the mizzen. The area of the mizzen sail is one-third to three-fifths of the area of the main. It, too, aids in sailing balance. Sail may be shortened to mizzen and a large headsail. Or, as in a yawl, both may be taken off and the mainsail alone, whole, or reefed, may be used.

6.2.6 Schooner

The schooner is a fore-and-aft rigged sailing vessel having two to seven masts with a foremast that is usually smaller than the other masts. Schooners can sail closer to the wind than a square-rigged sailing ship, need a smaller crew, and are very fast.

Types of Sailing Rigs



Apprentice 7b. *Describe the identifying characteristics of a sloop, ketch, yawl, cutter, and schooner.*

6.3 Handling a Small Boat

6.3.1 Preparing to Sail

The following are recommended steps to take when you arrive at your vessel:

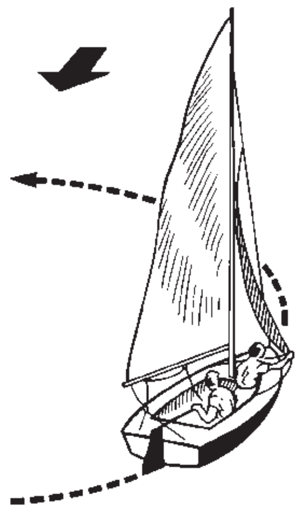
1. If it has a cover, remove it, fold it up, and stow it in a bag or up forward out of the way. Bail or sponge out any water in the bilge. Drop the centerboard and attach the rudder and tiller. Remove the boom crutch and stow it.
2. Check all gear: life jackets or cushions, bailer, oars or a paddle, anchor, lines, compass, sailor's knife, fenders, boathook, etc.
3. Check all halyards to make sure they are not fouled. Check the shrouds to make sure they are set up correctly (barely tight is enough).
4. Remove the sails from the sail bag. Bend on the mainsail first. Attach the main halyard to the sail's headboard. Attach slides to the track on the mast and boom. Secure the tack. Run the foot of the sail out on the boom and secure the clew with an outhaul tautly, but without too strenuous a pull.
5. Insert battens in the pockets in the mainsail. Put a loose furl in the main and secure a line around it to keep it from bellying out or falling into the cockpit while you turn your attention to the jib.
6. Attach the halyard to the head of the sail. Attach clips or hanks to the headstay. Secure the tack and rig the sheet.
7. Most small sloops have a divided jib sheet. Check to see if it should be led aft outside of the shrouds through a fairlead, snatch block, or cam action device both to port and starboard.
8. Now, hoist the mainsail first, making sure the boat is heading into the wind. Set the halyard just hand tight. Belay the halyard on a cleat.
9. Hoist the jib and set the halyard up tight. The leading edge should be perfectly smooth, or it will interfere with the airflow in the sail. Coil and hang all halyards.
10. Get underway.

6.3.2 Getting Underway from a Mooring

1. Look carefully at the direction you plan to travel to be sure you have room to maneuver. Cast the mooring from the deck fitting and draw it aft to give the boat some forward motion while putting the tiller over to get the boat clear.

   Backing the Jib

   Hold the jib against the wind on the starboard side to help push the boat's head off to port.

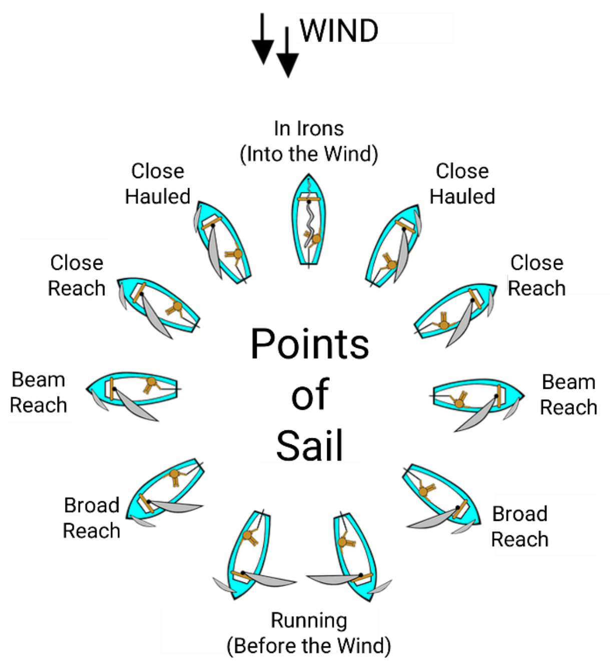


2. As the bow falls off, trim in the main and jib sheets until the sails fill and the boat begins to move with the breeze. It is also possible to cast the mooring off and let the boat drop back. Point the end of the tiller in the direction opposite the one you wish to go, and the stern will swing, letting the bow fall off, or have a crew member backwind the jib on the side opposite your proposed heading. The bow will fall off. Then trim the main and jib.
3. Be sure crew weight is properly distributed. Too much weight aft will cause the boat to squat. Too much weight forward will cause her to plow. Also, and most important, unless the breeze is very light, the crew weight should be on the windward side. In very light air, the crew weight can be amidships or to leeward to give her a slight heel, which helps keep the sail full. Experiment with weight distribution under various conditions to keep the boat sailing on her lines and properly balanced.
4. Make sure main and jib sheets are clear, not fouled on fittings or under your feet.
5. Move the tiller gently a few inches from side to side and note the effect on the boat's heading. You will see as you sit to windward, that pulling the tiller toward you causes the boat to swing off or away from the direction of the wind. Pushing the tiller away from you causes the boat to head up into the direction of the wind.
6. Check the sails. They should have a graceful curve to them caused by the pressure of the wind. This curve acts as an airfoil and the airflow in this curve exerts a forward pressure which causes the boat to move ahead. The correct trim of the sails is essential to their effectiveness and can be learned only by adjusting the trim and noting the effect.

7. Trimming in the jib and main as tight as possible, results in a close-hauled trim. Ease the tiller away from you (toward the sail) and bring the boat's bow more into the wind until the leading edge of the jib begins to lift or flutter. This is called luffing. The mainsail's leading edge may also begin to luff. Ease the tiller toward you until the luffing stops, then keep her steady. If the jib is not luffing but the mainsail is, try slacking the jib sheet a bit to improve the airflow through the slot between jib and mainsail. Too tight a trim on the jib can force the airflow off the jib to backwind the main, causing it to luff. Hold the jib against the wind on the starboard side to help push the boat's head off to port.

6.3.3 Points of Sail

- **In Irons**: The bow faces into the wind.
- **Close Hauled**: The boat is positioned at a 30-45 degree angle to the wind.
- **Close Reach**: The boat is positioned at a 45-90 degree angle to the wind.
- **Beam Reach**: The boat is positioned at a 90 degree angle to the wind.
- **Broad Reach**: The boat is positioned at a 120-160 degree angle to the wind.
- **Running**: The wind is coming from behind the boat.



6.3.3.1 Tacking

Since it is impossible for a sailboat to sail directly into the wind, progress is made to windward in a series of tacks or zigzags, each tack being at about a 45-degree angle to the wind. To change tacks, it is necessary to periodically come about. To do this, the helmsman alerts the crew with the command READY ABOUT.

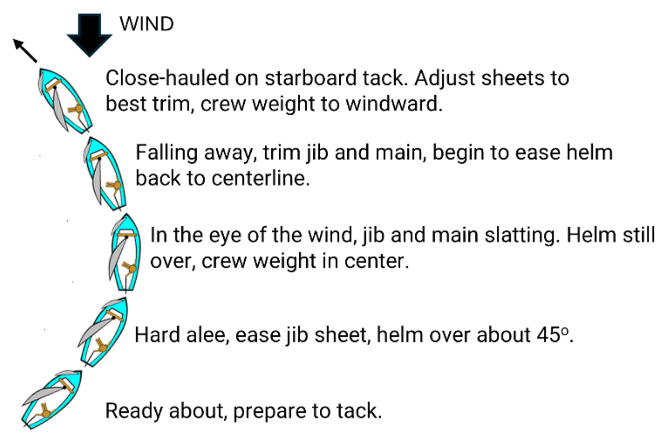
The crew checks the jib sheets to be sure they are clear. At the command of HARD ALEE the helmsman eases the tiller away from themself. They swing it to a point where it is at about 45 degrees to the boat's centerline.

Never slam the tiller hard over as it will cause the rudder to act as a brake or drag, slowing the boat down and possibly putting it in irons as it fails to turn past the eye of the wind.

A crewman eases the jib sheet. As the boat comes up into the wind, they shift their weight amidships, ducking as the boom swings over the boat. As the boat passes the eye of the wind, they trim in the jib sheet as the boat sails on the new tack.

Moving their weight to windward as needed, the helmsman also shifts sides as the boat comes about, keeping the mainsheet in their hand since on the new tack the mainsheet trim should be about as it was on the previous tack.

Coming About



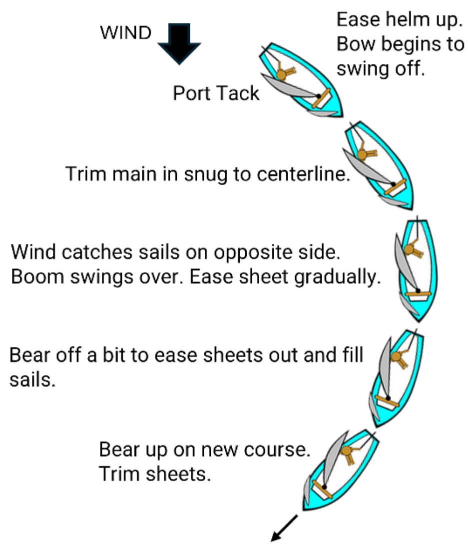
6.3.3.2 Jibing

This maneuver involves changing tacks while sailing off or before the wind. It looks easy, but it can cause real trouble if not carefully controlled. It is the chief reason that boats capsize. It should be practiced in light air until the cause and effect is clearly understood.

As a jibe is planned the command is STAND BY TO JIBE. Check to be sure all sheets are clear. The helmsman eases the helm toward themselves (away from the sail), and the boat's head begins to fall off. At the order JIBE-O, the helmsman trims the main in rapidly, while the jib sheet man moves their weight amidships and holds both jib sheets in their hands. As the boat's stern passes the eye of the wind, the mainsail catches it on the opposite side. Ease the sheet out rapidly. Swing the tiller off (away from the sail a bit to ease the strain). The helmsman shifts their weight to windward and adjusts the main sheet to the new course.

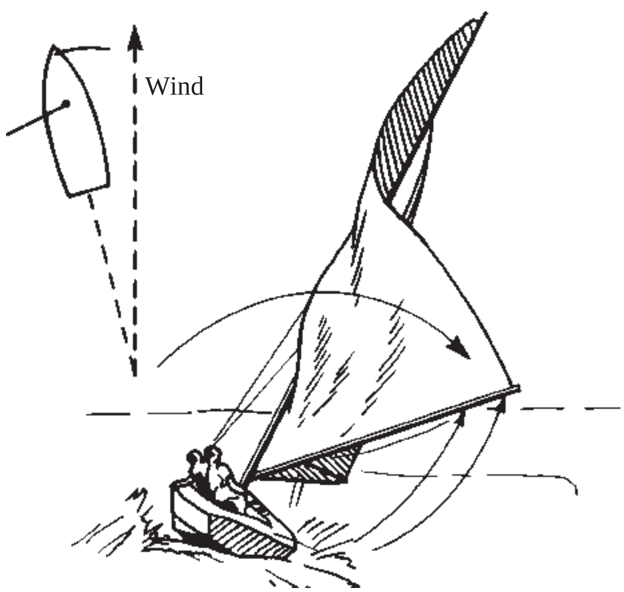
As the jibe is executed, the jib sheet man eases on one sheet and trims on the other to keep the jib from flying out ahead and fouling on the forestay. They then trim the working sheet as needed, adjusting their weight to windward as needed. If it is a direct downwind jibe, the crew weight may be opposite that of the helmsman to keep the boat balanced.

Jibing



Beware the accidental jibe or a jibe in strong winds. The force of an uncontrolled 180-degree sing of the mainsail and boom can tear out deck fittings, rip the sail, snap the rigging or the mast, and almost surely capsize the boat.

Accidental Jibe



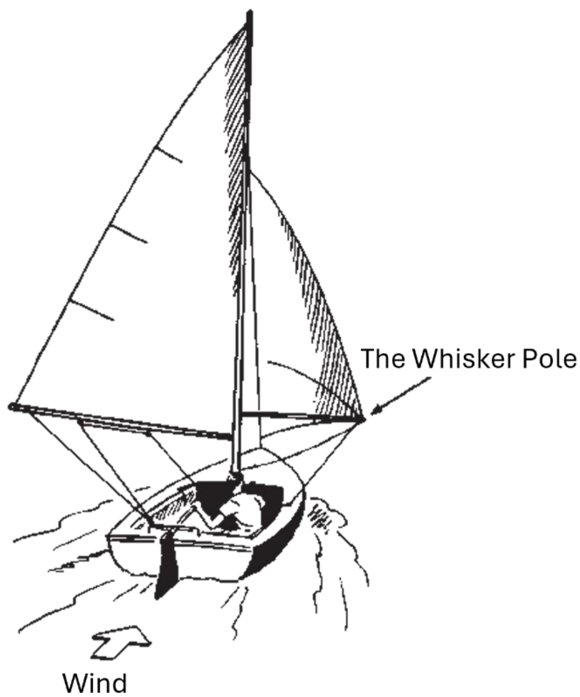
In fresh breezes it is better to come into the wind, trimming sheets to maintain speed until close-hauled, come about in the regular manner, and then bear off on the new course. Avoid what is known as a goosewing jibe. This occurs when the boom rises and the upper part of the sail wraps around one side of the upper portion of the mast while the boom and lower sail remain on the other side. This can happen if you are in a position to jibe and hold on too long. Using a boom vang can prevent this.

6.3.3.3 Running

Sailing on a close haul or broad reach poses no particular problems other than proper trim of the sails and crew weight distribution. The boom should be at, or nearly at, a right angle to the direction of the wind.

When running free (the most difficult aspect of sailing), many factors must be considered. Carelessness at the helm or a sudden wind shift could cause an accidental jibe. Keep a sharp eye on sea and wind conditions and take corrective action to meet any changes.

Wing and Wing



6.3.4 A Few Pointers

Sailboats are designed to sail on their lines. Don't permit them to heel too far over. In an open cockpit boat, putting her rail under may look exciting, but the margin of safety is very slim, and the boat's actual speed is reduced. Keep the rail up by having crew weight as far to windward as possible and well distributed fore and aft.

In fresh to strong breezes, tuck a reef in the mainsail or ease the mainsheet to let the sail luff and spill some of the wind.

In rough water, ease the bow off a bit to meet wave crests. Heading up into them could stop forward progress and make the boat subject to a knockdown. Keep the jib trimmed in flat. It will help maintain forward motion and at the same time backwind the mainsail. The jib sheet can be cleated with a couple of round turns but never the main sheet. Keep it in your hand. Ease it off in heavy gusts; then trim it in enough to keep moving well.

Sooner or later, most small-boat sailors capsize or get knocked down. If it happens to you, don't panic. Stay with the boat.

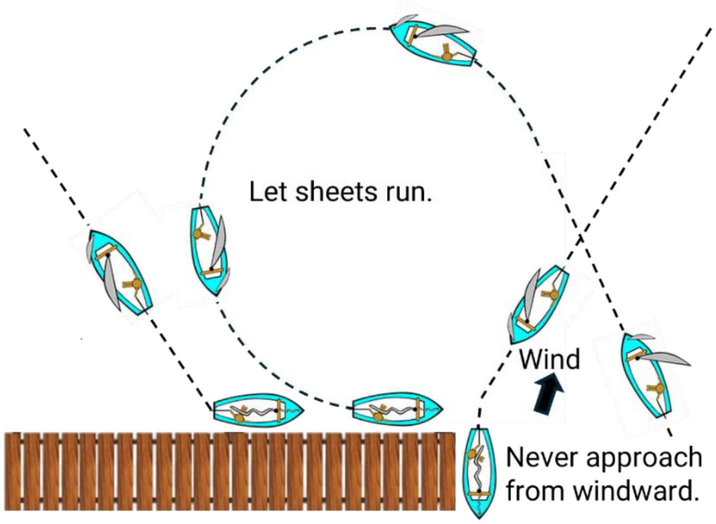
First check to be sure all people are accounted for. Round up and secure all loose gear. Loosen the sails by releasing the halyards. Draw them down into the boat and lash them.

Your boat can be righted by standing on the centerboard and pulling on the coaming. Bail the water out until it's safe to get aboard and finish the job. Otherwise, stay with the boat until help comes.

Righting a Small Boat

6.4 Mooring a Sailboat

Bringing a sailboat to a dock is a ticklish job. With wind in the right direction, of course, the boat is simply luffed, that is pointed directly into the wind so the sails flap idly, and a line is passed to the pier. Under other conditions, however, much practice and a thorough understanding of the art of sailing and the boat itself are necessary.



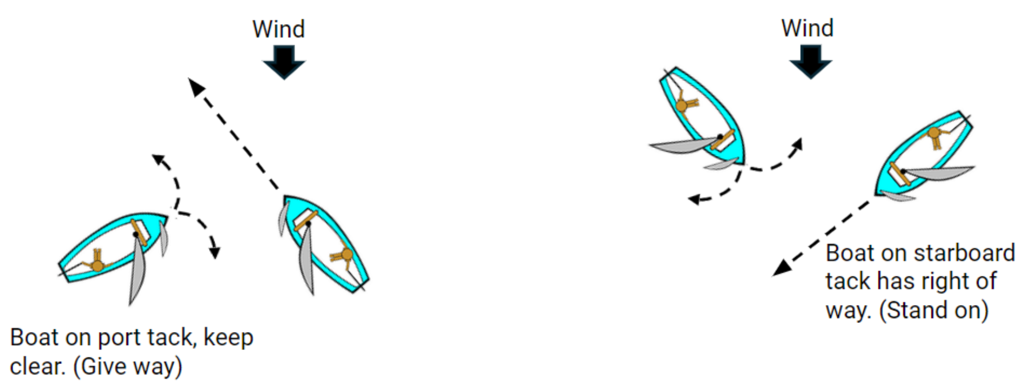
Fenders are hung over the side but are never allowed to rub against the wharf or pier, which is usually tarred and in no time would streak up the topsides. A timber is hung outboard from the fenders.

6.5 The Rights of Others

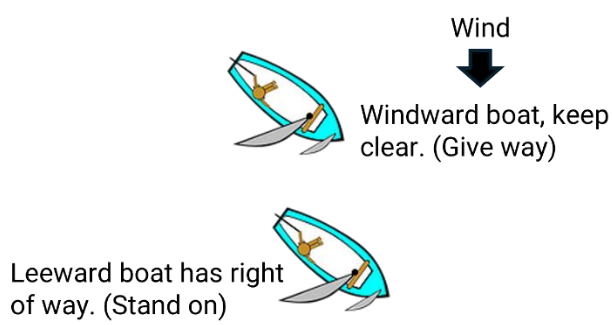
There are two main points involved here for small-boat sailors: (1) rules of the road, which provide legal privileges and burdens, and (2) customs and courtesy, which have their roots in common sense and consideration.

6.5.1 Rules of the Road for Boats Under Sail

6.5.1.1 Boats on Different Tacks



6.5.1.2 Boats on Same Tack



6.5.1.3 Overtaking

Rule: A vessel overtaking any other vessel (sail or power) shall keep clear of the overtaken vessel.

Statement: In obeying and construing these rules, any action taken should be positive, in ample time, and with due regard for good seamanship.

6.5.2 Small Boat Courtesy

There are countless occasions when a sailboat has the right of way, but the rules of judgment and consideration are paramount. In a narrow channel or crowded anchorage, a small, easily maneuvered sailboat must keep clear of a larger one that is more difficult to handle. In fact, the rules of the road require small boats to keep clear of vessels 65 feet and over in crowded anchorages and channels.

Keep well clear of commercial vessels and tugs with unwieldy tows. Always keep entirely clear of boats that are engaged in a race. Size up the other boat's situation and yield when it won't endanger you.

6.6 Sailboat Racing

Sooner or later, you will find sailboat racing an irresistible challenge. This is a broad and complex sport involving rules, tactics, and advanced boat and sail handling. It involves the use of spinnakers, split-second timing, superlative seamanship, courtesy, and good judgment.

Become thoroughly familiar with the racing rules of World Sailing, available from the U.S. Sailing Association. There are about 70 such rules that set conditions and define everyone's rights and obligations.

The most famous sailboat race is the America's Cup. In this contest, another nation challenges the current holder of the America's Cup. The United States successfully defended the cup since the schooner America won the first race in 1851, losing for the first time to Australia in 1983.

7.0 Powerboat Seamanship

Sea Scout Manual

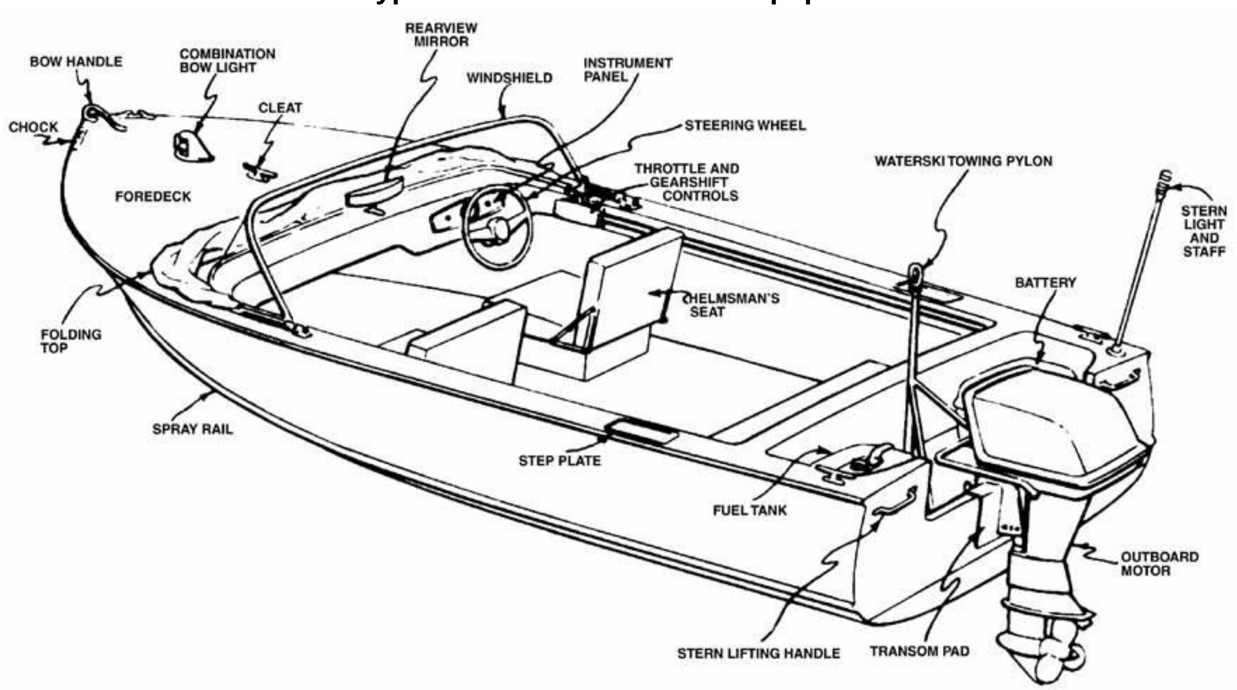
7.0 Powerboat Seamanship

This chapter lays the groundwork for becoming a confident and competent powerboat operator. It introduces powerboat terminology, parts, common types of craft, the practicalities of getting underway, and basic maneuvering. Further seamanship fundamentals can be found in 4.0 General Seamanship.

7.1 Parts of a Powerboat

All boats have a bow (front) and stern (back). Port is the left side, and starboard is the right side. The outer shell is the hull, and the boat's backbone is the keel that runs from bow to stern. Freeboard is the distance from the waterline to the main deck or gunwale, and draft is the depth of a hull from the waterline to the lowest part of the keel.

Typical Outboard Boat and Equipment



7.2 Types of Powerboats

There are many sizes and shapes of powerboats, ranging from the skiff to the supertanker. Each type of powerboat is designed and built for a special purpose or to meet special conditions.

There is an important relationship between where and how the boat is used, the type of power, and the material of which the boat is constructed. Boats can be made of wood, aluminum, plastic, cement, and fiberglass. Power choices include inboard engines, outboard, and inboard-outboard motors—either jet or propeller type.

7.2.1 Small Powerboats

7.2.1.1 Punts and Skiffs

Punts and skiffs are designed for smooth, sheltered water. The dory is designed to meet conditions on the open sea.

Skiff and Dory

7.2.1.2 Pram and Dinghy

The pram and the dinghy are designed to carry people and gear from shore to larger boats in sheltered anchorages. Light in weight, they can be carried on larger boats to serve as tenders, or they can be lashed on top of a car for fishing trips.

Dinghy

7.2.1.3 Surfboats

Pulling and powered surfboats are used for saving lives in heavy seas and surf.

Whaleboat – Pulling Boat

7.2.2 Fishing Boats

- **Bass boats:** Designed for freshwater fishing, with flat decks, low freeboard, and shallow draft for navigating calm waters.
- **Bay boats:** Ideal for near-shore and coastal fishing, offering a low profile and center console layout for open deck space.
- **Offshore boats:** Built for tackling rough seas and targeting larger fish, featuring deep-V hulls and powerful engines.
- **Cruisers:** Can be equipped for fishing with features like rod holders and livewells, offering comfortable accommodations for overnight trips.

7.2.3 Cruising Boats

- **Bowriders:** Open bow design maximizes seating for socializing and enjoying the water, popular for day trips and weekends.
- **Cabin cruisers:** Offer sleeping quarters and amenities for comfortable overnight stays and extended cruises.
- **Cuddy cabins:** Compact cabins provide basic overnighting facilities.
- **Deck boats:** Spacious open decks and versatile layouts cater to swimming, sunbathing, watersports, and family outings.
- **Pontoon boats:** Stable and spacious platforms with modular furniture, perfect for lounging and entertaining large groups.

7.2.4 Performance and Other Powerboats

- **Ski and wakeboard boats:** Equipped with towers and ballast systems to create ideal waves for watersports.
- **Jet boats:** Propeller propulsion system allows shallow-water operation and exciting maneuvers.
- **Personal watercraft (PWCs):** Jet-powered, maneuverable watercraft for individual riders.

- **Trawlers:** Fuel-efficient boats with comfortable living quarters for extended cruising and long-distance travel.
- **Houseboats:** Floating homes with ample living space and amenities for extended stays on the water.

7.3 Getting Underway in a Powerboat

Before getting underway from a mooring or dock or before launching the boat from a trailer, make a careful check of the boat, motor, and equipment. Remove and stow the boat's cover if it has one. Bail or sponge out any water that may have accumulated. Be sure the drain plug is in place.

Check all equipment that is required by law and by common sense.

If it is necessary to install the motor, be sure the boat is secured to the dock or float with lines fore and aft. Check the mounting bracket to be sure the motor will slip easily onto the transom.

While one person can easily swing a light motor aboard (being careful to keep the weight centered in the boat), it will take two people to handle a large, heavy motor.

Make sure the transom bracket is set up tight and that a safety chain is well secured. Connect all controls and fuel lines if these are provided. Check the shaft angle of the motor (it should be vertical to the surface of the water at normal operating speed and trim). If the motor is already in place, release the tilt lock and drop the motor into operating position.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for starting and setting the choke, throttle, and gear positions properly. Run the engine at low speed for a minute or two to warm it up.

It is important to acquire the feel of your boat as quickly as possible. Steering is the same as for a car except—and this is important—the stern swings to bring the boat onto a different heading. Keep this in mind in close quarters or when approaching docks or floats.

Warning: Don't cut the forward speed too rapidly or your wake may catch up with you and pour over the stern.

See how the boat handles in reverse. Practice maneuvering alongside an anchored boat cushion to judge stopping distances, steering, stern swing, etc. Practice allowing for the effects of the wind and current.

America's Boating Channel: Preparing for Departure

7.4 Waterskiing

Waterskiing is a thrilling way to enjoy the water, but to truly enjoy this exhilarating sport, you need to prioritize safety and respect for others on the water. Here are some essential points to remember:

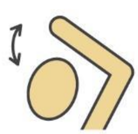
- Never water-ski in an anchorage or channel, or near a swimming beach or anchored boats.
- Pick an open area where you will not interfere with anyone.
- There must always be two people in the towing boat—one to operate the boat, the other to observe the skier and tend the towline. Some states require a rearview mirror.
- Skiers should wear a life jacket even if they are very strong swimmers. A wipeout at high speed can stun and disorient the most experienced skier.
- Learn the standard signals for waterskiing and observe them. Have fun but use good judgment.

Standard Hand Signals for Water-Skiers

- Speed up (thumb up)

- Turn (circling motion above the head followed by pointing in the direction of the turn)

- Back to dock or shore (pat top of head or point with downward swing of the arm)



- Speed okay (an “O” made with the thumb and forefinger)

- Slow down (thumb down)

- All okay (hands clasped over the head)

- Stop (hand raised with fingers outstretched)

- Need to be picked up (hold ski above head)

- Cut motor (finger drawn across the throat in a cutting motion)

8.0 Diving

Sea Scout Manual

8.0 Diving

Scuba diving is an exciting and rewarding activity that allows Sea Scouts to explore the underwater world and experience marine life up close. However, scuba diving also involves some risks and requires proper training and equipment to be done safely. This chapter provides an overview of scuba diving for Sea Scouts, including the necessary skills, equipment, and safety measures needed to become a competent and responsible diver.

8.1 Training and Certification

Before starting scuba diving, it is important to complete a certified scuba diving course that covers the necessary skills and safety procedures. These courses are offered by organizations such as PADI, NAUI, and SDI, and they typically involve a combination of classroom instruction, pool practice, and open water dives. It is important to choose a reputable diving center and instructor that follow recognized safety standards.

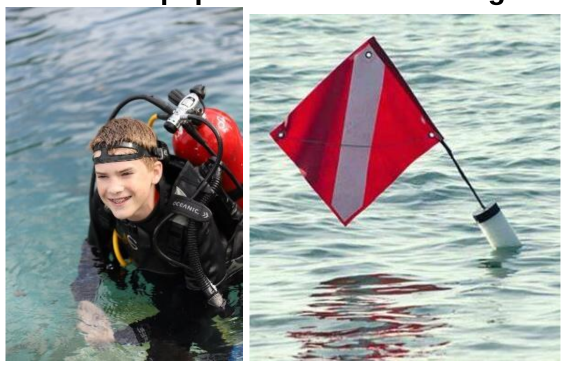
Elective Level 1. *Complete an Open Water Diver course from NAUI, PADI, or any other Recreational Scuba Training Council Certification Agency.*

8.2 Equipment

Scuba diving requires a range of specialized equipment to ensure safety and comfort underwater. This includes a mask, fins, wetsuit or drysuit, buoyancy control device, regulator, and tanks. It is important to choose the right size and fit for each piece of equipment, and to properly maintain and inspect them before each dive.

- **Mask, Fins, and Snorkel:** A mask, fins, and snorkel are essential for any scuba diver. The mask allows you to see clearly underwater, the fins help you swim with ease, and the snorkel allows you to breathe while floating on the surface.
- **Exposure Protection:** Exposure protection is necessary to protect your body from cold water. Two types of exposure protection are commonly used in scuba diving: wetsuits and drysuits. **Wetsuits** are made of neoprene material that traps a thin layer of water between your body and the suit. Your body heat warms this water layer, keeping you warm. **Drysuits** are designed to keep you completely dry while diving. They are typically made of neoprene, rubber, or a combination of both.
- **Buoyancy Compensator Device (BCD):** The BCD is a vest-like device that helps you control your buoyancy underwater. By adding air to the BCD, you can become more buoyant, and by releasing air, you can become less buoyant.
- **Regulator:** The regulator is the device that allows you to breathe from your tank. It consists of two parts: the **primary regulator, which** attaches to the tank and delivers air to the diver, and the **alternate air source,** a backup regulator that is shared between two divers. It is used in case the primary regulator fails.
- **Cylinders:** Cylinders are tanks that contain compressed air. The size of the cylinder depends on how long you plan to dive.
- **Weight Systems:** Weight systems are necessary to counteract the buoyancy of your exposure protection and help you stay underwater. They can be integrated into the BCD or worn separately.
- **Underwater Instruments:** Several underwater instruments are utilized to monitor your dive. A **submersible pressure gauge** shows you how much air is left in your tank. **Dive computers** keep track of your depth, time underwater, and nitrogen levels in your body. A **dive watch** helps you keep track of your dive time. **Depth gauges** show you how deep you are, and a **compass** helps you navigate underwater.
- **Accessories:** There are several accessories that can be useful to have on hand depending on conditions. A **rescue signal**, for instance, can help you to signal for help quickly and easily if needed. A **knife** can be a valuable tool in case you need to cut lines or free yourself from any entanglements. **Dive lights** can be very helpful, particularly when diving in dark or murky water. A **slate** is a waterproof board that can be used to communicate with other divers or to take notes while underwater. An **equipment bag** can be used to conveniently carry and store your gear, while a logbook is essential for keeping track of your dives.
- **Dive Flag:** A dive flag is a visual signal used by scuba divers and snorkelers to indicate that there are people diving in the area. The flag is usually a rectangular piece of brightly colored fabric, often red with a white diagonal stripe running through the center. The flag can be flown on a buoy or a pole, and it must be clearly visible from all directions.

Dive Equipment and a Dive Flag



8.3 Safety Measures

Scuba diving can be a dangerous activity if not done properly, so it is important to follow safety measures to minimize risks. These include:

- Always dive with a buddy and stay within a safe distance of each other.
- Plan the dive beforehand and communicate the plan with your buddy and boat captain.
- Check the weather and sea conditions before diving.
- Avoid diving if you are feeling ill or fatigued.
- Monitor your air supply and ascend before running out of air.
- Conduct a safety stop before surfacing to prevent decompression sickness.
- Report any incidents or near-misses to your instructor or diving center.
- Be aware and respectful of the environment.

8.4 Principles of Diving

8.4.1 The Aquatic Environment

Scuba diving is an adventure that exposes us to a unique environment that can pose challenges to our senses and bodies. The following are some important environmental factors that Sea Scouts should be aware of when scuba diving, and some tips on how to manage them.

- **Vision:** Underwater visibility varies greatly depending on location, depth, and time of day. You should know how to adjust to these conditions, prevent mask fogging, and identify hazards and marine life. Here are some tips for managing vision underwater:
  - Use an anti-fog solution on your mask before each dive.
  - Practice equalizing your mask to prevent water from leaking in.
  - Use a dive light to improve visibility in low-light conditions.
  - Take your time to scan your surroundings and identify potential hazards or interesting marine life.
- **Light:** Water absorbs light differently than air, which can affect the colors and intensity of light underwater. Here are some tips for managing light underwater:
  - Use a dive light to improve visibility and enhance colors.
  - Be aware that light behaves differently underwater and can cause distortions or illusions.
  - Use your light to signal your buddy or attract attention if needed.

- **Sound:** Sound travels differently underwater than in air, and it can be harder to communicate with other divers. Here are some tips for managing sound underwater:
    - Learn and use basic hand signals to communicate with your buddy.
    - Use a dive communication device such as a horn or whistle if needed.
    - Be aware of other sounds in the environment, such as boat motors or marine life.
- **Heat Loss:** Water conducts heat away from your body much faster than air, which can lead to hypothermia if not properly managed. Here are some tips for managing heat loss underwater:
    - Dress appropriately for the water temperature.
    - Use a wetsuit or drysuit to prevent heat loss.
    - Stay active and keep moving to generate body heat.
    - Limit your exposure to cold water and take breaks as needed.
- **Tides:** Tides can impact underwater currents and visibility, so it is important to plan your dives accordingly. Here are some tips for managing tides:
    - Check the tide schedule and plan your dive around the changing tides.
    - Be aware of how tides affect the strength and direction of currents.
    - Use natural landmarks or dive markers to help navigate during changing tides.
- **Currents:** Currents can impact your buoyancy and navigation and can make it harder to control your movements underwater. Here are some tips for managing currents:
    - Be aware of how currents change with tides and underwater topography.
    - Use your dive computer to monitor your depth and ascent rate.
    - Use proper diving techniques to maintain control and minimize exertion.
- **Waves:** Waves can make entering and exiting the water more challenging and can impact your buoyancy and stability underwater. Here are some tips for managing waves:
    - Choose a dive location with manageable wave conditions.
    - Enter and exit the water at an angle to minimize the impact of waves.
    - Use proper diving techniques to maintain buoyancy and control underwater.
- **Surge:** Surge is the movement of water in and out from the shore and can make it harder to maintain buoyancy and control underwater. Here are some tips for managing surge:
    - Choose a dive location with manageable surge conditions.
    - Use your dive computer to monitor your depth and ascent rate.
    - Use proper diving techniques to maintain control and minimize exertion.

As a Sea Scout, it is important to understand and manage the environmental factors that impact scuba diving. By being aware of these factors and using proper techniques and equipment, you can enjoy safe and rewarding dives while preserving the environment for future generations.

8.4.2 The Physics of Diving

Scuba diving involves dealing with different types of pressure and managing air spaces. This section focuses on understanding the pressure, air spaces, and breathing air under pressure to ensure a safe and enjoyable experience.

- **Buoyancy:** As mentioned earlier, buoyancy is crucial when scuba diving. It affects the movement and depth control of the diver, energy conservation, and the protection of the marine environment. As a Sea Scout, understanding buoyancy will help you master diving techniques and create an enjoyable and safe diving experience.
- **Pressure:** Pressure is a significant factor to consider when diving. It can affect your body, equipment, and air supply. When diving, the pressure increases as you go deeper, and it can affect the air spaces in your body. Boyle's Law is a fundamental principle in scuba diving that states that the pressure and volume of a gas are inversely proportional. This means that as the pressure increases, the volume of a gas decreases, and vice versa.
- **Air Spaces:** Air spaces are areas in the body where air is trapped, such as the sinuses, middle ear, and lungs. Pressure changes can affect these air spaces and cause discomfort, pain, or serious medical conditions.
    - **Lung Over-Expansion Problems:** Lung over-expansion is a dangerous condition that can occur when a diver holds their breath during ascent. The expanding air can rupture the lung tissue and enter the bloodstream, leading to air embolism, a life-threatening condition.
    - **Equalization Techniques:** Equalization techniques involve equalizing the pressure in the air spaces in your body to avoid discomfort or injury. Sea Scouts should master different equalization techniques such as the Valsalva maneuver, Frenzel maneuver, or the Toynbee maneuver.
- **Breathing Air Under Pressure:** Breathing air under pressure requires careful management to avoid potential hazards such as decompression sickness, nitrogen narcosis, oxygen toxicity, carbon monoxide poisoning, mixed gases, hyperventilation, and shallow water blackout.
    - **Decompression Sickness:** Decompression sickness can occur when a diver ascends too quickly or stays too long at depth. Symptoms can range from mild joint pain to paralysis and death.

- **Repetitive Dives:** Repetitive dives require careful planning and management to avoid decompression sickness. The dive tables or dive computer can help you calculate the maximum depth and bottom time for your dives.
- **Safety Stops:** A safety stop is a pause at a shallow depth during ascent to allow nitrogen to be released gradually from the body.
- **Emergency Decompression:** Emergency decompression involves stopping at a shallower depth to release excess nitrogen from the body.
- **Omitted Decompression:** Omitted decompression refers to situations where a diver must skip the safety stops or emergency decompression due to equipment failure or an emergency.
- **Nitrogen Narcosis:** Nitrogen narcosis is a condition that affects divers at greater depths due to the effects of nitrogen under pressure. Symptoms can range from a feeling of euphoria to confusion and impaired judgment.
- **Oxygen Toxicity:** Oxygen toxicity is a condition that can occur when a diver breathes air with a high concentration of oxygen for an extended period. Symptoms can range from mild twitching to seizures and death.
- **Carbon Monoxide Poisoning**: Carbon monoxide poisoning can occur when a diver breathes air contaminated with carbon monoxide, which can impair oxygen delivery to the body's tissues.
- **Mixed Gases:** Mixed gases involve using gas mixtures other than air, such as Nitrox, to extend dive times.

8.5 Underwater Navigation

One of the most important skills for a scuba diver is the ability to navigate underwater. Whether you are exploring a coral reef or diving a wreck, you need to be able to find your way back to your starting point. There are two main methods of underwater navigation: using a compass and using natural landmarks.

8.5.1 Compass Navigation

Using a compass is the most accurate way to navigate underwater. When you descend below the surface, it can be difficult to orient yourself without a reference point. By using a compass, you can always know which way is north, even if you can't see other landmarks.

To use a compass, you need to know your heading. Your heading is the direction you are facing when you begin your dive. You can use a compass to follow a specific heading or to swim in a straight line. If you are using a compass to follow a heading, you will need to make sure you are holding it level and away from any metal objects that could interfere with its accuracy.

8.5.2 Natural Navigation

Natural navigation is a less precise way of navigating underwater, but it can be just as effective. Natural navigation involves using visual cues to help you find your way. For example, you might use the position of the sun or the direction of the waves to help you determine your direction.

Natural navigation can be especially useful when diving in areas with strong currents or when visibility is poor. By using natural landmarks, you can navigate your way back to your starting point without relying on a compass.

8.6 Planning and Preparation

Before each dive, it is important to plan and prepare for the conditions and environment you will encounter. This includes checking weather forecasts and sea conditions, familiarizing yourself with the dive site and any potential hazards or landmarks, and packing the necessary equipment and supplies. It is also important to have a contingency plan in case of emergencies, such as a malfunctioning regulator or a lost buddy.

To minimize those risks, it's important to follow safe diving practices and procedures. In this section, we will cover some important safety guidelines and procedures for scuba diving.

8.6.1 Diver Fitness and Overexertion

Before any dive, it's important to assess your physical condition and make sure you're fit to dive. You should never dive if you're not feeling well, have a fever, or have a respiratory infection. Also, if you're taking any medications, you should check with your doctor to ensure that they won't affect your ability to dive.

Diving requires a certain level of physical fitness. You should be able to swim comfortably and have good cardiovascular health. Poor physical shape puts you at risk of overexertion, which can lead to exhaustion, cramps, and other problems. It's important to conserve your energy and avoid overexerting yourself while diving.

Apprentice 4a. *Demonstrate your ability to swim by doing one of the following: Jump feet first into water over your head, swim 75 yards/meters in a strong manner using one or more of the following strokes: sidestroke, breaststroke, trudgen, or crawl; then swim 25 yards/meters using the elementary backstroke. The 100 yards/meters must be swum continuously and include at least one sharp turn. After completing the swim, rest by floating on your back, remaining as motionless as possible.*

8.6.2 Orientation to New or Local Diving Environments

Before you dive in a new or unfamiliar location, it's important to get an orientation to the area. This can include learning about the local currents, tides, and marine life. You should also become familiar with the entry and exit points, as well as any hazards or obstructions in the area.

8.6.3 Boat Diving Procedures

If you're diving from a boat, there are certain procedures you should follow to ensure your safety. You should always listen to the boat captain's instructions and follow them closely. Before you dive, make sure you have all your equipment ready and that you know the proper entry and exit procedures. It's also important to be aware of other divers in the water and avoid any potential collisions.

8.6.4 Buddy System

The buddy system is a critical part of safe scuba diving. You should always dive with a buddy and stay close to each other throughout the dive. This ensures that you can help each other in case of an emergency or problem. Before you start the dive, make sure you and your buddy agree on the dive plan and signals to use underwater.

8.6.5 First Aid

Accidents can happen even when following proper safety procedures. It's important to have a basic knowledge of first aid, especially as it relates to diving injuries. Some common injuries include cuts, scrapes, and bruises, as well as more serious injuries such as decompression sickness and lung over-expansion injuries. It's important to have a first aid kit on hand and know how to use it in case of an emergency.

Able 10b. *Make a scuba dive, navigating three legs underwater using a compass, measuring distance and time, and logging all information Use a chart to plan depth and topography*

8.7 Protecting the Environment

As Sea Scouts, we have a responsibility to protect the marine environment and its inhabitants. This means avoiding touching or disturbing marine life, being mindful of our buoyancy to avoid damaging coral or other delicate structures, and properly disposing of any trash or debris we encounter underwater. It is also important to be aware of local regulations and restrictions on diving in protected areas or marine reserves.

Elective Level 1. *Plan and coordinate a public service event such as underwater trash cleanup, coral reforestation project, or invasive species reduction project.*

9.0 Navigation

Sea Scout Manual

9.0 Navigation

When driving a car, we must know traffic laws and rules of the road. When piloting a vessel, we must know maritime laws and rules of the nautical road. *Navigation Rules, International and Inland* is a system of laws to help you stay clear of other vessels.

There are two sets of rules, international and inland. With a few exceptions, international and inland rules are identical. International rules are in effect on the ocean beyond a line of demarcation usually at the harbor entrance. Inland rules apply to harbors, rivers, and inland lakes. A few additional rules are in effect for the Great Lakes and western rivers, and mariners cruising these waters should note them.

The “rules of the road” are found in the book *Navigation Rules, International and Inland* (COMDTPUB P16672.2 [series]) published by the U.S. Coast Guard. The entire *Navigation Rules, International and Inland* can be accessed and downloaded from the U.S. Coast Guard’s Navigation Center website.

Amalgamated International & U.S. Inland Navigation Rules

For updates regarding your local waters, go to the U.S. Coast Guard’s Navigation Center website to review Local Notices to Mariners. A “Notice to Mariners” advises mariners of important matters to navigational safety such as changes in channels or aids to navigation.

USCG Navigation Center: Local Notices to Mariners

Every vessel is governed by the rules applying to the waters it is on. It is very important that the Skipper and crew be familiar with all pertinent boating laws.

Courtesy and common sense dictate that small boats stay clear of larger vessels. However, if there is any risk of collision whatsoever, the rules clearly apply to large and small vessels alike. Only strict observance of all rules by all vessels can ensure the minimum danger. Every Sea Scout ship should have a copy of *the Navigation Rules* on board.

Ordinary 9a. *Explain the purpose of Navigation Rules, International and Inland.*

9.1 Rules of the Road

9.1.1 Rule 2 - Responsibility

"Nothing in these rules shall exonerate any vessel, or the owner, master, or crew thereof, from the consequences of any neglect to comply with these Rules or of the neglect of any precaution which may be required by the ordinary practice of seamen, or by the special circumstances of the case."

"In construing and obeying these Rules, due regard shall be had to all dangers of navigation and collision and to any special circumstances, including the limitations of the vessels involved, which may make a departure from these rules necessary to avoid immediate danger."

A rule may be departed from—that is, it may be disobeyed—only when circumstances of the case make it necessary to avoid immediate danger. For example, when obeying the rule would run your vessel aground or into collision with a third vessel, or when the vessel that is supposed to keep out of the way cannot do their duty and collision is imminent, the responsibility rule allows you to take whatever action is necessary. Such a situation might be caused by a disabled steering gear or sudden loss of power.

Ordinary 9b. *Know the general "Rule of Responsibility."*

9.1.2 Rule 3 - General Definitions

When the rules refer to a **power-driven vessel**, they mean any vessel propelled by machinery, including steam, electricity, gasoline, and diesel, whether the vessel is also under sail or not. A **sailing vessel** is any vessel proceeding under sail only, though it may be equipped with power. A vessel is **underway** when it is not at anchor, or made fast to the shore, or aground. It is not necessary to be moving through the water to be underway.

A **vessel engaged in fishing** means that nets, lines, trawls, or other fishing apparatus are in use and restricting the vessel's maneuverability. Seaplanes are aircraft designed to maneuver on water. A vessel **not under command** is a vessel that is unable to maneuver by the rules because of some exceptional circumstance, and a **vessel restricted in their ability to maneuver** is a vessel whose work restricts their ability to move as required by the rules. A dredge is an example of a vessel restricted in their ability to maneuver. A **vessel constrained by her draft** is a power-driven vessel that cannot deviate from the course it is following because of their draft in relation to available depth and width of the navigable water.

Dangerous situations requiring quick decisions are often as numerous for the person at the helm of a boat as for the person behind the wheel of a vehicle but are usually far more complex. Therefore, the person at the helm must know the rules well to be able to analyze a situation quickly and apply the applicable rule correctly. Not every situation can be discussed here, but the following describes the rudiments.

Able 9a. *Demonstrate a working knowledge of Navigation Rules, International and Inland.*

9.1.3 Rule 5 - Lookout

"Every vessel shall at all times maintain a proper lookout by sight and hearing as well as by all available means appropriate in the prevailing circumstances and conditions so as to make a full appraisal of the situation and of the risk of collision."

9.1.4 Rule 6 - Safe Speed

Every vessel shall at all times proceed at a safe speed so it can take proper and effective action to avoid collision and be stopped within a distance appropriate to prevailing circumstances and conditions. In determining a safe speed, some of the factors that should be considered are:

- The state of visibility
- The amount of other vessel traffic in the area
- The maneuverability of your vessel
- At night, the presence of background lighting
- The state of the wind, sea, current, and proximity of navigational hazards
- The draft of your vessel in relation to the available depth of water

9.1.5 Rule 7 - Risk of Collision

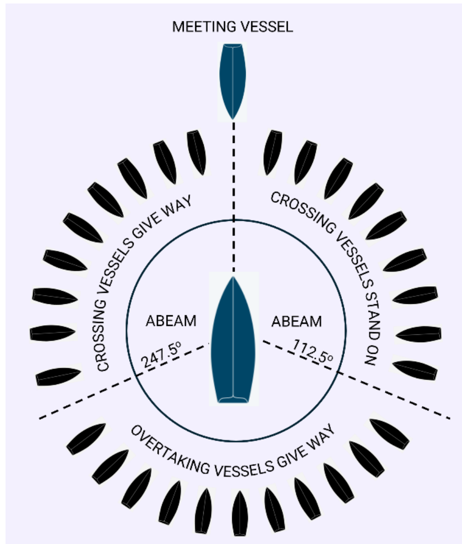
Every vessel shall use all available means appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions to determine if the risk of collision exists, including the use of radar equipment if installed and operational. If there is any doubt, such a risk shall be deemed to exist. Assumptions shall not be made based on scanty information, especially scanty radar information.

In determining if risk of collision exists, the following considerations shall be among those considered:

- Such a risk shall be deemed to exist if the compass bearing of an approaching vessel does not appreciably change; and
- Such a risk may sometimes exist even when an appreciable bearing change is evident, particularly when approaching a very large vessel, a tow, or when approaching a vessel at close range.

9.1.5.1 Situations for Proper Maneuvering

There are three basic situations that can lead to collision afloat—and an inevitable lawsuit ashore: the meeting situation, the crossing situation, and the overtaking situation. All are shown in the figure below.



None of the situations exist until two or more vessels are in sight or sound of each other. Consider how quickly a situation might arise with another vessel suddenly appearing out of a fog bank or around a river bend.

Normally, all the situations can be observed by simply taking a series of bearings on the other vessel or, at night, their lights. If the bearings do not change substantially from sight to sight, the two vessels are on a collision course. The give-way vessel (the one not having the right of way) is required to change course or speed or both.

Use common sense. It is better to avoid a situation that might lead to a collision than to try to remember the exact rule to get you out of trouble. If you are the Skipper of the vessel in the center of the diagram, you must keep out of the way of any vessel approaching you in the arc from dead ahead of you to 22.5 degrees abaft your starboard beam. All the other vessels in the diagram—except the meeting vessel—must keep clear of you. Both you and the meeting vessel must alter course as necessary to pass clear of each other.

Ordinary 9c. *Define stand-on and give-way vessels for the following situations: meeting, crossing, and overtaking for both power and sailing vessels.*

The following rules apply to sailing vessels except vessels racing. These rules do apply to racing vessels encountering others not in the race. Study them carefully.

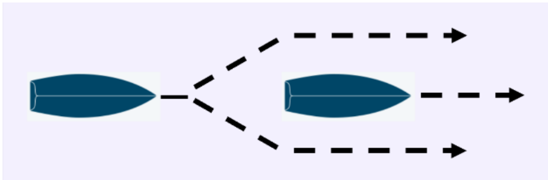
9.1.6 Rule 12 - Conduct of Vessels in Sight of One Another, Sailing Vessels

1. When two sailing vessels are approaching one another and there is risk of collision, one of them shall keep out of the way of the other as follows:
    a. When each has the wind on a different side, the vessel that has the wind on the port side shall keep out of the way of the other.
    b. When both have the wind on the same side, the vessel that is to windward shall keep out of the way of the vessel which is to leeward; and
    c. If a vessel with the wind on the port side sees a vessel to windward and cannot determine with certainty whether the other vessel has the wind on the port or on the starboard side, she shall keep out of the way of the other.
2. For the purpose of this rule, the windward side shall be deemed to be the side opposite to that on which the mainsail is carried or, in the case of a square-rigged vessel, the side opposite to that on which the largest fore-and-aft sail is carried.

9.1.7 Rule 13—Overtaking

The overtaking vessel is required to keep out of the way of the vessel being overtaken. Power-driven vessels should keep to the starboard side of narrow channels. A vessel is overtaking another when coming up from a direction more than 22.5 degrees abaft her beam; and if a vessel is in any doubt as to whether she is overtaking another, she should assume this is the case and behave accordingly.

Overtaking



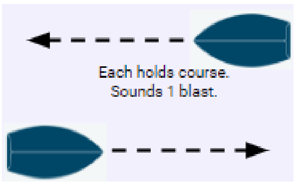
Overtaking vessel stays clear

9.1.8 Rule 14 - Head-On Situation

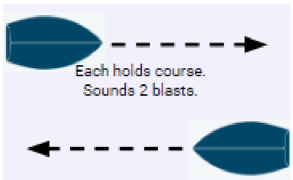
Neither vessel may turn to port. If they are already so far left of one another that they may pass safely without changing course, then they may do so. But if any change of course is necessary to avoid the risk of collision, the change must be to starboard.

Meeting.

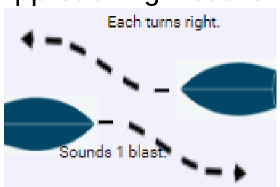
Port to Port



Starboard to Starboard



Approaching Head On



9.1.9 Rule 15 - Crossing Situation

The vessel that has the other on her starboard is required to keep out of the way by altering course to starboard, slowing, stopping, or reversing. She may not turn to port. The appropriate action will cause each vessel to pass the other port side to port side. Hence the one short blast.

[America's Boating Channel: Collision Avoidance]

9.1.10 Rule 18 - Responsibility Between Vessels

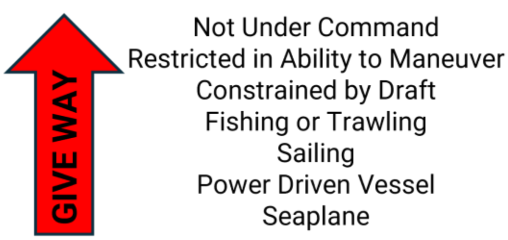
Except where (Navigation) Rules 9, 10, and 13 otherwise require:

a) A power-driven vessel underway shall keep out of the way of:
- A vessel not under command
- A vessel restricted in her ability to maneuver

b) A sailing vessel underway shall keep out of the way of:
- A vessel not under command
- A vessel restricted in her ability to maneuver
- A vessel engaged in fishing

c) A vessel engaged in fishing when underway shall, so far as possible, keep out of the way of:
- A vessel not under command
- A vessel restricted in her ability to maneuver

d) A seaplane on the water shall, in general, keep clear of all vessels and avoid impeding their navigation. In circumstances, however, where risk of collision exists, she shall comply with the rules of this part.



Ordinary 9d. *Explain "Responsibility Between Vessels" (vessel priority).*

9.2 Lights and Shapes

By day, a vessel's course or a change in her course is usually obvious to the lookout. By night or in limited visibility, however, little can be determined about the direction of another vessel unless that vessel is lighted as required by the rules. Navigation lights have required color, arc, range, and location.

Navigation lights provide information about the vessel's size, activity, and direction of travel. If you know the characteristics of navigation lights, you can take the appropriate course of action when approaching other vessels. For example, if you see a solid green light moving on the water, you are seeing the starboard side of a sailboat. A red light means its port side. If you see them both, the sailboat is dead ahead. A white light higher than red means you are looking at the port side of a powerboat, and white higher than green is starboard. If you see all three, the boat is dead ahead. Sailboats and powerboats are both required to show white astern, so if you are approaching a white light that is moving on the water, you are overtaking a vessel.

An anchored vessel must display an all-round light that is visible for 2 miles in any direction. No other navigation lights should be on while a vessel is at anchor. Vessels under 7 meters do not need to display an anchor light, but it is a good idea to do so. Vessels are required to show the proper navigation lights in all weather conditions from sunset to sunrise, in limited visibility, and other times considered necessary. No other visible lights that could be mistaken for navigation lights or lights that impair visibility or interfere with keeping a proper lookout can be displayed.

Ordinary 9e. *Explain the navigation lights required for power driven and sailing vessels underway. Explain what is required for a vessel under oars. Describe the lighting requirements for paddlecraft. Explain why carrying a sound-producing device like a whistle is important when operating a paddlecraft.*

9.2.1 Rule 21 - Definitions

a) **Masthead light:** A white light placed over the fore and aft centerline of a vessel showing an unbroken light over an arc of the horizon of 225 degrees and so fixed as to show the light from right ahead to 22.5 degrees abaft the beam on either side of the vessel, except on a vessel less than 12 meters in length.

b) **Side lights:** each showing an unbroken light over an arc of the horizon of 112.5 degrees and so fixed as to show the light from right ahead to 22.5 degrees abaft the beam on its respective side. In a vessel of less than 20 meters in length, the side lights may be combined in one lantern carried on the fore and aft centerline of the vessel.

c) **Stern light:** A white light placed as nearly as practicable at the stern showing an unbroken light over an arc of the horizon of 135 degrees and so fixed as to show the light 67.5 degrees from right aft on each side of the vessel.

d) **All-round light:** A light showing an unbroken light over an arc of the horizon of 360 degrees.

e) **Flashing light:** A light flashing at regular intervals at a frequency of 120 flashes or more per minute.

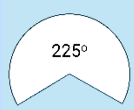
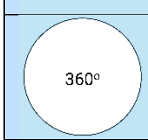
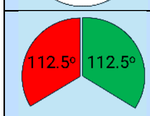
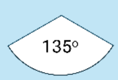
9.2.2 Rule 22 - Visibility of Lights

Vessels are required to display the appropriate lights at night or during times of reduced visibility. These lights are used to prevent collisions and are an essential tool in keeping you and your vessel safe. Navigation lights allow us to see other nearby vessels and allow other vessels to see us.

Navigation lights also provide information about the size, activity, and direction of travel of vessels. By understanding the characteristics of navigation lights, you can determine an appropriate course of action as you approach another vessel.

Required Visible Range of Lights

Vessels less than 12 Meters and Vessels 12 Meters or More but Less than 20 Meters

	Location	**Visible Range in Miles for vessels Less than 12 Meters**	**Visible Range in Miles for vessels 12 Meters to 20 Meters**	**Arc in Degrees**
	Masthead Light	2	3	225
	All-round Light	2	2	360
	Side Lights	1	2	112.5
	Stern Light	2	2	135

9.2.3 Rule 23 - Power-Driven Vessels Underway

Power vessels underway will exhibit a masthead light forward, side lights, and a stern light. Vessels less than 12 meters in length may exhibit an all-round white light and side light. (Powerboats on the Great Lakes may carry an all-round white light instead of a second masthead light and stern light combination.)

Rule 25 - Sailing Vessels Underway and Vessels Under Oars

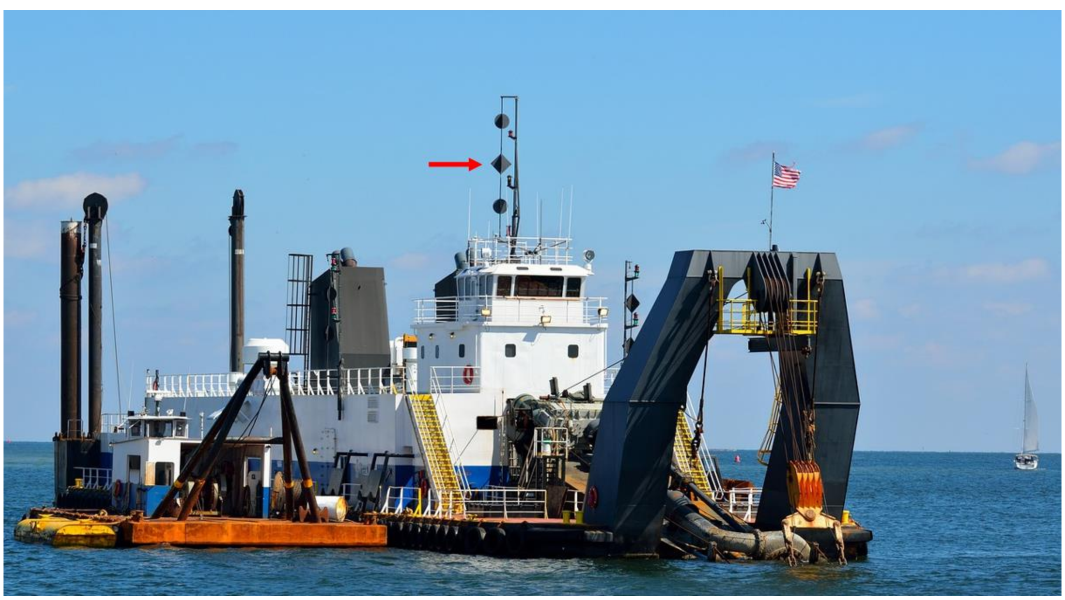
a) A sailing vessel underway shall exhibit side lights and a stern light.
b) A sailing vessel less than 20 meters in length may combine side lights and stern light in one lantern carried at or near the top of the mast where it can be seen.
c) A sailing vessel underway may, in addition to side lights and stern light, exhibit at or near the top of the mast, where they can best be seen, two all- round lights in a vertical line, the upper being red and the lower green.

A sailing vessel of less than 7 meters in length or a vessel under oars shall, if practical, exhibit the lights prescribed in paragraph a) or b) of this rule, but if she does not, she shall have ready at hand an electric torch or lighted lantern showing a white light which shall be exhibited in sufficient time to prevent collision.

See the table for lights conforming to Rules 23–31.

Able 9b. *Explain vessel lights and day shapes for the following: towing (astern, alongside, pushing ahead, and cannot deviate), fishing, trawling, restricted maneuverability, not under command, underwater operations, constrained by draft, dredging, aground, and sailing vessels under power.*

Able 9c. *Describe special lights and day shapes deployed on the following vessels—not under command, restricted by ability to maneuver, constrained by draft, fishing (trawling), and sailing vessels under power.*

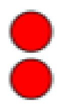
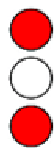
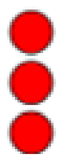
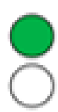
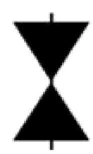
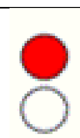
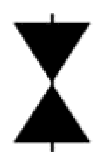
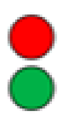
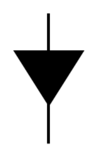


9.2.5 Day Shapes

Large vessels display certain lights at night and “day shapes” during daylight hours to indicate they are involved in special activities or situations. For a more complete list, consult U.S. Coast Guard publications.

Some important lights and day shapes are:

Day Shapes for Large Vessels

SITUATION	NIGHT		DAY	
Ship **NOT UNDER COMMAND.** Due to unusual circumstances the ship is out of control.		Two 360-degree red lights displayed in a vertical line. *		Two black balls displayed in a vertical line.
Ship **RESTRICTED IN ABILITY TO MANEUVER.** Ship cannot maneuver due to the type of work being performed aboard such as diver down or dredging.		Three 360-degree red over white over red lights displayed in a vertical line. *		Black ball over black diamond over black ball displayed in a vertical line.
Vessel **CONSTRAINED BY DRAFT.** Vessel cannot maneuver out of the channel due to draft.		Three 360-degree red lights displayed in a vertical line. *		Black cylinder in rigging.
NET FISHING AND TRAWLING Boats fishing with nets and trawling (dragging nets).		360-degree green light over white light.		Two black cones apex to apex.
FISHING Boat fishing other than trawling.		360-degree red light over white light.		Two black cones apex to apex; if less than 20 meters may display basket in rigging.
SAILING VESSELS UNDER POWER.		Light prescribed for power- driven vessel.		Conical shape in rigging with apex pointing down.
* If the vessel is not anchored or aground, it shall also show side lights and a stern light.				

9.2.6 Rule 34 - Maneuvering and Warning Signals—Inland Rules

When power-driven vessels are in sight of one another and meeting or crossing at a distance within half a mile of each other, each vessel underway, when maneuvering, shall indicate that maneuver by the following signals on her whistle:

- One short blast: “I intend to leave you on my port side.”
- Two short blasts: “I intend to leave you on my starboard side.”
- Three short blasts: “I am operating astern propulsion.”
- Upon hearing the one- or two-blast signal of the other vessel, if in agreement, you shall respond with the same signal and take the necessary steps to achieve a safe passing. If, however, for any cause, either vessel fails to understand the intentions of the other, or doubts the safety of a proposed maneuver, she shall immediately sound the danger signal of at least five short and rapid blasts on the whistle and each vessel shall take appropriate precautionary action until a safe passing agreement is made. Whistle signals can be supplemented with light signals.

When vessels are in sight of one another, a power-driven vessel intending to overtake should indicate her intention by the following signals:

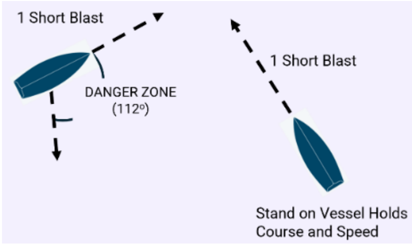
- One short blast: “I intend to overtake you on your starboard side.”
- Two short blasts: “I intend to overtake you on your port side.”

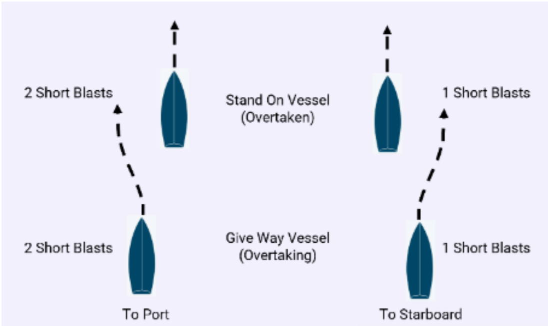
Vessels leaving a dock or berth, or nearing a river bend or similar blind spot, shall sound one prolonged blast. The signal should be answered with a prolonged blast by any approaching vessel that may be within hearing.

Maneuvering Signals

(Refer to the graphics for [meeting port to port, starboard to starboard, and head on](#).)

Crossing and Overtaking





9.2.7 Rule 35 - Sound Signals in Restricted Visibility

All vessels in or near an area of restricted visibility, whether by day or by night, must sound fog signals at intervals of not more than two minutes. They may sound no other signal. Whistle signals for passing may not be sounded until vessels are within sight of each other. A prolonged blast is four to six seconds in duration. A short blast is about one second.

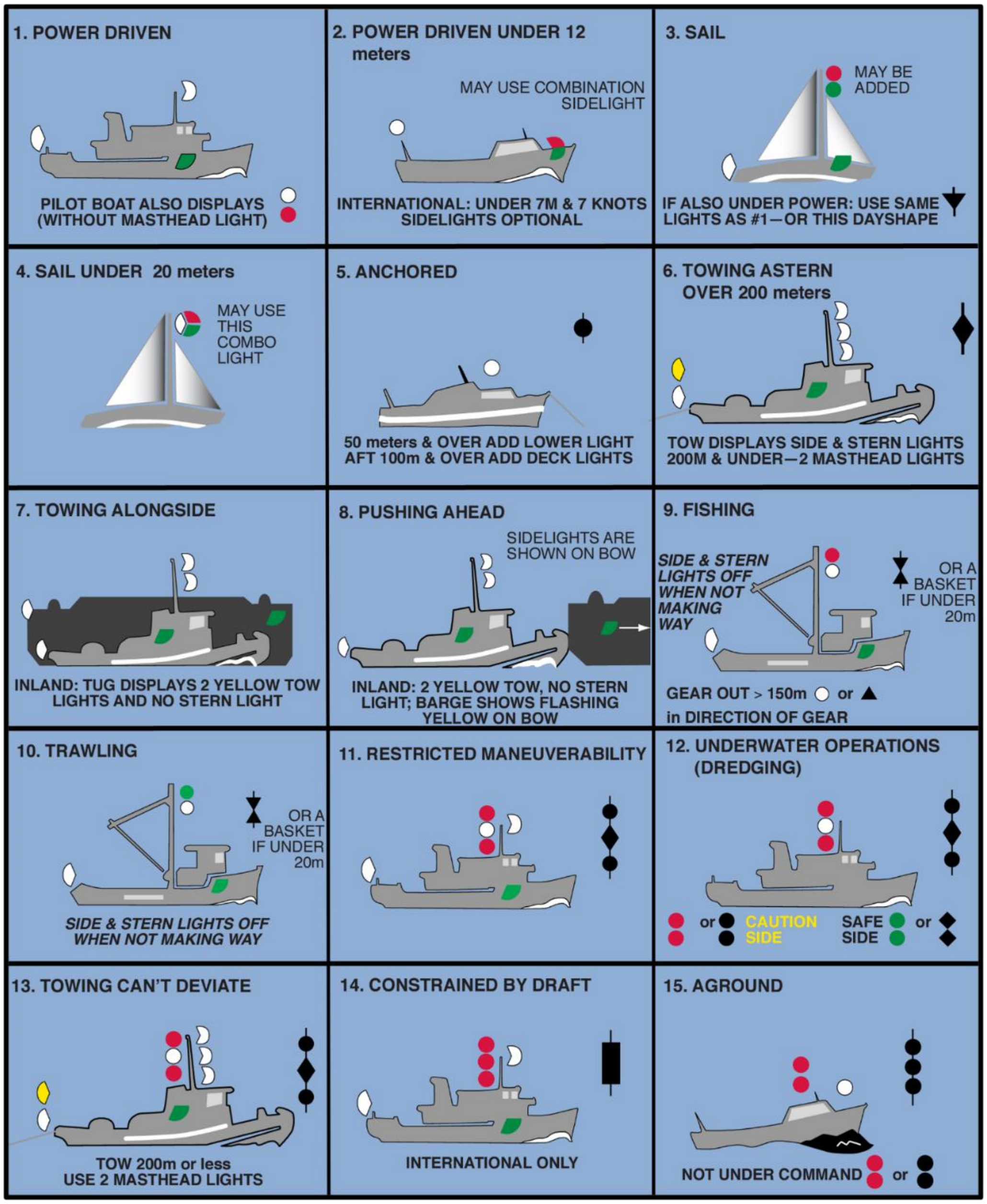
The fog signals are as follows:

- Power-driven vessels making way, one prolonged blast
- Power-driven vessels underway but stopped and making no way, two prolonged blasts with an interval of about two seconds between them
- A vessel not under command; a vessel restricted in their ability to maneuver, whether underway or at anchor; a sailing vessel; a vessel engaged in fishing, whether underway or at anchor; and a vessel engaged in towing or pushing another vessel, one prolonged blast followed by two short blasts
- A vessel towed (if manned), one prolonged blast followed by three short blasts. When practical, this signal shall be made immediately after the signal made by the towing vessel.
- A vessel at anchor, bell rung rapidly for five seconds
- A vessel aground, bell rung rapidly for five seconds with three separate and distinct strokes on the bell immediately before and after the rapid ringing of the bell

Ordinary 9f. *Describe the sound signals for maneuvering, warning, and restricted visibility.*

Lights Conforming to Rules 23–31

Navigation Rules, International and Inland



9.3 Aids to Navigation

Along the length of the coasts and navigable waters of the United States and its possessions, there are many aids to navigation, which are all those man-made objects used by mariners to determine position or a safe course. These aids range from steel, concrete, or wood structures such as lighthouses, buoys, and beacons, to electronic navigation aids such as radio beacons and GPS. Aids to navigation include all the visible, audible, and electronic symbols that are established by government and private authorities for piloting purposes.

The U.S. Coast Guard has responsibility for designing, establishing, and maintaining more than 40,000 navigational aids in the waters of the United States. The Coast Guard also monitors thousands of state and privately maintained aids to navigation. Today our nation has the biggest and best aids-to-navigation system in the world. In comparison, Great Britain, a seafaring nation, maintains fewer than 550 aids to navigation.

This system, evolved through the years, has many variations. They are as follows:

- U.S. Navigation System
- Western River System
- Uniform State Waterway Marking System
- Private Aids to Navigation

Aids to navigation encompass a wide range of floating and fixed objects. They fall into two basic categories:

1. Beacons—structures permanently fixed to the land or seabed. Most beacons have lateral or non-lateral aids attached to them. Lighted beacons are called "lights," unlighted beacons are "daybeacons."
2. Buoys—floating objects anchored to the bottom. They have distinctive shapes and colors that communicate their purpose and how the mariner should navigate around them.

Note: Buoys and beacons may have lights or sound-making devices attached. Both buoys and beacons may be referred to as "marks."

America's Boating Channel: Introducing ATONS

9.3.1 Light List

A complete list of aids to navigation is found in the seven-volume *Light List* published yearly by the U.S. Coast Guard. Volume I covers the Atlantic Coast from the St. Croix River in Maine to the Shrewsbury River, New Jersey. Volume II continues from the Shrewsbury River along the Atlantic Coast to Little River, South Carolina. Volume III continues from Little River around Florida to the Econfina River on Florida's Gulf Coast. Volume III also includes Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands. Volume IV covers the Gulf Coast beginning at the Econfina River and going to the Rio Grande River in Texas. Volume V covers the Mississippi River System, and Volume VI includes the Pacific coasts and outlying Pacific islands. Volume VII covers the Great Lakes. The *Light List* and all charts should be corrected regularly from "Notice to Mariners" as changes in aids to navigation are occasionally made.

Able 9d. *Understand the system of aids to navigation employed in your area. Include buoys, lights, and daymarks and their significance and corresponding chart symbols.*

9.3.2 Lighthouses

Lighthouses are important aids to seafarers and have been in use for centuries. Lighthouses differ markedly in their external characteristics. Each structure is built to meet the specific demands of its location. Most have recognizable profiles. Each is colored to be easily identified by day, and each has its own characteristic light sequence for identification at night. By using all the characteristics of a given lighthouse—light, shape, materials, and color—a mariner can quickly identify it by day or night and plot bearings from it.

The distance a light can be seen at sea in clear weather depends upon three things: the height of the light itself above sea level (which is noted on the chart), the height of the observer above the sea, and the candlepower of the light. Because of the curvature of the Earth's surface, the higher a light is located above sea level, the farther it can be seen.

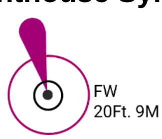
Many lighthouses are equipped with signals that serve as warnings during foggy weather or other periods of poor visibility. Regularly timed blasts of a horn, siren, or other signal identify most lighthouses. As a further navigational aid, marine radio beacons have been installed at strategically located lighthouses.

9.3.2.1 Symbols for Lighthouses

The basic symbol for a lighthouse is a circle with an overprinted magenta disc and an "exclamation mark." Major lights are named and described while minor lights are described only. The characteristics of the light are shown, and the height of the focal plane of the lantern above mean high water is also shown. The nominal range is shown (approximately) in miles, and other equipment on the station is listed.

If the lighthouse has a radio beacon, the magenta disc is surrounded by a magenta circle and the radio frequency and identifying signal are described, and if the radio beacon shares a frequency with other stations, the sequence within the group would be indicated by a Roman numeral. Certain lights are not visible through the 360-degree arc of the horizon, because of interference by land masses. When a light is observed through a portion of its arc, the symbol for the light on the chart is shown with an obscured sector. Some lights contain a red sector to warn of special dangers within the arc of visibility of the sector. When a light contains such a sector, it is shown on the chart.

Lighthouse Symbol



9.3.2.2 Visibility of Lights

The distances at which lights may be seen are shown on charts and in the light list as the nominal range. This is the distance the light can be seen under normal conditions for the area. Haze and fog can reduce this range, and unusually clear conditions can increase it. The light's luminous range is the distance it can be seen under current conditions without considering the curvature of the Earth. The geographic range is the distance a light can be seen under perfect viewing conditions, limited only by the Earth's curvature, and assuming that the observer's eye is at sea level.

9.3.3 Daybeacons

Daybeacons are another type of navigational aid. These structures are built of wood, metal, or masonry. Generally, they are painted to contrast with their surroundings. When a daybeacon is used to mark the side of a channel, the lateral system of coloring and numbering is used. Daybeacons often have reflectors for spotting at night by searchlight.

9.3.4 Buoys

The buoy system may appear confusing with the many odd shapes, varied colors, odd sounds, and complicated lights, but there is a system. It is called the lateral system and is very cleverly devised to operate with a high degree of efficiency. Buoys are located to warn of dangers and obstructions and to mark channels. The lateral system determines the distinguishing shape, color, number, and light characteristics of buoys to indicate the side on which each should be passed by vessels proceeding from seaward toward the head of navigation.

Not all channels lead directly from seaward, so in certain places arbitrary rules have been established to make the lateral system consistent. Thus, a vessel is considered to be proceeding from seaward when proceeding in a northerly and westerly direction along the coast of the Gulf of Mexico, a southerly direction along the Atlantic coast, and a northerly direction along the Pacific coast.

On the Great Lakes, the arbitrary direction from seaward is northerly and westerly. On the Mississippi and Ohio rivers and their tributaries, from seaward is upstream toward the river sources. Aids on the Mississippi River and its tributaries are numbered according to mileage distances upstream from reference points.

[USCG Boating Safety App]

9.3.4.1 Port-Side Odd-Numbered Aids

Port-side numbered aids are green in color, odd-numbered, and may be lighted (green light).

Port-side marks are on the left side of the waterway as you travel upstream, and the buoy numbers will increase as you head upstream. (Chart depictions are shown next to the marks.) Port-side buoys have a cylindrical appearance above the water, like a can or drum floating on its end. They are commonly referred to as “can” buoys.

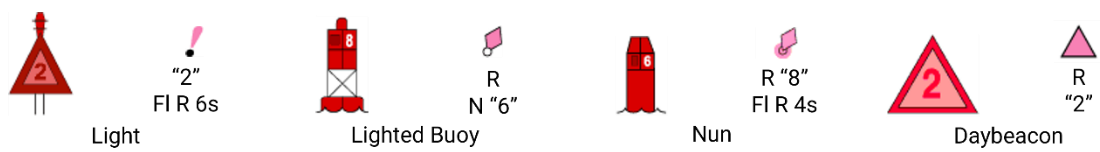
Port-side beacons have square marks attached to them, with two shades of color and a reflective border.

9.3.4.2 Starboard-Side Even-Numbered Aids

Starboard aids are red and have even numbers. They will be on your right side as you travel upstream. Buoy numbers increase as you head upstream, and they may have a red light.

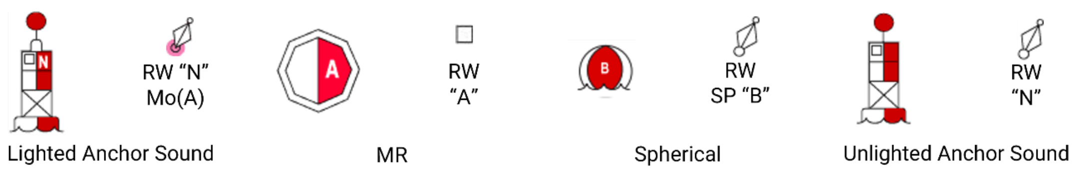
Starboard-side buoys have an above-water appearance like a cylinder topped with a cone, pointed end up. The cone may come to a point or be slightly rounded. These buoys are commonly referred to as “nun” buoys.

Starboard-side beacons have triangular marks attached to them, with two shades of color and a reflective border.



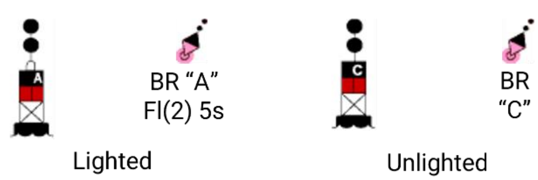
9.3.4.3 Safe Water Marks

These marks are used to mark fairways, mid-channels, and offshore approach points. They have unobstructed water on all sides. These marks may be lettered and may be lit with a white light. They may also have a red top mark.



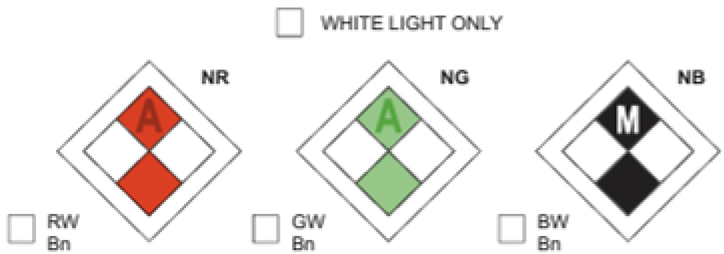
9.3.4.4 Isolated Danger Marks

These buoys indicate a danger that may be passed on all sides. They are erected on or moored on or near danger. They should not be approached closely without special caution. They may be lit, and they may be lettered.



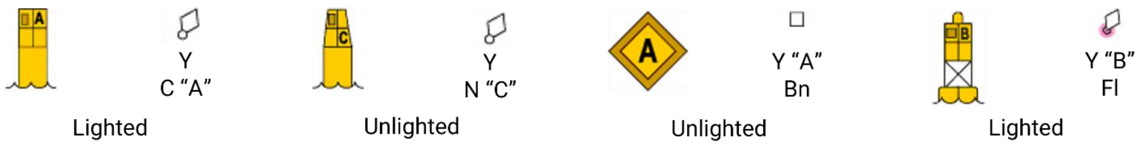
9.3.4.5 Dayboards

These diamond-shaped marks are used to help the vessel operator determine location on a nautical map. When you see a dayboard and find the corresponding mark on the chart, you know your precise location. They may be lettered and may be lit with a white light. Their color reflects that of nearby lateral marks.



9.3.4.6 Special Marks

Special marks have no lateral significance (meaning they don't tell you which side of the channel or river you may be on). These marks are used to mark a special feature or area. These include area limits for anchorages, fishing grounds, or dredging/spoil areas. These buoys may be lit, and if they are, it will be a fixed or flashing yellow light. Their shape is optional, but it usually follows the shape of nearby navigation buoys.



9.3.4.7 Characteristics of Lighted Buoys

To permit ready identification and to avoid confusion with other lights, most lighted buoys have distinct flashing characteristics. These characteristics are in the form of a variety of flashes (light periods) and eclipses (dark periods). These characteristics are indicated on charts and in the light lists by the following abbreviations:

Flashing Light Characteristics and Their Abbreviations

F	Fixed
Fl	Flashing
Gp Fl	Group Flashing
Qk Fl	Quick Flashing
Occ	Occulting
I Qk Fl	Interrupted Quick Flashing
S-L Fl	Short-Long Flashing
E Int	Equal Interval Flashing Mo
(A)	Morse Code Letter A

Additional symbols used in the light list to describe lights and their characteristics are: R (red), G (green), W (white), s (seconds), fl (flash), and ec (eclipse). For example, the symbols Fl. G., 2.5s (0.5s fl) in the light list just below the name of the aid indicate that this light exhibits a flashing green light every 2.5 seconds, the flash being 0.5 seconds duration followed by an eclipse (period of darkness) of 2.0 seconds.

The light rhythms on lighted buoys follow a pattern that helps the navigator identify the light and its meaning. Mid-channel buoys will always show a white light flashing the Morse code letter A. A preferred channel aid will show a red or green light depending on which channel is preferred and have a composite group flashing light (2 + 1). Port and starboard side buoys will show a green light to port and a red light to starboard. Their light rhythms will vary from buoy to buoy in such a way that buoys will not be easily confused. The lighting pattern will be marked on the chart.

9.3.4.8 Sound Buoys

Buoys equipped with sound signals are effective in fog or whenever visibility is limited. These are classed as bell buoys, gong buoys, whistle buoys, or horn buoys. Each is easily recognizable by its distinctive sound.

Bell buoys have four clappers hung loosely around the bell, so the slightest motion of the buoy causes a clapper to strike the bell. Gong buoys have three or four gongs of different tones, each with a separate clapper rung in turn by the motion of the buoy in the sea. The air used in whistle buoys is compressed and released by the rise and fall of the buoy from the movement of the sea. Buoys of this type are usually placed only where there is sufficient motion to activate them. A horn buoy is sounded at regular intervals by mechanical means.

9.3.4.9 Dependence on Buoys

Although every care is given by the U.S. Coast Guard in maintaining all navigational aids, the navigator must not rely entirely on the placement and lighted characteristic of a buoy. Buoys may be carried away, sunk, shifted, or have lights extinguished by nature, collision, or mechanical failure.

9.3.5 The Rule of Lettering

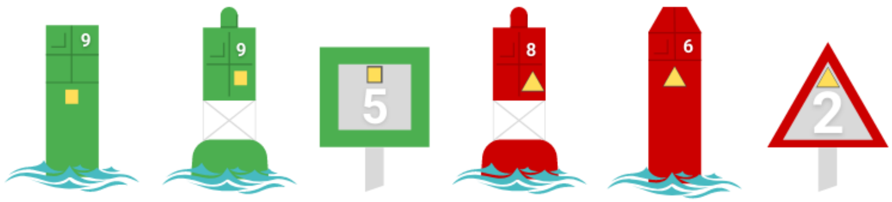
On all charts, lettering is printed in both vertical and slanted type. The rule is that if an object is afloat, or it covers and uncovers with tidal action of the water, the descriptive wording or abbreviation is printed in slanted type. If the object is not afloat, or if it does not cover and uncover with the tide, the descriptive wording is printed in vertical type. Thus, a mariner can tell immediately if ALPHA ROCK is an islet or a reef. If the wording is printed in slanted type, it can at times be under water and thus may not be seen. All descriptive lettering for floating aids to navigation is found in slanted type, while descriptions of lighthouses, ranges, and other objects not afloat are found in vertical type.

9.3.6 Intracoastal Waterway

The Intracoastal Waterway is the protected, shallow, inland water route along the Atlantic seaboard from New Jersey to the waterways of south Texas. Pleasure boats and shallow-draft commercial vessels use this waterway to avoid the more hazardous outside passage in the open sea. Its system of buoys is basically the same as the lateral system, but different distinctive shapes and colors of buoys are used.

For the sea buoys that delineate channels off the coast of the United States and for the Intracoastal Waterway, red is on the right (shore side) when proceeding clockwise around the U.S. from the East Coast to the Gulf Coast or proceeding north along the West Coast.

ICW marks are further identified by a small yellow reflector at the bottom of the mark. Numbers on buoys going south increase consecutively with odd numbers on the left, even numbers on the right. However, numbers stop at specific points caused by natural dividing lines and start over again.



9.3.7 Western River (Mississippi River) System

Navigational aids on the western rivers consist of many types: unlighted buoys, lighted buoys, shore lights, daybeacons, river gauges, and lights on bridges and locks. These aids are shown on river charts and tabulated in the light list. Certain tributary rivers also have safety harbors and landing markers and direction boards.

In the Western River System, all aids are considered with reference to the flow of the river. Red buoys are on the left-hand bank and green buoys are on the right-hand bank as seen from a vessel bound downstream. This arrangement enables a radio-equipped vessel to communicate with an approaching craft some distance away to report the exact position of any obstruction, misplaced aid, or other hazard.

The shapes and coloring of aids on the Western River System are much the same as elsewhere in the lateral system. The red (nun) buoys are on the left-hand side of the navigable channel and the green (can) buoys are on the right-hand side as seen from a vessel bound downstream. Unlighted buoys are equipped with reflectors as an aid at night: nuns with red reflectors, cans with green reflectors. Unlighted red and green buoy tops are painted white to increase their visibility at all times. In this case white is not considered a directional characteristic. Red and green horizontal striped buoys marking junctions of the river, wrecks, or other obstructions do not have white tops. Quarantine, anchorage, dredging, and special purpose buoys have the same color and markings as those in the basic lateral system.

In the Western River System, **unlighted buoys** are not numbered. Numbers on **lighted buoys** indicate only the number of miles from a given starting point.

Another type of navigational aid is the **channel-marker shore light**, mounted on a wood structure, painted white. Many shore lights show the same characteristics as the lighted buoys. Looking downstream they show a flashing white or green from the right bank and flashing white or red from the left bank. Sometimes the light is fixed or occulting.

The channel is buoyed where it is narrow or makes a sharp bend. Where it is straight for a considerable distance, channel shore lights are used as a guide. Each light is visible from the one preceding it. Found in separated pairs, one higher than the other, **range lights** are usually small, skeleton-type structures. They are visible from one direction only. When they are in line, you know you are on a safe course. By steering a course that keeps these lights in line, you will remain in the channel. But you must consult your charts to know where to leave the range course. Proceeding too far might ground your vessel. The range lights may be white, red, or green and may be fixed or flashing.

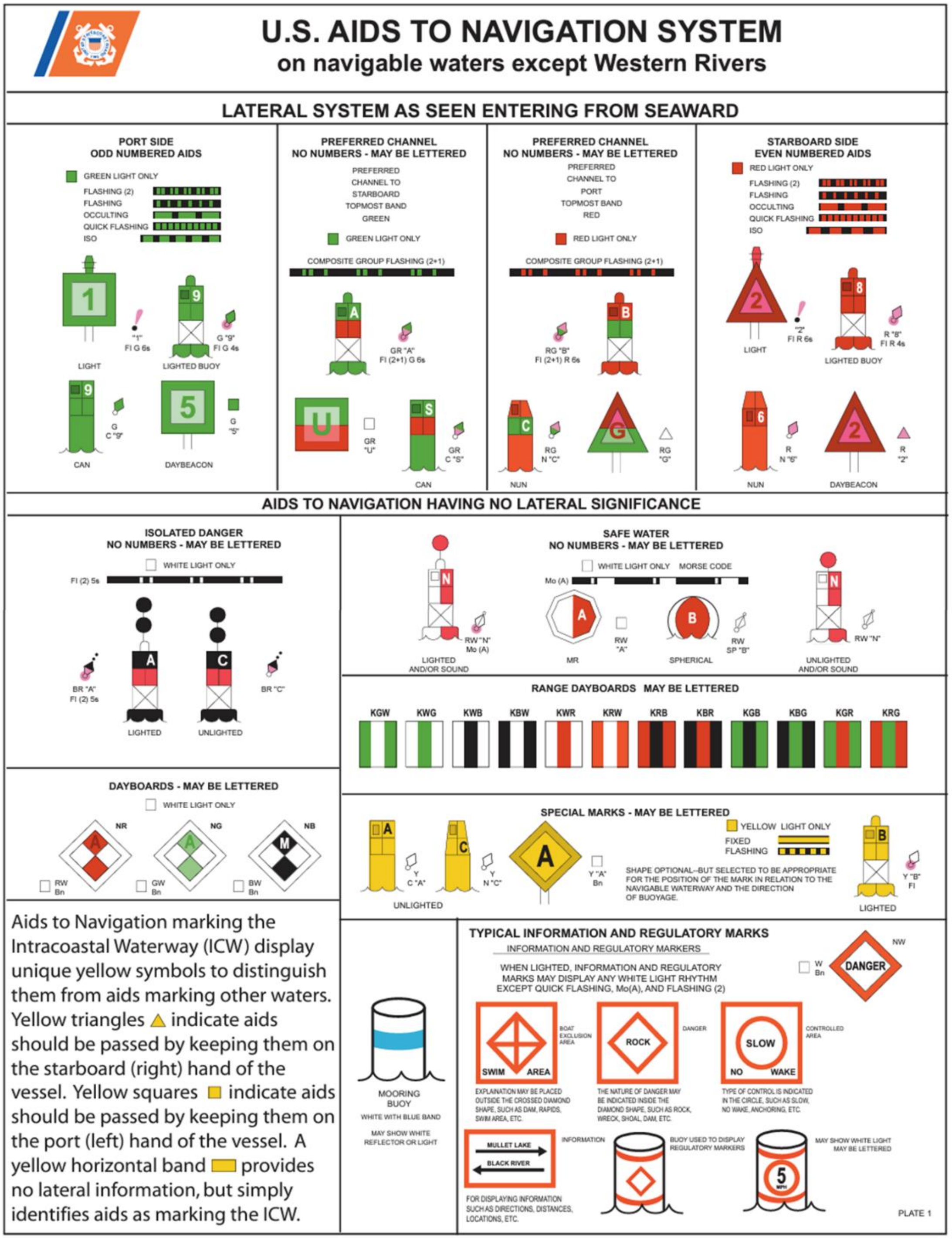
All light structures and daybeacons in the Western River System are equipped with **reflectors**. As seen from a vessel bound downstream, they are red and white on the left bank, green and white on the right bank. All reflectors are white unless shown as red or green in the light list.

River gauges are signboards at intervals along the riverbanks in the Western River System. Each bears a single number to enable the experienced pilot to estimate the depth of the water at a particular point. These river gauges appear on all river charts. The numbers are changed to conform to the seasonal level of the river.

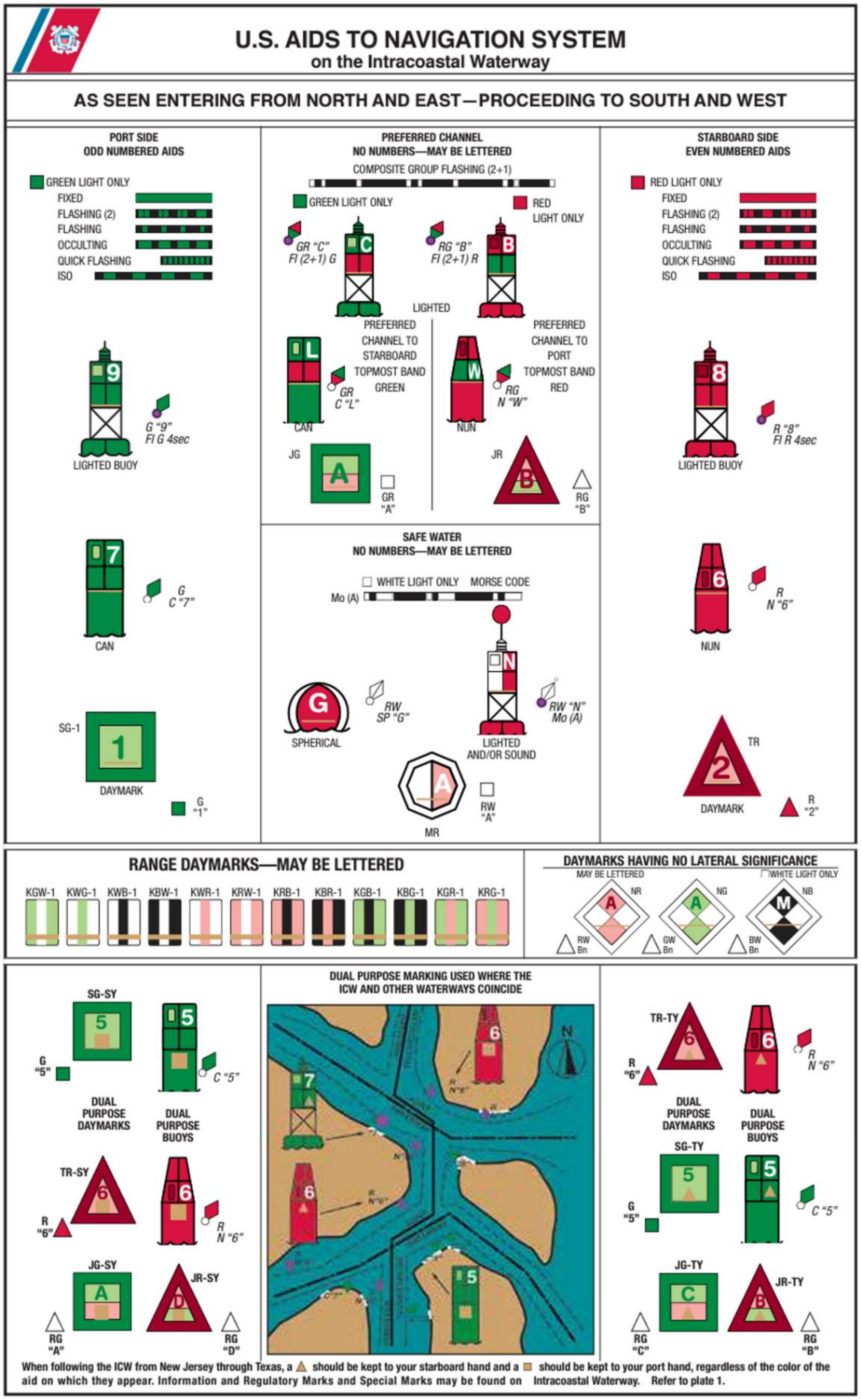
There are two printed aids to navigation that every river pilot should have available for instant use: the **light list** and the **river chart**. They are prepared and sold by the Corps of Engineers. The charts show the sailing line or channel, around and between islands in the river, as well as the mileage from a given point to the head of navigation.

Lights on locks and bridges guide the pilot through the many locks on the Western River System and locate the channel beneath bridges.

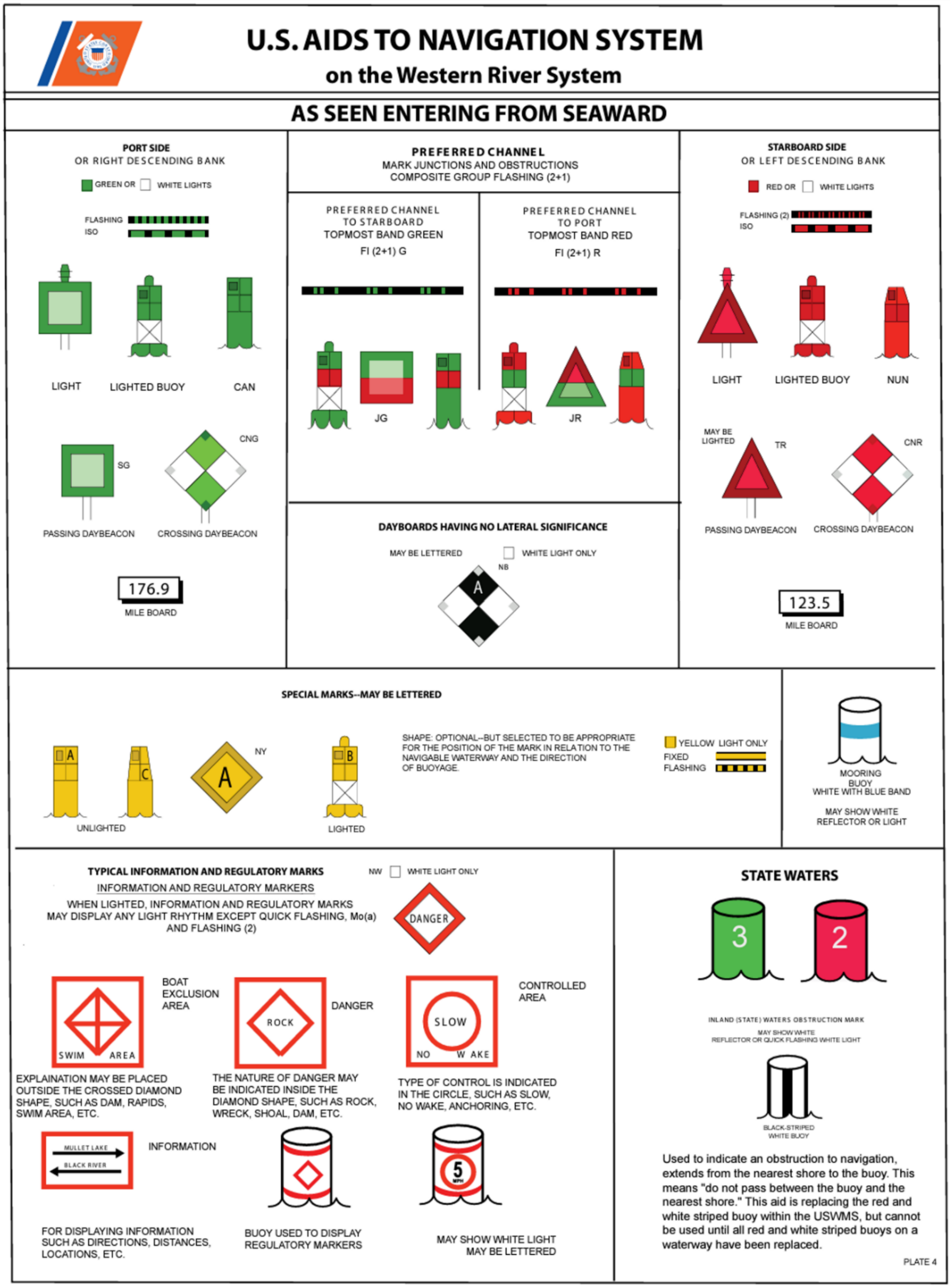
U.S. Aids to Navigation on Navigable Waters except Western Rivers



U.S. Aids to Navigation on the Intracoastal Waterway



U.S. Aids to Navigation on the Western River System



9.4 Piloting and Navigation

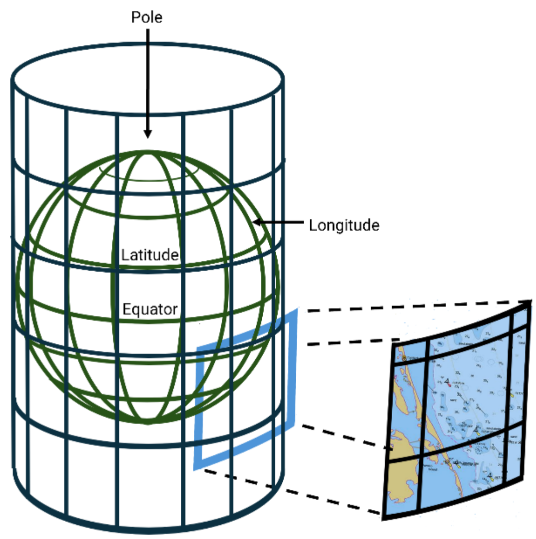
Piloting and navigation are the art and science of guiding your vessel on its intended path. Though piloting and navigation are closely related, the seaman considers **piloting** the art of finding their way along a shore or in and out of harbors and rivers. **Navigation**, then, is piloting offshore but without the many aids to navigation close to land. The pilot can physically see the shore and lighthouses, ranges, and buoys. They can read the depth under them and listen to various radio aids, foghorns, and bells. The navigator must proceed without these aids. They must rely on the story told by the celestial bodies, the speed of their vessel, and their knowledge of the currents, tides, and the vast body of water that they sail.

To get from place to place on land, we use a map. We depend on visual cues to guide us and keep us safe. There are no street names, lane markers, or road signs on water, and a sailor must choose his own path. This is done with a chart that provides details such as landmarks, water depth, navigational aids, channels, and shorelines. To pilot or navigate properly, you need the proper tools—compass, watch, chart, pencil, dividers, parallel rules or plotter, and a calculator.

9.4.1 Charts

Charts, a detailed scale print or representation (in indelible ink on waterproof paper) of navigable waters, are a hugely important tool for navigating our underway adventures. For most of us, the charts we use are the result of a Mercator projection.

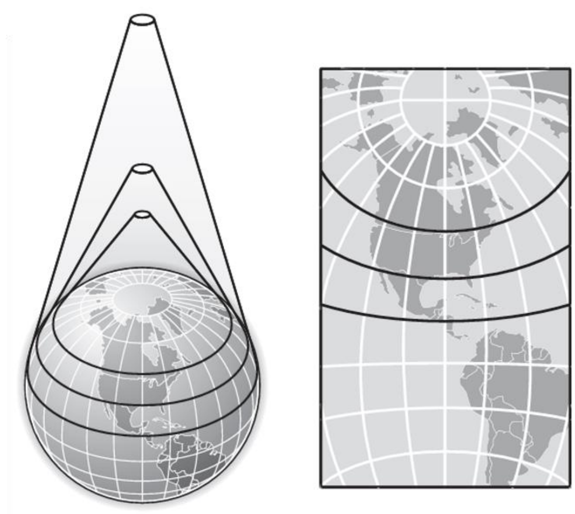
Mercator Projection



A map projection is a way to represent a three-dimensional spherical object (the Earth) on a two-dimensional flat surface (a map). Translating from 3-D to 2-d means that all charts will have some degree of distortion.

There are many different types of projections. The two which are of primary interest to the mariner are the Mercator projection, most used for ocean and coastal navigation, and polyconic projection which is used on the Great Lakes and inland rivers.

Polyconic Projection



Polyconic projection is used on charts of the Great Lakes. This projection is made to correspond more nearly to the Earth’s true surface. Parallels are curved and are projected to their true length within the area of the chart. Meridians are straight equidistant lines converging at a point which may or may not be a pole.

A Mercator projection most accurately portrays regions that are closer to the equator. Areas that are closer to the polar regions are more distorted as the space between lines of longitude decreases as they approach the poles.

Ordinary 10a. *Demonstrate your understanding of latitude and longitude. Using a Mercator chart, demonstrate that you can locate your position from given coordinates and determine the coordinates of at least five aids to navigation.*

9.4.1.1 Latitude and Longitude

Latitude is distance north or south of the equator. Parallels of latitude are sometimes referred to as small circles (a circle whose plane does not pass through the Earth’s center) that are equidistant north or south of the equator, diminishing in size as they approach the poles. Parallels of latitude are numbered in degrees (°), minutes (‘), and seconds (“) from north or south with 0° at the equator to 90° at the poles.

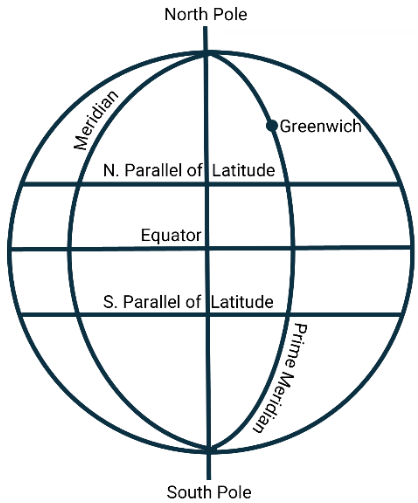
Longitude is distance east or west of the prime meridian, which passes through the Royal Naval Observatory in Greenwich, United Kingdom. All meridians are great circles that pass through the north and south poles. Great circles intersect the equator at right angles. They are measured in degrees (°), minutes (‘), and seconds (“) from 0° to 180°.

Latitude and longitude enable a navigator to pinpoint his or her position at any spot on the Earth. They are also used to describe the location of other ships, objects, and aids to navigation. When recording a location, latitude is written first and identified as north or south. Longitude is written next and labeled east or west. In practice, the coordinates are rounded off to the nearest tenth of a minute.

The nautical mile is 6,076 feet - the statute or land mile is 5,280 feet. The nautical mile is the average length of one minute of arc on a great circle of the Earth. A degree of latitude contains 60 minutes of arc and, therefore, is 60 nautical miles long.

A degree of longitude is 60 miles long only at the equator; so, when degrees of longitude are figured north or south of the equator along any parallel of latitude, the degrees become shortened, and the minutes become less than a nautical mile in length. This is why **the measurement of distance is always taken along the latitude scale of a chart**.

Latitude and Longitude



On a chart, distances can be measured with a pair of dividers on the latitude scale which is on the east and west sides of the chart. A minute of latitude on the scale is equal to a nautical mile.

The longitude scale at the top and bottom of the chart must not be used for measuring distances because the meridians of longitude converge at the poles. It follows, therefore, that for any distance either above or below the equator, a degree of longitude becomes progressively smaller, thus giving an incorrect measurement.

Some charts print a legend defining the symbols and the abbreviations used. A complete list of symbols and abbreviations is found in the pamphlet Chart No. 1, published by the National Ocean Survey.

U.S. Chart No. 1 (Chart Symbols)

9.4.1.2 Scale

It’s important to know the scale to which the chart is drawn. This is given as a fraction just below the chart’s title. Harbor charts that show lots of detail may have a scale of 1:10,000 or 1:20,000. This means that 1 inch on the chart equals 10,000 or 20,000 inches (a little more than ⅛ or ¼ nautical mile). Ocean charts can have a scale of 1:1,000,000. Here 1 inch represents 13.7 miles. A small-scale chart has less detailed features; a large-scale chart has greater detail. Remember that the scale is a fraction, and that one ten-thousandth is larger than one-millionth.

9.4.1.3 Features

A coastal chart is concerned with varying depths of water and shows soundings in fathoms or feet, depth curves, and shoal and rocky areas. A river chart omits these things because depths are relatively consistent in the main channel. The coastal chart gives the depth of water at mean low tide, while the river chart tells how high the water is at that season. Both charts show contours, landmarks, and shore installations.

Coastal and lake sailors need accurate compass courses, so charts are made accordingly. Meridians and parallels are shown, with appropriate scales along the chart's east and west edges. There is at least one compass rose with two circles: the outer circle shows degrees with zero at true north, the inner shows points and degrees with zero at magnetic north.

The river sailor needs none of this, so their chart simply follows the direction of the stream, and north may be at any angle relative to the sheet. Latitude and longitude may be shown on river charts, but the scales are omitted as are the compass roses.

The coastal chart is measured in nautical miles, and the river chart in statute miles. Mileages on the river itself are normally marked and numbered from a base point.

When using any chart, always be certain that you have the latest edition or revision since changes frequently occur. For ease in plotting, obtain the chart with the maximum scale available. Charts can be kept up to date by noting changes published in "Notices to Mariners," available online and from the local district headquarters of the U.S. Coast Guard.

Navigation charts for North America are produced largely by three U.S. government departments and one Canadian agency. U.S. National Ocean Survey charts cover all coastal waters in the United States, including tidal rivers. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers is responsible for important inland waters that include the Mississippi system and the Gulf Intracoastal Waterway. Its U.S. Lake Survey covers the Great Lakes and connecting waters. The U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office produces offshore charts and republishes foreign charts of navigable waters around the world. The Canadian Hydrographic Service charts the dominion's important navigable waters.

9.4.1.4 Digital Charts

For increasing numbers of mariners, digital technology has replaced traditional paper charts and compasses. Electronic chart systems provide detailed maps of the waterways and show the position of the vessel in real-time. These systems also incorporate other features such as AIS (Automatic Identification System) and radar, which provide additional safety and situational awareness for the crew.

Digital navigation for boaters typically involves the use of GPS (Global Positioning System) technology and electronic charts to aid in navigating waterways. Here's how it generally works and some of its benefits:

1. **GPS Technology**: Boaters use GPS receivers to determine their precise location on the water. These receivers communicate with satellites orbiting the Earth to triangulate the boat's position.
2. **Electronic Charts**: Instead of paper charts, digital navigation relies on electronic charts that are displayed on devices like chartplotters, smartphones, or tablets. These charts contain detailed information about water depths, navigation aids, hazards, marinas, and more.
3. **Real-Time Tracking**: Digital navigation systems allow boaters to track their movements in real-time on the electronic chart. This feature helps boaters stay aware of their position relative to navigational markers, hazards, and designated routes.
4. **Route Planning**: Boaters can plan their routes in advance using digital navigation software. This includes setting waypoints, avoiding obstacles, and optimizing the route for safety and efficiency.
5. **AIS Integration**: Many digital navigation systems integrate with Automatic Identification System (AIS) technology, allowing boaters to see the positions of other vessels equipped with AIS transponders. This enhances situational awareness and helps prevent collisions.

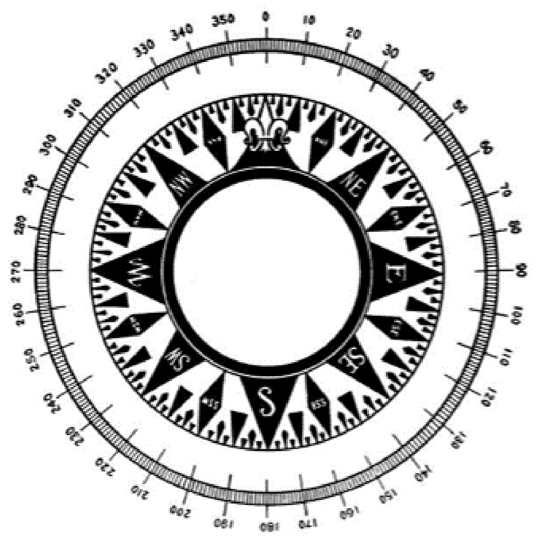
Benefits of digital navigation for boaters include:

- **Increased Safety**: Digital navigation provides accurate real-time information about the boat's position and surroundings, helping boaters navigate safely, especially in unfamiliar waters or low visibility conditions.
- **Convenience**: Electronic charts are easier to update and manage compared to paper charts. Boaters can quickly access detailed information about their route and adjust as needed.
- **Efficiency**: Digital navigation systems streamline route planning and navigation tasks, saving time and effort for boaters. This allows them to focus more on enjoying their time on the water rather than worrying about navigation challenges.
- **Enhanced Features**: Some digital navigation systems offer additional features such as weather overlays, depth contours, and points of interest, further enhancing the boating experience.

Overall, digital navigation technology has revolutionized the way boaters navigate waterways, offering convenience, safety, and efficiency benefits that were not possible with traditional navigation methods.

[America's Boating Channel: Digital Charts and Virtual ATONS]

9.4.2 Compass



Compass Card

The most important navigational device on a boat is the compass. A reliable compass tells you what direction you are going, and this is necessary information when plotting dead reckoning positions. A simple compass consists of a magnetized needle or pointer mounted on a card.

The needle swings on a pivot so it always points in a northerly direction. This position is called "magnetic north." A compass must be installed properly. The lubber line must be aligned with the keel of the boat, and the compass needs to be away from interfering metallic objects and unshielded or untwisted electrical wiring.

Ordinary 10b. *Explain the degree system of compass direction. Explain variation and deviation and how they are used to convert between true headings and bearings to compass headings and bearings.*

The compass card can be marked in several ways. An outer card will show degrees. There are 360 degrees in a complete revolution of the compass needle. North is 000°; east 090°; south 180°; and west 270°. (Note: Any compass bearing less than 100° is expressed in three digits with a leading zero, e.g., 084° is expressed as zero-eight-four.) An inner card showing the "points of the compass" has historic value but is no longer used having been abandoned in favor of the more accurate 360-degree compass.

9.4.2.1 Variation

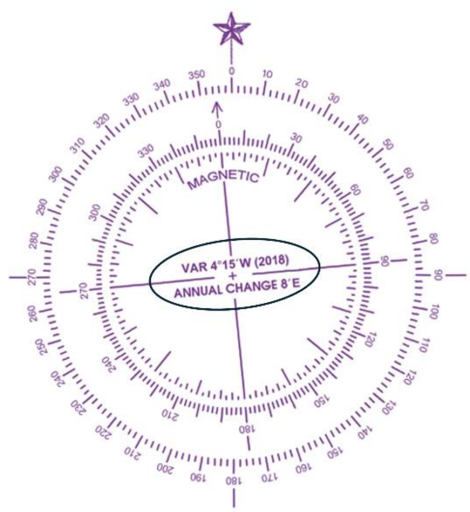
The magnetic compass always points to **magnetic north**, the center of magnetic energy which draws and holds the needle. It does not point to **true or geographic north**. Geographic north, or the North Pole, is the northern end of the axis upon which Earth rotates. All charts and maps are oriented to geographic or true north. **Variation** is the degree of difference between true and magnetic north.

Magnetic north is not a fixed spot. Its general location is north of Canada, but its exact location is subject to some annual change. The motion is predictable and by simple computations, the correct local variation and annual change are noted upon each compass rose on all charts. The mariner converts his magnetic compass reading to true reading to conform to his charts.

Because waves of magnetic energy flow in irregular paths between the northern and southern magnetic poles, variation is easterly or westerly, or as the mariner faces the North Pole, the compass needle is too far to the right or to the left. Charts indicate the direction of variation. Variation is expressed in degrees and minutes, east or west of true north.

Why do you need to understand variation? Your charts reflect true north, but your compass reads magnetic north. In some places, the degrees difference can determine whether you get where you want to be or whether you are lost at sea.

If you live on the east coast of the United States, the variation is to the west. If you are on the west coast, variation is to the east. The compass rose on your chart is your reference for both true and magnetic direction. Since variation is location dependent, on smaller scale charts with multiple compass roses the variation may be different. Always use the compass rose closest to where you are plotting on the chart. To convert from true to magnetic, you simply add west variation or subtract east variation to true to get the equivalent magnetic heading.



9.4.2.2 Deviation

Deviation is the error caused by ferrous metals on the boat and in the boat's equipment such as generators, radios, alternators, and batteries. All of these pull the compass needle. This pull, or deviation, is reduced by placing magnetized iron bars called flinders bars near the compass to pull it back to a nearly correct heading. Compass correction, also known as compensating, should be done by expert compass adjusters.

There are almost always small residual compass errors, and in some cases large ones. Deviation can be determined by running your ship over known courses to bear on known range marks. Make note of your compass headings. The difference between your compass heading and the magnetic heading is your deviation for that compass heading. Use your calculations to prepare a chart for use when piloting.

Note: When taking bearings with a hand-held compass, do not apply deviation.

Deviation Table

Deviation Table **Vessel: SSS Scout** **Location: Pilot House (Binnacle Compass)**			
Compass Heading	**Deviation**	**Compass Heading**	**Deviation**
000	+4.0W	180	-4.5E
030	+3.5W	210	-7.0E
060	+2.5W	240	-5.5E
090	+2.0W	270	-2.5E
120	+2.0W	300	+1.0W
150	+0.5W	330	+3.5W

Deviation is only good for the compass in that location. As you move around the boat, the deviation will change. It is best, too, not to take compass bearings while standing near the engine or the anchor. The middle of the vessel, farthest from large iron pieces, will give the best results.

Why do you need to understand deviation? Once you have converted your true heading to a magnetic heading by correcting for variation, you may still be on the wrong track unless you account for deviation. Just as you do when adjusting for variation, to correct for deviation, you add degrees west and subtract degrees east. Once you have corrected for compass deviation, you can successfully reach your chosen destination. When calculating headings or bearings, a deck log is useful. As a memory aid, remember, "TV Makes Dull Company—Add Wildcats."

Sample Portion of a Deck Log

True	Variation	Magnetic	Deviation	Compass
092	-4E	088	+2W	090

Ordinary 10c.*Describe three kinds of devices used aboard ship for measuring speed and/or distance traveled, and, if possible, demonstrate their use.*

9.4.3 Measuring Speed

9.4.3.1 Speedometer

Just as in a car, you need a device on your boat to tell you how fast you are traveling. Most vessels have a speedometer. Some speedometers work through a paddlewheel extending into the water from the hull that rotates faster as speed increases. Some speedometers use the pressure of water rising in a small tube (called a pitot tube) attached outside the hull with a special fitting connected by tubing to a small dial mounted on an instrument panel. Changes of pressure within the pitot tube are registered on a dial that is calibrated in knots. (Knots are nautical miles per hour. Knots per hour is a measure of acceleration.) Others operate on the drag of a movable strut projecting into the water from a hull fitting. Underway, the pressure on the strut moves a small piston against hydraulic fluid in a tube, which moves a needle on a dial calibrated to record knots. A boat speedometer only shows approximate velocity through water. The effects of wind and current must also be considered to get an accurate reading of speed over the bottom. Your GPS unit will provide a speed over ground reading, but this is not the same as speed through water.

9.4.3.2 Patent Log

If your speedometer is fouled and the GPS unit is malfunctioning, you can still calculate speed. If you have an engine tachometer, you can prepare a list of engine speeds that correspond to speed through the water. Some vessels have a patent log. A patent log is any one of various mechanical devices designed to measure a ship's speed, distance, or both. Patent logs have three parts: (1) a metal rotator that is drawn through the water with blades that vary its speed of rotation depending on the speed of the boat towing it; (2) a line several hundred feet long attached at one end to the rotator and at the other end to a wheel on the instrument on the boat; and (3) a dial that registers the speed of rotation of the wheel to which the log line is attached reading in knots and/or accumulated distance in nautical miles. The best-known type of patent log is called a taffrail log.

9.4.3.3 Chip Log

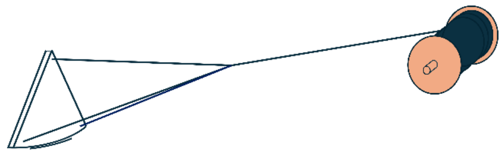
The chip log is well suited for small-boat use, especially at speeds from 2 to 10 knots per hour. The old-time chip log had three parts: chip, line, and 28-second sandglass. The chip was a thin wooden quadrant weighted on the curved edge so it would float upright. One end of a line was attached to the point of the chip. Lines went from each corner of the chip to a peg-and-socket attached to the line. A sharp tug pulled out the peg, and the chip collapsed for easy retrieval. The other end was wound on a small reel.

The line was knotted at intervals of 47 feet, 3 inches. When the chip was thrown overboard, the glass was inverted, and the line ran out. The number of knots leaving the reel in the 28 seconds the glass took to empty was approximately equal to the boat's speed in knots. This is where we get the sea term "knot."

In the maritime environment, speed is measured in knots (on inland waterways, some vessels will use miles per hour). A knot is 1 nautical mile per hour. (One nautical mile is 1.15 statute miles.)

Although fairly accurate up to 10 knots, the chip log has been almost entirely replaced by the patent log or the speedometer. You can easily make one, but use a stopwatch, digital watch, or sweep second hand as your timing device. A 15-second interval is easier to read on a watch; so, for this time, tie the knots 24 feet, 4 inches apart.

Chip Log



9.4.3.4 Dutchman's Log

A simple method for determining speed is called the Dutchman's log. This is simply a method of noting the time it takes a chip, paper, or other floating object to pass from a marked point at the bow to a mark at the stern. The distance in feet is to feet per hour as the time in seconds is to the hour in seconds (3,600 seconds in one hour).

For example, the distance between the marks is 20 feet. The time between the marks is four seconds. Multiply the distance (20 feet) by seconds per hour (3,600). This is 72,000. Then divide by the seconds (4), which equals the feet per hour (18,000).

$$(20 \times 3{,}600) \div 4 = 18{,}000 \text{ feet per hour}$$

There are 6,076 feet in a nautical mile, so divide the feet per hour by 6,076. This is approximately 2.9 knots. (A knot is 1 nautical mile per hour—a speed, not a distance.)

Try this formula several times; then work out a chart for your boat.

Sample Speed Table

Speed Table for S.S.S. Scout	
TIME (Seconds)	**SPEED (Knots)**
2	7.4
3	4.9
4	3.7
5	2.9
6	2.5
(Distance bow to stern: 25 feet)	

Care must be taken to look down to the water vertically and to mark the time accurately, preferably using a stopwatch.

9.4.3.5 Ground Log

A ground log is a simple tool for showing a boat's approximate speed and direction in shoal water. It consists merely of a weight on one end of a hand line. The weight is thrown overboard and allowed to rest on the bottom. The direction of the line and the amount paid out in a given time as the boat moves indicates the boat's course and speed.

Ordinary 10e. *Understand Coordinated Universal Time (Greenwich Mean Time or Zulu Time) and zone time. Demonstrate your ability to convert from one to the other for your local area.*

9.4.4 Time

For accurate navigation, the exact time of an observation must be known. Extremely accurate times can be acquired from a GPS unit and most modern watches. Navigators deal with several types of time. The principal time used in navigation is Greenwich **Mean Time (GMT)** or **Zulu Time**. This is the time at the prime meridian passing through the Royal Naval Observatory at Greenwich near London, United Kingdom. All chronometers are set to Greenwich Mean Time, also known as **Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)**. This time is broadcast on WWV and WWVH every minute and may be used to set your watch or chronometer. HF frequencies are 2.5, 5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 MHz.

Zone Time is the time we use in our daily activities. Our clocks are advanced by one hour for each 15 degrees of longitude we move east from Greenwich. Clocks are set back when moving west. On land, time zone lines usually follow political boundaries for the convenience of the citizens but closely approximate the 15-degree intervals. The continental United States is divided into four time zones: Eastern, Central, Mountain, and Pacific. Depending on the time of year, zone time can be expressed as standard time or daylight-saving time.

GMT/UTC Conversion Table

Zone	GMT/UTC	Standard		Daylight	
Atlantic	1800	1400	-4	1500	-3
Eastern	1800	1300	-5	1400	-4
Central	1800	1200	-6	1300	-5
Mountain	1800	1100	-7	1200	-6
Pacific	1800	1000	-8	1100	-7
Alaska	1800	0900	-9	1000	-8
Hawaii	1800	0800	-10	0900	-9

Navigators concerned with the correct time can obtain a radio time signal, called a time tick or a time hack, at least daily. Zone time accurate to 0.2 seconds can be obtained by logging on to www.time.gov. Click on the time zone where you live and set your watch to agree with the displayed time.

For piloting, navigation, and military purposes, time is expressed in four figures from 0001 through 2400 (midnight). This 24-hour clock avoids confusion between morning and afternoon. Thus, 0100 (pronounced “zero-one hundred”) is 1 a.m., and 1300 (thirteen hundred) is 1 p.m.

***Ordinary 10d.** Explain the 24-hour time system and demonstrate that you can convert between and 24-hour time.*

When piloting, times need to be added and subtracted. Remember, there are only 60 minutes in an hour. Do not be fooled and subtract a time such as 1125 from 1218 and think that 93 minutes have elapsed. Only 53 minutes of time have passed.

9.4.5 Measuring Distance

In the marine environment, we measure distance in nautical miles to make plotting on our charts easier. The distance a vessel travels is a function of the speed and time it travels. A car traveling 60 miles per hour goes a mile a minute. A boat traveling 6 knots goes 1 nautical mile in 10 minutes.

If you know your boat's speed and the time you have been underway, you can calculate the distance run. The Speed/Time/Distance formula, referred to as 60 D Street, is easy to use.

60 x Distance (nautical miles) = Speed (knots) x Time (minutes)

Suppose you have been sailing for an hour and 10 minutes at 6.2 knots. How far have you gone?

- Convert the time to minutes: 1 hour (60 minutes) + 10 = 70 minutes
- 60 D = Speed (6.2) x Time (70)
- 60 D = 434.2
- D = 434.2 ÷ 60 = 7.24 nautical miles

9.4.6 Speed, Time, and Distance

Computing speed, time, and distance is an important part of dead reckoning. The 60 D Street calculation can be used to find speed, time, or distance as long as two of the factors are known.

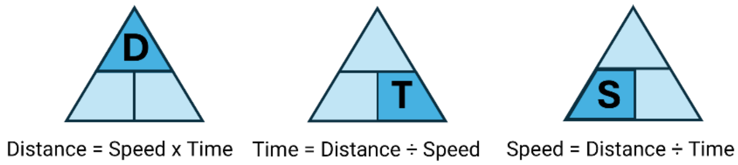
What if your GPS unit shows you are traveling at 5.7 SOG (speed over ground)? How long will it take you to sail 24 miles back to your marina?

- 60 D = Speed x Time
- 60 x 24 = Speed x Time
- 1,440 = Speed x Time
- 1,440 = 5.7 x Time
- 1,440 ÷ 5.7 = Time
- 266 minutes = Time
- Convert the time to hours and minutes. 266 minutes = 240 (4 hours) + 26 minutes

Suppose your handheld GPS unit goes overboard after you have traveled 12.5 nautical miles in two hours and 17 minutes and your Skipper wants an estimated speed for your vessel?

- Convert the time to minutes: 2 hours (120 minutes) + 17 = 137 minutes
- 60 D = Speed x Time (137)
- 60 x 12.5 = Speed x 137
- 750 = Speed x 137
- 750 ÷137 = Speed
- Knots = Speed

60 D Street Equations



9.4.6.1 Logarithmic Speed Scale

Most charts have a logarithmic speed scale located on the upper or lower margin. This is an aid in avoiding arithmetic as you can tick off time, speed, or distance with your dividers; however, a pocket calculator is quite easy to use.

To find speed, place a point of the dividers on distance run (in any unit) and the other on minutes run. Without changing the divider spread, place the right point on 60. The left point will then indicate speed in units per hour. Example: with 4.0 nautical miles run in 15 minutes, the speed is 16.0 knots.

Logarithmic Speed Scale

Ordinary 10f. *Make a dead reckoning table of compass and distances (minimum three legs) between two points, plot these on a chart, and determine the final position.*

9.4.7 Dead Reckoning

Early navigators abbreviated deduced reckoning as dead reckoning. Today, dead reckoning (DR) is the term used for locating a position by calculation. If speed, time, and heading are known, it is possible to calculate or “dead reckon” a position.

A dead reckoning plot is the record of your boat’s progress based on heading steered and speed made through the water (or over ground if using GPS). It does not show your true position at any point—only your “reckoned” position. Your true position is found by fixes from charted features, radio navigation aids, GPS, or celestial observations. Your dead reckoning plot must always start from a known point, a fix. It tracks your progress until the next fix, where you start a new dead reckoning plot.

An important part of dead reckoning is calculating an estimated time of arrival at your waypoints. These ETAs help prevent gross errors in navigation.

9.4.8 Deck Log

A deck log is a record of the calculations made when planning a course. The departure point and legs of your journey should be logged as part of your pre-sail plan. Because the departure time is unknown, the estimated time enroute (ETE) is shown instead of an estimated time of arrival (ETA). This information should be recorded on the first lines of the deck log.

Sample Deck Log

Vessel				**Navigator**				**From**		**To**	
Time	**Position**	**Latitude**	**Long.**	**True**	**Var.**	**Dev.**	**Comp.**	**Speed**	**Distance**	**ETA**	**Remarks**

Able 10a. *Describe the deck log aboard your ship's principal craft. Keep a complete log for three cruises.*

Once underway, the time of actual departure is logged. Calculations made during pre-sail planning can be used to give a compass heading and compute an ETA to the first waypoint. Actual speeds and headings are logged. Fixes determine your actual position, and the deck log tracks your progress until the next fix where you start a new dead reckoning plot.

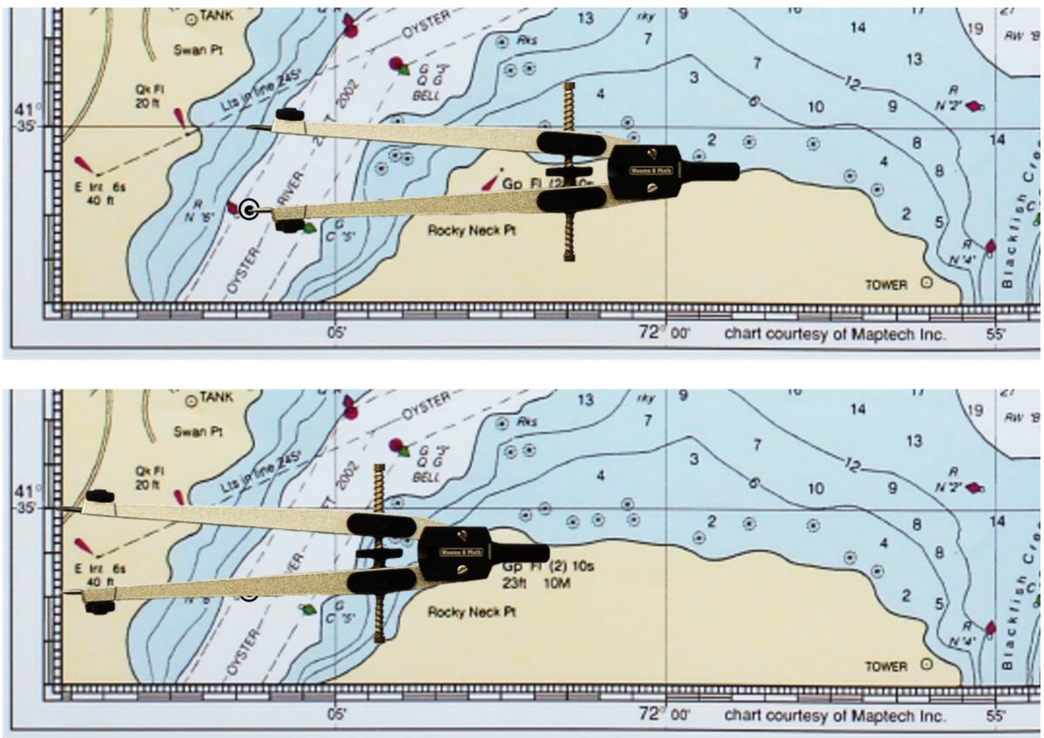
9.4.9 Chart Plotting

Some tools are needed for chart plotting. The minimum will be an up-to-date chart, sharp pencil, pair of dividers, good eraser, and parallel rules, or one of the many plotters available. Your boat should have a good compass with a deviation table. A pelorus or a hand-bearing compass is helpful but not required.

To determine the distance of a line or course on the chart, spread the dividers to the length of the line. Then place the points of the dividers on the distance scale to read the distance in nautical miles or set the dividers for a given number of miles and walk off the distance. On Mercator projection scale charts, the distance can be read from the latitude scale: 1 minute of latitude equals 1 nautical mile.

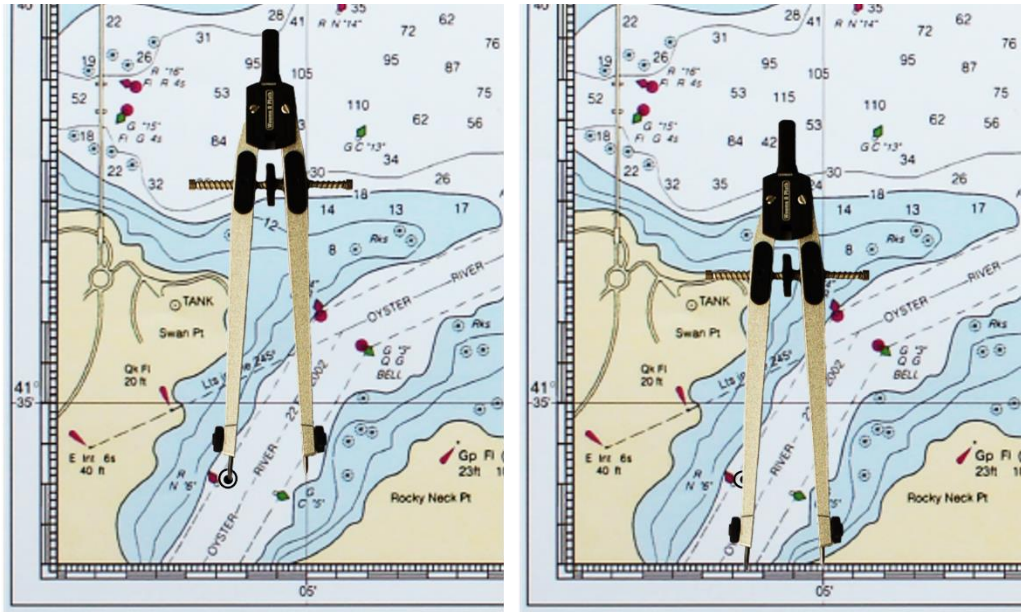
To describe a position on the chart, note either the latitude and longitude or its distance and direction from some specific point. Latitude and longitude can be determined by using the dividers to measure the distance of the position to the nearest printed parallel and meridian. This distance is then measured with the dividers on the latitude and longitude scales on the chart borders.

Measuring the Latitude of a Point on a Chart



The latitude of the point is 41º 36.5’ North.

Measuring the Longitude of a Point on a Chart



The longitude is 72º6.3' West.

Charts usually have a compass rose in several different places. This rose has an outer ring that is oriented to true north. A second compass rose inside the outer ring is oriented to magnetic north. The date, exact variation, and change in variation are in the center of this rose.

Parallel rules are used on the compass rose to measure a course or bearing or to draw a course line or line of position. To measure a course, place the dividers on the line, well spread. Put the edge of the parallel rules against the dividers without moving them.

Put your fingers firmly on the line side of the rules, and “walk” the other side up to the nearest compass rose. Put the edge of the rules exactly on the cross (+) in the center of the rose. Read the course on the same side as your direction of travel. For example, if you are headed generally southeast, your answer should be between 090° and 180°.

To lay out an accurate plot you must understand variation and deviation to correct a compass course or bearing to a true course or bearing, and how to adjust from true to compass. The time-speed-distance formula will be used regularly. You will also need to know how the lines are drawn and labeled. Here are some general rules.

Always start a DR plot from a known position—a fix.

- All lines on the chart are labeled as soon as they are drawn.
- Numbers are rounded off to the nearest value. If the number is exactly midway between two values, it is rounded to the even value. Thus, 1.44 is rounded to 1.4,
- 1.46 to 1.5, and 1.45 to 1.4, while 1.55 is rounded to 1.6.
- Time is always expressed in military time: 1:30 a.m. is written 0130, 4:18 p.m. is written 1618. The time of a fix is written parallel to the bottom of the chart, time of a DR position is written at an angle to the bottom of the chart, and if lines of position are labeled, the time is above the line. Time is rounded off to the nearest minute.
- Courses and bearings are always plotted as true directions using three digits. The course is written above the course line: a course of 45° is written C 045; 282° is written C 282. If bearings are labeled on lines of position, they are written below the line: a bearing of 185° is written B 185. The degree symbol is not used, as three-digit numbers are always degrees.
- Speed is expressed in knots on oceans and harbors, statute miles per hour on inland waters. The speed used must agree with the chart’s usage. Speed is written below the course line and rounded off to the nearest 10th. A speed of 6.27 knots is written S 6.3.
- Distance is rounded off to the nearest tenth of a mile. If distance is plotted on a course line, it is written below the line following the speed.
- Dead reckoning positions are indicated by a dot on the course line with a semi- circle. DR positions are plotted whenever there is a change in course or speed, as well as every hour, on the hour. The time of all DR positions is noted.
- A fix is marked with a dot surrounded by a circle. The time of the fix is noted, and this starts a new DR plot.
- An electronic fix position is marked with a dot surrounded by a triangle.
- An estimated position is marked with a dot surrounded by a square. The time is not noted, as it will be the same as its accompanying DR position. A new DR plot is never started from an estimated position.
- Latitude and longitude are never marked on the chart. When they are logged, however, they are rounded off to the nearest 10th of a minute, or six seconds. Latitude is written

first, then longitude. Latitude 42 18’ 14” North is written 42° 18.2’ N. **The latitude scale is used to determine distance; the longitude scale is never used for this purpose.**

- In addition to plotting the DR course on the chart, the skilled navigator keeps an accurate set of notes on a deck log.

9.4.9.1 Dead Reckoning Position and Estimated Position

A **dead reckoning** position is the position determined from compass headings (corrected), speed(s), and time since the last fix. If you have a major change in heading or speed, you need to plot a new position.

An **estimated position** is a DR position modified by additional information that is available to you but is not specific enough to be a fix. All headings, fixes, and lines of position are drawn on a chart in relation to the bottom. The water through which a ship moves is not fixed but moves as a mass in accord with tidal and current forces. The Earth’s oceans rise and fall daily due to the gravitational attraction of the moon and sun on the Earth’s surface. These changes in water level are called tides, and knowing when they will occur is essential to a boater. Tide tables, sometimes called tide charts, are used for tidal prediction and show the daily times and heights of high water and low water for a particular location.

When used in association with water, the term “current” describes the motion of the water. When the sea level is rising or falling, water is flowing to or from the ocean. This flow causes currents called tidal currents.

A flood current occurs as the sea level is rising toward high tide. Water is flowing toward the shore and away from the ocean. An ebb current occurs as the sea level is dropping toward low tide and water is flowing away from the shore and toward the ocean. At the exact time of high tide or low tide, there is no current. This time is called slack water.

Tidal currents are the only type of currents that change in a very regular pattern and can be predicted for future dates. Obviously, a heading must be corrected by the amount of movement caused by either or both of these forces.

If you know the direction and velocity of a current, you can modify your position by running a current vector just as you plotted the basic DR vector.

Able 10b. *Lay a course of at least three legs and execute it using dead reckoning.*

Helpful information regarding tides is found in two publications of the National Ocean Survey—the Tide Table and Current Table. By referring to certain key points where high and low water is given for each day of the year, the navigator may then refer to a table of corrections for his own locale. For example, high water at New London, Connecticut, may occur at 1100 on January 14. To find the time of high water at any of the several smaller ports nearby or at various points in the river, the tables say: “For Noank, add 50 minutes to time of H.W. at New London” or “For West Harbor, add 31 minutes” or “For Money Pond, subtract 13 minutes.” In this way, almost every mile of the seacoast is covered with a tidal prediction.

NOAA Tide Prediction Tables7

Able 10g. *Explain the use of tide tables, current tables, and light lists, and how to update a chart using the Notice to Mariners.*

9.4.10 Fixes

Fixing is the art and science of using several sets of information to accurately establish your position. Two or three bearings on different objects, one bearing and a bottom sounding, three celestial observations, and/or more can provide a fix.

Before taking a fix, think about your DR position. A common error is looking around and leaping to the conclusion that you are near a location you cannot possibly have reached. Look at your chart and have an idea of what you should see. Then, take your fix.

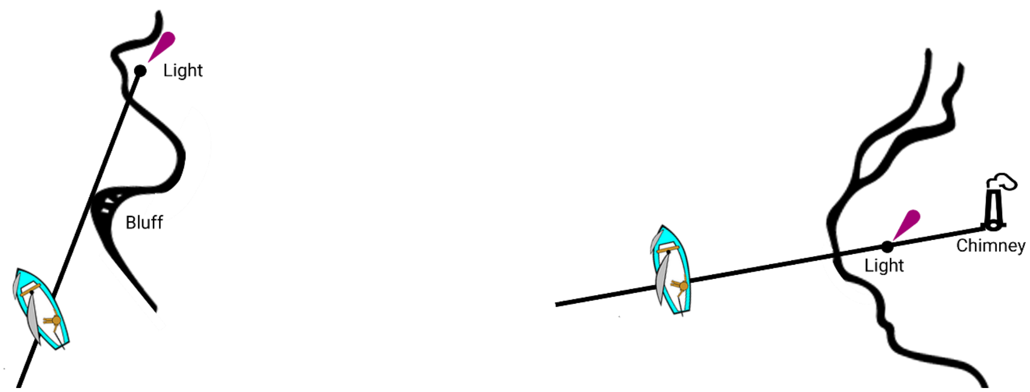
9.4.10.1 Bearings

A bearing is a line that you sight from your vessel to an identifiable landmark or navigation aid using a device such as a hand-bearing compass. The bearing has a measured direction and can be plotted on a chart.

Because the bearing is based on an actual measured observation, you know that your vessel lies somewhere along the line of sight. This is called a line of position (LOP).

The simplest line of position is taken from a range. Sight down two charted objects you can see from the water. Draw a pencil line seaward from them. You are somewhere along that line.

Lines of Position from Ranges



9.4.10.2 Visual Fixes

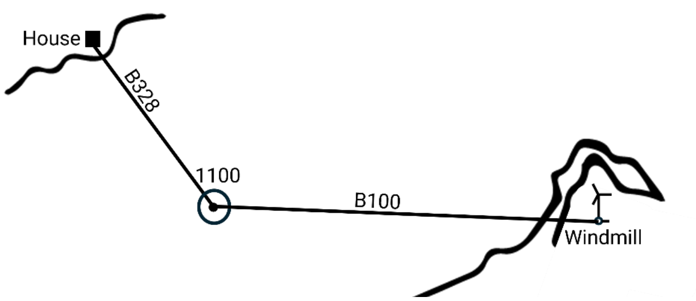
To take a bearing or visual fix, sight over the binnacle. It may have a bearing pointer (pelorus) for that purpose. When taking a bearing, line up the charted object and the compass pointer. Write the bearing down. When you are through taking fixes, go to your chart. Line up your parallel rules on the compass rose on the magnetic bearing you recorded for the object. Walk the rules to the object on your chart and draw a line from the object to near your DR position. This is the LOP. Draw the line for your second and additional bearings. Note the time above the LOP and the bearing from the boat to the object below the line.

Fix by Two Cross Bearings

If you have two or more lines of position taken at the same time, your position is at the intersection of the two lines. This is a fix. If possible, select objects that are about 90° apart.

Two crossed bearings provide a reasonably accurate fix. It should be noted that the narrower the angle of intersection of the two lines, the greater the likelihood of error.

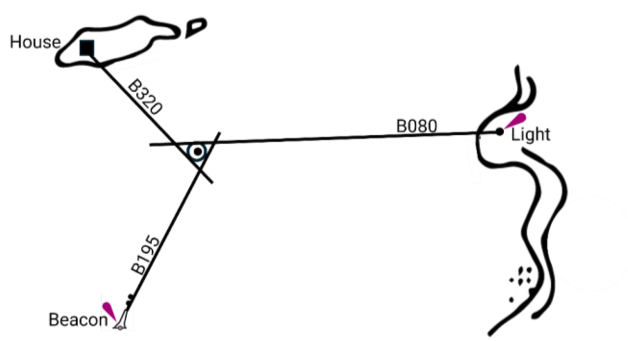
Fix by Two Cross Bearings



Fix by Three Bearings

A fix by three bearings is preferable, whenever possible. Any error is averaged by locating the fix in the center of the small resulting triangle. Sailors call this a “cocked hat.” The smaller the triangle, the more accurate the fix. Repeat the bearings if necessary.

Fix by Three Bearings

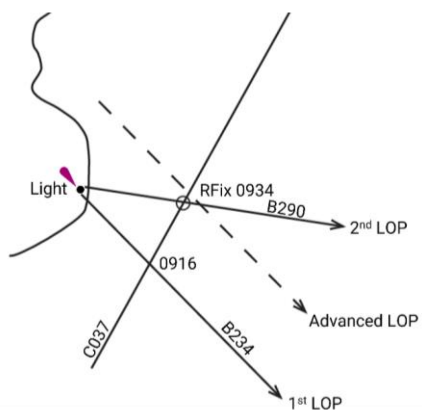


Running Fix

Sometimes you cannot get a good sighting on more than one object. When a standard fix is impossible, you can get a running fix (R fix) by taking a series of bearings on the same object. Many navigators will take a bearing and time when the object is 45° or 60° off the bow, a second bearing and time when the object is dead abeam or 90°. To plot the running fix:

1. Draw your first LOP on your chart.
2. Determine your speed for the time elapsed between the first and second bearing. Multiply your speed by the number of minutes between sightings to find the distance you traveled (S x T = D).
3. You must use a technique called “advancing the bearing” to plot the fix. To advance the LOP, you move it forward on the same bearing as the ship’s course. The distance you move the LOP should be the distance you traveled between your first and second bearings. Draw an LOP parallel to the original LOP at this distance.
4. The running fix is where the lines intersect.

Advancing the LOP



Keep in mind, a running fix’s accuracy is somewhere between the certainty of a standard fix and the mixed reliability of an estimated position.

Able 10c. *Demonstrate your ability to fix your position by the following methods: taking bearings from two known objects, running fix, and estimated position.*

Double the Angle on the Bow

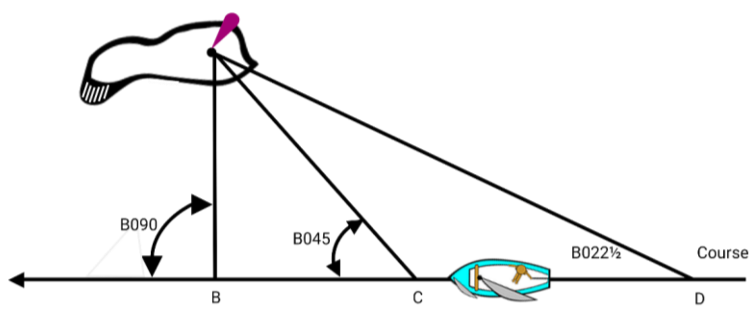
Double the angle on the bow is a specialized fix. It makes use of the special properties of isosceles triangles, and it also establishes your vessel's position off a coast.

1. Take a bearing and a time on an object 20 degrees off the bow.
2. Take a second bearing and time on the same object when it is 40 degrees off the bow. (You can use 15/30, 25/50, 30/60, etc. The operation is the same, but the angle must be doubled.)

Plot the bearings, and you will have an isosceles triangle with the leg between the first and second bearing the same length as the leg from the second bearing on the object.

To complete the exercise of determining your distance from the object, use the two time values and your known speed and calculate the distance using the 60 D Street formula found in the section on distance. (This method is valuable because it predicts in advance the distance off when abeam.)

Doubling the Angle on the Bow



Able 10d. *Establish distance from a known object using "double the angle on the bow" and explain how to set a danger bearing.*

Danger Bearing

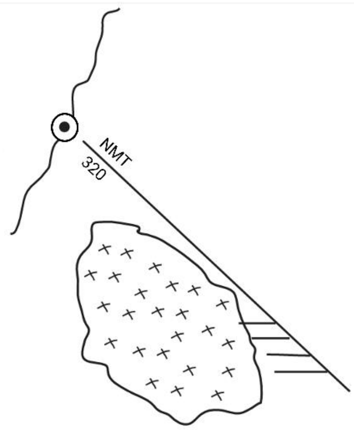
When planning a sail, you choose a path that will keep your boat in safe waters. Often there are hazards to be avoided. Establishing a danger bearing is a technique used to avoid going into treacherous waters.

When plotting your course, determine the area you need to avoid. Find a landmark or aid to navigation on the chart and draw a line of position on an angle from the object that avoids the danger area. This establishes a safe area and an unsafe area. If you stay on the correct side of the line while underway, you will be safe.

Measure the bearing of the line and convert it to a compass bearing. If you need to stay to the left of the line, the line should be labeled with NLT (no less than) and the compass bearing. The line is labeled with NMT (no more than) and the compass bearing if you must stay to the right of the line.

When your vessel approaches the danger area, take frequent sightings on the landmark or object you selected earlier. If the hazard lies to port, then any bearing greater than the danger bearing indicates trouble. If the hazard lies to starboard, the opposite applies.

Danger Bearing



9.4.10.3 Electronic Fixes

Global Positioning System

Twenty-four or more GPS satellites orbit the Earth, and they broadcast very precise time signals. GPS devices receive satellite signals, compare them, and give you a set of coordinates. This is especially valuable to the sailor because GPS looks at your absolute position on the globe. Sometimes, when relying on dead reckoning alone, the effects of current and wind are not readily apparent.

The primary purpose of GPS is determining position which it gives in latitude and longitude, but GPS can also tell which course to steer if waypoints are established, and it can provide an ETA to your destination. The GPS device provides your speed over ground (SOG). It is important to understand that SOG is not necessarily speed through the water. SOG is a result of speed through the water, current, and leeway.

A GPS cannot warn of hazards or determine water depth. Knowledge of the local environment must come from charts, observations, and other instruments on the boat.

Today, the simplest and most common fix taken is a GPS fix. You need to plot your position as reported by the GPS device on a chart at regular intervals. To take a GPS fix, make sure the GPS device is currently locked on. Then read the present position coordinates. They should be changing constantly if you are in motion. Make note of the time. Then read and write down the latitude to 1⁄10 of a minute. Next, read and write down the longitude to 1⁄10 of a minute. You may also want to note track and groundspeed as additional useful information. Plot the coordinates and time immediately, check your course for hazards, and compute an ETA to the next point.

America’s Boating Channel: Electronic Navigation with GPS

Ordinary 10g. *Discuss how a GPS unit works. Explain possible uses and functions including different screen views. Use a GPS unit to set a waypoint and navigate to the waypoint you have set.*

Waypoints

Although the primary purpose of a GPS device is to tell location, an equally important function is helping you get where you are going. This involves waypoints.

Waypoints are the places you want to go. When planning a cruise, you establish positions and record latitude and longitude in your deck log. These coordinates can be entered into a GPS device and stored in a bank of waypoints.

Working with waypoints provides several opportunities to make mistakes. Be sure to:

- Double-check the latitude and longitude of the waypoints on your chart.
- Enter the latitude and longitude correctly into the GPS device. Most errors in GPS input occur because of transposed numbers in the coordinates.
- Do not set exact coordinates for large objects such as range markers or beacons as waypoints. Set waypoints that provide ample clearance for safe passage around them. If you are traveling in limited visibility, you do not want to navigate directly into something.
- When underway, select the correct waypoint from the list stored in your GPS device.

When you select and activate a waypoint for navigation, GPS will compute the course bearing and distance from your current location to the waypoint; however, you must remember it does not know what lies beneath the water. You must use your chart to make sure your course is clear of obstacles that will endanger your vessel.

One waypoint you must be able to generate blindfolded is the MOB (man overboard) waypoint. Once the MOB waypoint is created, it automatically becomes the active waypoint directing you back to the place where it was activated.

Never take the precision of the GPS as a given. Satellite signals can be weakened or interrupted by the geometry of the satellites, atmospheric conditions, obstacles blocking the signal, sunspots or solar flares, and electrical interference. Good seamanship demands that your navigation is verified by all available means, including taking bearings of landmarks, beacons, lights, radar, depth sounding, and calculating the effects of set and drift due to the tide.

Able 10e. *Enter three waypoints into an electronic navigation device (i.e., GPS, chart- plotter) and navigate your vessel to each point. Demonstrate the use of the MOB function on your electronic navigation device.*

Radar

Radar, or radio detecting and ranging, is an electronic device that bounces radio energy off objects and measures the time required for the impulse to return to the point of transmission. The returning impulses are translated into a map like picture of the object on a radar scope. The image may be interpreted to provide bearings and distances of the objects.

Metal is highly reflective. Dirt is less reflective. Water does not reflect radar much at all. If you are in a bay, the water surrounding the ship will appear black. A trained radar operator, by changing the gain and other controls, can identify ships, buoys, bridges, water towers, industrial plants, and shorelines.

Maritime radars use a plan position indicator format, which means the radar display looks somewhat like a chart. Around the edge is a compass rose to allow you to take bearings. On simple radars, the bow of the boat is always at the top, and you read relative bearings. More complex systems feed the magnetic heading and variation to the radar, so it shows true north at the top. The heading of the boat is shown as a bright strobe from the center to edge. Range marks allow you to measure distances from as little as a half mile up to 20 miles.

Radar's primary use is collision avoidance, but it is very useful for fixing, as well. Fixing can be done three ways. The simplest is to take a range and bearing on a known object, note the time, and plot it on your chart. Another fix would be to take bearings on two or more known objects, and plot them just as you would visual fix bearings. Finally, you can take two or more ranges from known objects, arc off the distances with a drawing compass, and your position is where the arcs intersect.

Radio Direction Finder

This device is a radio receiver with a loop antenna that can be rotated so the direction of the transmitting station can be determined. Locations of transmitting stations are charted and marked as "radio beacons." These stations transmit designated signals at stated intervals so they can be identified.

Two or more radio beacons can produce lines of position that intersect to give the ship's position, or the ship can home in on a single beacon. Bearings so established may be subject to error due to local or atmospheric distortion. This means constant rechecking. The normal range is between 20 and 200 miles.

Automatic ID System (AIS)

AIS is a maritime navigation safety communications system that provides vessel identity, type, position, course, speed, navigational status, and other safety-related information automatically to appropriately equipped shore stations, other ships, and aircraft. With this information, it is possible to call any ship over VHF radiotelephone by name, rather than an imprecise call such as, "Ship off my starboard bow."

AIS's primary function is as a navigation tool for collision avoidance, but it is helping to improve our nation's security by increasing the U.S. Coast Guard's awareness of vessels in the maritime domain, especially vessels approaching United States ports.

America’s Boating Channel: Introducing AIS

9.4.10.4 Inertial Navigation System

An inertial navigation system (INS) is a technology used in navigation to determine an object's position, orientation, and velocity without the need for external references like landmarks or satellites. It relies on inertial sensors, typically gyroscopes and accelerometers, to continuously measure changes in velocity and orientation relative to an initial reference frame. By integrating these measurements over time, an INS can calculate the object's current position and trajectory. INS is commonly used in aircraft, ships, submarines, and spacecraft, providing accurate navigation information even in environments where GPS signals may be unavailable or unreliable.

Able 10f. *Discuss how radar is used in situational awareness and the method of taking a radar fix.*

Quartermaster 10b. *Know the methods of fixing a boat’s position in limited visibility.*

9.4.10.5 Fixing by Sounding

The depth of the water beneath a boat is one more piece of information that can be used to find a position.

Charts show depth. Soundings are often recorded in feet, but on some NOS charts, they are in meters. In very deep water, depths are shown in fathoms of 6 feet. The scale will be clearly marked on the chart.

A sounding will not usually indicate a precise position, but it can help you determine generally where you are and are not.

Electronic Depth Sounder

An electronic depth sounder determines the depth of water under a boat’s hull by measuring the time required for a transmitted sonic impulse to reach the bottom and return by echo to the boat. This instrument is called by many names—sonic depth finder, echo sounder, depth finder, depth indicator, depth meter, depth sounder, or fathometer.

A depth sounder consists of two elements, an indicator and a transducer. The transducer is a combined transmitter and receiver installed in the hull. It is small and compact. A cable inside the hull runs from the transducer to the indicator. Electronic pulses are sent and received by the transducer. A unit in the indicator times their travel and converts the result into depth (distance from the transducer to the bottom).

The Lead

Although the lead line is considered old fashioned, it comes in handy as a backup to an electronic depth sounder. It can also be useful in checking the depth about a boat that has gone aground.

The lead line is nothing more than a long length of small-diameter rope with a lead weight at one end. The line is marked at regular intervals with knots or color-coded whippings to show depth. Sometimes, a dollop of wax is affixed to the end of the lead so a sample of the bottom's consistency can be obtained.

To use a lead line, the boat must be going slow ahead. A person on the bow heaves the lead forward and lets the line run out. When the bow passes the line, the slack is pulled out until the line is vertical, and the tag closest to the water is read. Caution: Retrieve the line quickly if the engine is running so you won't foul the propeller.

9.4.10.6 Fixing in Limited Visibility

The curse of the coastal boater and the bane of oceangoing vessels is the seafarer's ancient enemy—fog. Thick weather (fog, heavy rain, snow, haze) blots out landmarks, conceals aids to navigation, and hides ships at sea in a impenetrable blanket where visibility is reduced to 100 feet or less.

In foggy conditions, which prevail when visibility is seven-tenths of a mile or less, you must know where you are. Fixing in limited visibility is best done by electronic means. The GPS is not normally affected by visibility. Radar sets will see thunderstorms but should also be able to see the normal radar returns. A radio direction finder is also useful.

9.4.11 Celestial Navigation

Celestial navigation can be defined as determining a ship's position by the observation of celestial bodies (sun, moon, planets, and stars). It is a detailed subject far beyond the scope of this text, but it is hoped that the general principles will inspire Sea Scouts to learn more about the navigator's art. While less complicated in practice than it appears in theory, celestial navigation is best learned with an instructor.

The definitive reference for celestial navigation was written by Nathaniel Bowditch. His book, The New American Practical Navigator, first published in 1802, is still carried on board every commissioned U.S. Navy vessel. It is far too complicated for the beginner; however, several excellent small books are now available with the general theme of simplified celestial navigation. Those that strip away the theory and deal with practical situations are recommended.

Celestial navigation begins with the geographical position or ground point (GP) of a celestial object. The ground point is that spot on the earth where the object is directly overhead. If we can find where we are in relation to a celestial object's ground point, we can draw a line of position. When two or more lines of position intersect, we have a fix. So, if we can draw two or more lines of position related to the ground points of two or more celestial bodies, we have a fix.

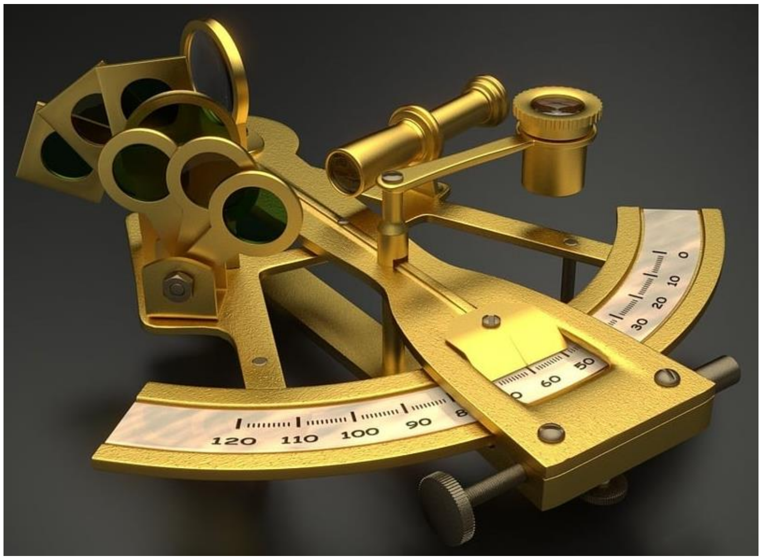
To achieve this, the navigator needs some information. First, the angular height of the celestial object above the horizon must be measured. A sextant is used for this purpose. Next, the precise time of the observation must be noted. A very accurate clock, the chronometer, gives the time to the nearest half-second. Third, the navigator must know the location of the ground point of the celestial object at the time of the observation. This is looked up in the current edition of the Nautical Almanac. Finally, the navigator uses a set of sight reduction tables (where all the heavy mathematics have been done) to compute the azimuth (direction) and altitude (a function of distance) of the celestial body. Now a line of position can be drawn. Lines of position from one or two other stars give the fix at the time of the observations.

Most navigators use prepared worksheets to enter the data and compute the results. Several factors must be considered, such as the height of the observer above the water, parallax, instrument error, etc. A good worksheet has spaces for these entries, and the navigator is not likely to forget them. Sight reduction worksheets look complicated but, with practice, are no more difficult than reconciling a checkbook. The only arithmetic involved is addition and subtraction.

9.4.11.1 The Sextant

A sextant is the instrument chiefly used in celestial navigation. It is designed for sighting two objects at the same time (the horizon and the sun, for example) and measuring the exact angle between them. It is a precision instrument shaped like a piece of pie and is held on edge with one hand while sight adjustments are made with the other.

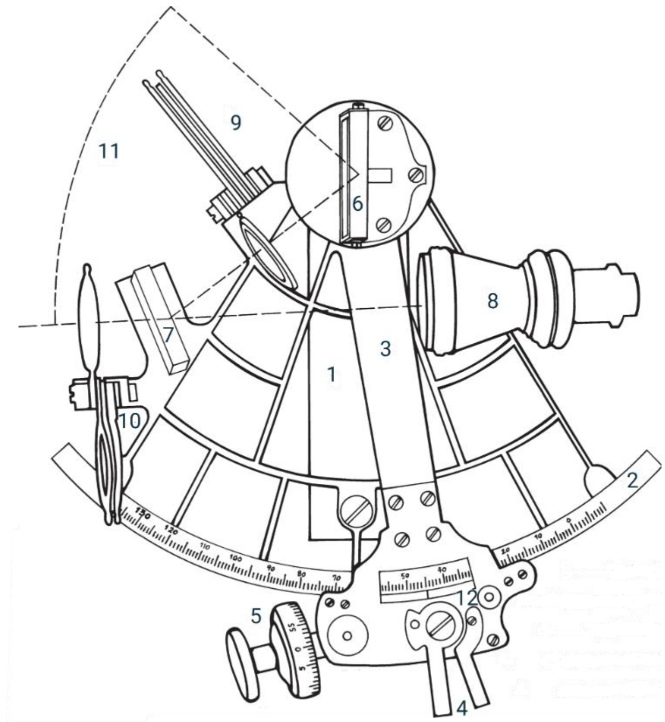
Its name—sextant—comes from its lower arc, which is one-sixth (60 degrees) of a circle. The arc is divided into degrees: minutes and 10ths are read by means of a vernier (a refinement in dividing) or a micrometer drum.



The sextant takes advantage of the principle that the angle made by the last direction of a ray of light, reflected twice in the same plane, is twice the angle made by the reflecting surfaces. That sounds complicated, but it means that the 60-degree sextant arc can measure angles up to 120 degrees.

Using a sextant takes practice. The easiest procedure for beginners is to move the index arm to zero and point the telescope to the desired celestial object. If you are observing the sun, do not forget to move one of the sunshades into position. Now, keeping the celestial object in the right-hand, silver portion of the horizon glass, move the sextant down and swing the index arm out until the horizon appears in the left-hand side of the horizon glass. Clamp the index arm and make fine adjustments with the micrometer drum or tangent screw until the split image shows the object exactly at the horizon.

1. The Frame
2. The Arc, known as the Limb
3. The Index Bar
4. Clamping Mechanism
5. Micrometer Screw
6. Index Mirror
7. Horizon Glass
8. Telescope
9. Index Shades
10. Horizon Shades
11. Measured Angle
12. Heading of Measured Angle; here 45°0



For the sun or moon, the upper or lower limb (or edge) of the object should be exactly at the horizon. For a star or planet, it should be centered on the horizon line. Now rock the sextant back and forth a few times to see that the object has been measured at its lowest point. This check will assure that the sextant is perfectly vertical. When you're satisfied with the sight, note the exact time, and read the elevation from the arc and micrometer drum or vernier scale.

Since a sextant measures angles very accurately, it has uses other than in celestial navigation. It can be used to measure distances. The height of lighthouses and other visible landmarks are listed on charts. If you measure the angle between the top and bottom of a lighthouse whose height you know, knowledge of simple trigonometry and a tangent table can give you your distance from the lighthouse (the distance equals the height divided by the tangent of the angle).

The sextant used by a professional navigator is a delicate and expensive instrument. A few plastic sextants now on the market are surprisingly accurate and modestly priced. The old-time navigator might be horrified at the notion of a plastic sextant, but they have been used successfully on several occasions by yachtsmen on round-the-world cruises. In fact, a perfectly adequate beginner's sextant can be purchased for less than the almanac and reduction tables needed to use it.

10.0 Weather and Environment

Sea Scout Manual

10.0 Weather and the Environment

Understanding and protecting the natural world is paramount for any seafarer. This chapter covers various topics such as weather patterns, marine environments and pollution, and the principles of Leave No Trace. It emphasizes the importance of protecting our environment and preserving its biodiversity for future generations while providing practical advice for handing adverse weather, how to read weather charts, and how to prepare for different weather conditions. By understanding the complex relationship between the environment and weather, Sea Scouts can become responsible stewards of the water and its surroundings while staying safe on their adventures.

10.1 Weather

Every boater must develop a sound working knowledge of weather. Gauging weather conditions and predicting change coupled with knowing how to handle a vessel in glassy calm, full gale, thick fog, drenching rain, or light breezes are vital skills for a good sailor.

10.1.1 Before Leaving the Dock

Several days before you set out on the water, start looking for the National Weather Service extended five-day outlooks on noaa.gov. The responsibility for the collection and dissemination of weather information rests primarily with the National Weather Service, National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration. The service issues regular surface weather maps of the United States that can be in sources or at noaa.gov. The latest marine weather watches, advisories, and warnings for the U.S. can be found at NOAA's nowCOAST™.

NOAA's nowCOAST

There are two types of weather you must track—weather caused by large systems and weather caused by local conditions. The National Weather Service predicts large weather patterns as well as local wind and water conditions.

The day before you leave, pay close attention to the local and marine weather forecasts. Pay attention to any small boat cautionary statements, advisories, or gale or storm warnings. Higher winds or waves now or in the future give you time to change your plans or prepare for a rougher sail and pack accordingly.

Ordinary 13. *Read and understand a local weather bulletin. Know how to obtain current marine and weather reports from the National Weather Service in your area by telephone, radio, or online.*

10.1.2 Weather Underway

Monitor smartphone apps or the NOAA Weather Radio while on the water. Weather changes may occur just over the horizon, but you can be prepared if you know they are coming your way. Forecasters cannot predict sudden strong local storms. Once underway, you need to keep a “weather eye” focused on the skies around you.

- Look for developing clouds and graying skies.
- A sudden drop in temperature and wind shift often means a storm is coming.
- Backing winds (moves counterclockwise over time) imply worsening weather.
- Heavy static on an AM radio may mean a storm is nearby.
- Listen for distant thunder; watch for lightning and rough water.
- Temperature changes in early morning or evening may cause fog.

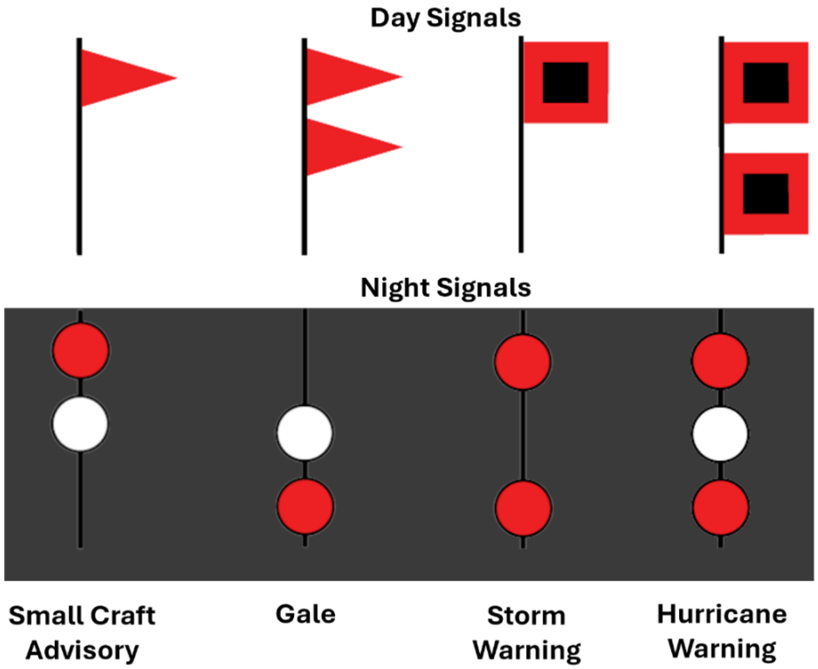
10.1.3 National Weather Service Definitions

- Small-Craft Advisory: Observed or forecast winds of 18 to 33 knots. Small-Craft Advisories may also be issued for hazardous sea conditions or lower wind speeds that may affect small-craft operations. Issued up to 12 hours ahead of conditions. (There is no legal definition of the term “small craft.”)
- Gale Warning: Observed or forecast winds of 34 to 47 knots.
- Storm Warning: Observed or forecast winds of 48 knots or greater.
- Tropical Storm Warning: Observed or forecast winds of 34 to 63 knots associated with a tropical storm.
- Hurricane Warning: Observed or forecast winds of 64 knots or higher associated with a hurricane.
- Special Marine Warning: Observed or forecast winds of 34 knots or more associated with a squall or thunderstorm and expected to last for two hours or less.

Gale Warnings, Storm Warnings, Tropical Storm Warnings, and Hurricane Warnings are issued up to 24 hours ahead of conditions.

The study of cloud appearance, wind direction (particularly as it changes) and force, visibility and its change, temperature, humidity, and changing atmospheric pressure all enable the sailor to arrive at a reasonable judgment of what conditions will be in the immediate area.

Coast Guard Warning Display Signals



10.1.4 Weather Instruments

Tools that facilitate good judgment regarding local weather conditions include the barometer, thermometer, psychrometer, anemometer, and wind vane.

10.1.4.1 Barometer

The barometer measures atmospheric pressure—the key to weather forecasting. The measurement is based on the height of a column of mercury in a tube that is sealed at one end.

The open end is down in a container of mercury. If the tube is more than 30 inches in height, the mercury in the tube will measure about that height when balanced by normal air pressure. (Normal pressure is 29.92.) Calculations are done in inches of mercury and results are yielded in both inches of mercury ranging from 27–31 and millibars. A barometer records changes in air pressure within this range on a precise scale.

A barometer of this type is precise, costly, fragile, and quite bulky. Most people rely on the aneroid barometer which is a small, thin, round metal can from which most of the air has been expelled. As atmospheric pressure increases, the two flat sides tend to move inward. When the pressure decreases, they move apart. The movement is recorded by a pointer moving over a scale calibrated to heights of a mercury column in inches and fractions, with another scale calibrated in millibars. An adjustable pointer provides a reference point from which changes may be observed.

It is important to remember that the lower the barometric pressure, the stormier the day.

Barometer

10.1.4.2 Thermometer

The thermometer is a well-known device for measuring the temperature. The Fahrenheit scale is commonly used with the freezing point of water at 32°F and the boiling point of water at 212°F at sea level. The total scale is subdivided into 180 parts or degrees. On the Celsius scale, the freezing point of water is 0°C and the boiling point is 100°C.

10.1.4.3 Psychrometer

A psychrometer is a device used to measure the relative humidity of the air. Its purpose is to determine how much moisture is present in the air compared to the maximum amount it can hold at a given temperature.

A psychrometer consists of two thermometers, one called the dry bulb thermometer and the other called the wet bulb thermometer. The dry bulb thermometer measures the ambient air temperature. It is called "dry bulb" because its bulb is not moistened. The wet bulb thermometer has its bulb covered with a wet wick or fabric sleeve. The wick is typically soaked in distilled water. As the water evaporates from the wet bulb, it causes cooling. The rate of evaporation and cooling depends on the humidity of the surrounding air. More evaporation occurs when the air is dry and less when it is already saturated with moisture.

After both thermometers have been exposed to the air for a few minutes to allow them to reach equilibrium, the difference in temperature readings between the dry bulb and wet bulb thermometers is recorded. Using tables or formulas specific to the psychrometer being used, the difference in temperature readings is used to calculate the relative humidity of the air.

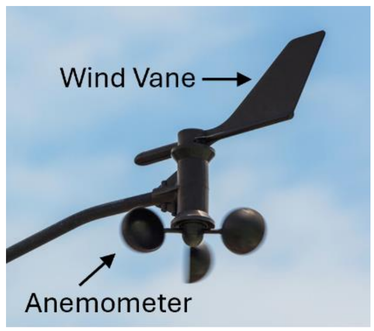
By comparing the temperature readings of the wet bulb and dry bulb thermometers and taking into account factors such as the ambient temperature, pressure, and the properties of water, the psychrometer provides a reliable measure of relative humidity.

10.1.4.4 Anemometer

The anemometer is a device for measuring wind force in statute miles per hour or in knots. It may have rotating cups with a geared wheel that measures wind speed on a dial, or it may be the tube type that measures velocity on a vertical scale according to the height a small ball rises in the tube.

10.1.4.5 Wind Vane

Knowing the direction of the wind is an important part of predicting weather because wind brings us our weather. A wind vane, sometimes called a weather vane, spins and points in the direction from which the wind is coming. It is important to understand that a wind vane only indicates the wind at its height. Wind often varies at different heights.



***Able 13**. Demonstrate your ability to read a barometer, thermometer, anemometer, and weathervane. Be familiar with the Beaufort Wind Force Scale.*

10.1.5 Weather Indexes

10.1.5.1 Beaufort Wind Force Scale

In the 18th century, naval officers made regular weather observations, but there was no standard scale and so they could be very subjective — one man's "stiff breeze" might be another's "soft breeze"—: Sir Francis Beaufort, and Irish hydrographer and officer in the British Royal Navy, succeeded in standardizing a scale in 1805. The Beaufort Wind Force Scale is a system for estimating wind speeds based on observed conditions at sea or on land.

The Beaufort Scale ranges from 0 to 12, with each number corresponding to a specific range of wind speeds and observable conditions, such as the behavior of the sea, the movement of objects, and the effect on structures. For example, Beaufort Force 0 represents calm conditions with no wind, while Beaufort Force 12 indicates hurricane-force winds.

The scale is still widely used in marine and meteorological contexts to provide a standardized way of describing wind speeds and their associated impacts, aiding in weather forecasting, navigation, and communication between meteorologists, sailors, and other professionals.

Beaufort Wind Force Scale

Beaufort Force	Miles Per Hour	Weather Bureau Term	Condition of Sea	Condition on Land
0	0-1	Light	Flat	Calm; smoke rises vertically
1	1-3	Light	Ripples without crests	Wind motion visible in smoke
2	4-7	Light	Small wavelets	Wind felt on exposed skin: leaves rustle
3	8-12	Gentle	Large wavelets	Leaves and smaller twigs in constant motion; light flags extended
4	13-18	Moderate	Small waves	Dust and loose paper rise; small branches begin to move
5	19-24	Fresh	Moderate, longer waves; some foam and spray	Smaller trees sway
6	25-31	Strong	Large waves; white foam crests; spray	Large branches in motion; umbrella use becomes difficult
7	32-38	Strong	Sea heaps up; foam begins to streak	Whole trees in motion; effort to walk against the wind
8	39-46	Gale	Moderately high waves with breaking crests forming spindrift, streaks of foam	Twigs broken from trees
9	47-54	Gale	High waves with dense foam; wave crests start to roll over; considerable spray	Light structure damage
10	55-63	Storm	Very high waves; sea surface white; considerable tumbling; visibility reduced	Trees uprooted; considerable structural damage
11	64-72	Storm	Exceptionally high waves	Widespread structural damage
12	Above 73	Hurricane	Huge waves; air filled with foam and spray; sea completely white with driving spray; visibility greatly reduced	Massive and widespread damage to structures

10.1.5.2 Heat Index

Once you have determined temperature, relative humidity, and wind direction and speed, you should consider the heat index for summer sailing. The heat index is the human-perceived equivalent temperature or how hot it feels. When the humidity is higher, evaporation is reduced, which means our bodies cannot reduce heat efficiently through perspiration.

The chart that follows establishes the caution, extreme caution, and danger levels at 40 percent humidity. A 90-degree day reaches the extreme danger level at 95 percent humidity.

Not considering the heat index can have serious effects on you and your crew.

NOAA National Weather Service Heat Index Chart

Temperature	Effects on body
80°–90°F	Caution: Fatigue is possible with prolonged exposure and activity. Continuing activity could result in heat cramps.
90°–105°F	Extreme caution: Heat cramps and heat exhaustion are possible. Continuing activity could result in heat stroke.
105°–130°F	Danger: Heat cramps and heat exhaustion are likely; heat stroke is probable with continued activity.

Note: Exposure to full sunshine can increase heat index values by up to 15 degrees. Keep an eye on your lookout on sunny days.

10.1.5.3 Wind Chill

Wind Chill Table

Wind (mph)	Temperature (°F)																	
Calm	40	35	30	25	20	15	10	5	0	-5	-10	-15	-20	-25	-30	-35	-40	-45
5	36	31	25	19	13	7	1	-5	-11	-16	-22	-28	-34	-40	-46	-52	-57	-63
10	34	27	21	15	9	3	-4	-10	-16	-22	-28	-35	-41	-47	-53	-59	-66	-72
15	32	25	19	13	6	0	-7	-13	-19	-26	-32	-39	-45	-51	-58	-64	-71	-77
20	30	24	17	11	4	-2	-9	-15	-22	-29	-35	-42	-48	-55	-61	-68	-74	-81
25	29	23	16	9	3	-4	-11	-17	-24	-31	-37	-44	-51	-58	-64	-71	-78	-84
30	28	22	15	8	1	-5	-12	-19	-26	-33	-39	-46	-53	-60	-67	-73	-80	-87
35	28	21	14	7	0	-7	-14	-21	-27	-34	-41	-48	-55	-62	-69	-76	-82	-89
40	27	20	13	6	-1	-8	-15	-22	-29	-36	-43	-50	-57	-64	-71	-78	-84	-91
45	26	19	12	5	-2	-9	-16	-23	-30	-37	-44	-51	-58	-65	-72	-79	-86	-93
50	26	19	12	4	-3	-10	-17	-24	-31	-38	-45	-52	-60	-67	-74	-81	-88	-95
55	25	18	11	4	-3	-11	-18	-25	-32	-39	-46	-54	-61	-68	-75	-82	-89	-97
60	25	17	10	3	-4	-11	-19	-26	-33	-40	-48	-55	-62	-69	-76	-84	-91	-98

Frostbite Times: 30 minutes, 10 minutes, 5 minutes

Wind Chill (°F) = $35.74 + 0.6215T - 35.75(V^{0.16}) + 0.4275T(V^{0.16})$

Where, T= Air Temperature (°F) V= Wind Speed (mph)

Effective 11/01/01

Low temperatures combined with wind give us another human-perceived equivalent temperature that is reflected by the wind chill index. Wind chill is based on the rate of heat loss from exposed skin. As the wind increases, heat is carried away from the body faster, which drives down skin temperature and eventually internal body temperature. Use the NOAA chart to prepare for the dangers of winter winds and freezing temperatures.

Sea Scout Paul Siple, an Eagle Scout, writer, and Antarctic Explorer is credited with coining the term “wind chill.”

10.1.6 Clouds

Knowledge of cloud shape and height can clue you in to important changes in the weather. There are many names and types of clouds, but a sailor only needs to concentrate on two basic shapes—cumulus and stratus. Cumulus means heap, pile, an accumulation. These clouds are puffy, and they look like masses of cotton balls. Stratus means to spread out, flatten, or cover with a layer. You never have to worry about cumulus or stratus clouds unless they are also nimbus. Nimbus means rainy cloud.

Cumulus Clouds

Stratus Clouds

Names of the specific types of clouds are created by combining the type of cloud with the height of the cloud.

Cloud Types

Cloud Group	Cloud Height	Cloud Type
Cirrus = High clouds	18,000+ feet	Cirrus, Cirrostratus, Cirrocumulus
Alto = Middle-level clouds	6,500 feet to 18,000 feet	Altostratus, Altocumulus
Stratus = Low clouds	Up to 6,500 feet	Stratus, Stratocumulus, Nimbostratus

It is not necessary for you to remember all the cloud names and formations, but there are two things to watch for that indicate a high probability of a storm.

- A “lowering ceiling” occurs when the base of the stratus clouds sinks lower and closer to the ground. A cloud resting on the ground is fog.

- Watch for cumulus clouds that are rapidly developing vertically to become cumulonimbus thunderstorm clouds. These storms develop over water on hot and humid days as radiant heat from the land absorbs moisture from nearby water which rises to produce thunderheads.

Lowering Cloud Ceiling

Cumulus Vertical Development

10.1.7 Severe Weather on the Water

10.1.7.1 Thunderstorms and Lightning

If a thunderstorm catches you while on the water, both wind and lightning are a danger to you.

- Make sure everyone is in a life jacket, reduce sail, and prepare for heavy seas.
- Make note of your location.
- Reduce speed, secure all loose objects, and cover all hatches and openings.
- Keep away from metal objects that are not grounded to the boat's protection system.
- Position yourself in the middle of the boat and get as low to the deck as possible.
- Sit away from electrical panels and electronic gear.

10.1.7.2 Waterspouts

There are two types of waterspouts—fair-weather waterspouts and tornadic water-spouts. Tornadic waterspouts form during severe thunderstorms and along the edges of frontal systems. They have the same characteristics and dangers as tornadoes over land. Fair-weather waterspouts are generally less dangerous, and they are not associated with super-cell thunderstorms. They are more akin to the dust devils that form over land.

Waterspouts are unpredictable, but signs that signal their formation are dark spots on the water, sudden shifts or increases in wind, and funnels coming from clouds overhead. Fair-weather waterspouts generally occur in coastal waters and develop in association with dark, flat-bottomed, developing cumulus clouds.

As fascinating as they are, you need to steer clear. The best way to avoid a waterspout is to move away at a 90-degree angle to its apparent line of movement.

10.2 Environment

10.2.1 Water Pollution

In 1948, Congress enacted the Federal Water Pollution Control Act to “enhance the quality and value of our water resources and to establish a national policy for the preservation, control and abatement of water pollution.” Multiple amendments have further defined the act over time.

10.2.1.1 Oil

The Federal Water Pollution Act prohibits dumping harmful quantities of oil into United States navigable waters or adjoining shorelines. All oil must be disposed of at an approved facility.

If a vessel or facility discharges oil, they must notify the U.S. Coast Guard immediately. Failure to do so is punishable by a criminal penalty of fines or up to five years in jail or both for the person in charge of the source. The owner or operator who discharges the oil is also liable for all removal costs and all claims of loss or injury to other parties.

The Environmental Protection Agency has defined harmful quantities of oil as those that violate applicable water quality standards or cause a film or sheen on the surface of the water or cause a sludge or emulsion to be deposited beneath the surface of the water or on adjoining shorelines. The law also specifies that using soap as a dispersant on an oil spill is illegal and violators can face severe state and federal fines.

Keeping an oil absorbent sponge in your bilge to soak up oil and having oil absorbent pads or rags on hand in case of a spill are good preventative measures. Be careful when changing engine oil. Wipe up any spills so the oil is not pumped overboard in bilge water.

On federally controlled waters, vessels 26 feet or longer must display a 5-by-8- inch “Discharge of Oil Prohibited” placard near the machinery space or at the bilge pump switch.

Discharge of Oil Prohibited Placard

DISCHARGE OF OIL PROHIBITED

The Federal Pollution Control Act prohibits the discharge of oil or daily waste into or upon the navigable waters of the United States or the waters of the contiguous zone, or which may affect natural resources belonging to, appertaining to, or under the exclusive management authority of the United States, if such discharge causes a film or discoloration of the surface of the water or causes sludge or emulsion beneath the surface of the water. Violators are subject to substantial civil penalties and/or criminal sanctions, including fines and imprisonment.

In case of oil discharge, call the National Response Center at 800-424-8802.

Ordinary 12a.*Discuss with an adult leader the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as related to oil discharges. Explain what a "Discharge of Oil" placard is and, if applicable, find it aboard your ship's vessels.*

10.2.1.2 Hazardous Materials

Bottom paint is made to prevent growth on your hull. Top-coat and varnish is made to resist mold and the elements. If you think about it, no paint or varnish product is environmentally safe, and all are toxic to both humans and marine life. So, when cleaning or painting your vessel, use a suspended tarp to catch spills, paint flakes, or debris that might end up in the water.

Some anti-fouling paint uses tributyltin (known commonly as TBT) because it causes abnormal development and reduced reproduction in marine life. Silicon- or Teflon-based paints are more environmentally friendly, or you can use a non-ablative (copper based) anti-fouling paint.

In general, wise boaters will minimize the use of toxic materials while the vessel is in the water and will use biodegradable and low-phosphate products whenever possible. It is a good idea to inspect fuel lines periodically and replace bad ones with USCG- approved Type A, alcohol-resistant fuel line hoses. Old antifreeze and oil need to be disposed of on shore at the proper facility.

Able 12a. *Demonstrate your knowledge of local environmental laws related to the proper storage, disposal, and cleanup of maritime coating materials, fuels, and other environmentally sensitive materials.*

10.2.1.3 Plastics and Garbage

It is true that most of the garbage floating around in our water or obscuring our shorelines made its way there through street gutters and storm drains flowing into local streams, creeks, and bayous. The garbage looks bad and is deadly to wildlife and dangerous for boaters. Plastic items foul propellers and clog engine intake systems causing disabled vessels, expensive repairs, and lost time.

The International Treaty to Prevent Pollution from Ships (MARPOL) was created to address plastic pollution. Besides prohibiting the dumping of plastics, the law also restricts dumping of other vessel-generated garbage at sea, including paper, glass, metal, and food wastes.

The MARPOL treaty requires that vessel of 26 feet or longer must prominently display a placard for all crew and passengers to read.

Vessels 40 feet and over that are equipped with berthing and a galley must have a written waste management plan that includes instructions for discharging sewage and hazardous substances; discharging garbage and other food waste; disposing of plastics, bottles, and cans; and advising the captain in case of oily discharges or diesel spills. The same law requires marinas to have adequate trash receiving capability for their normal customers.

Violations of any of the regulations are liable for a civil penalty of up to $25,000 for each violation and criminal penalties of up to $50,000 and/or imprisonment for up to five years.

MARPOL Placard

***Able 12b.** Discuss with an adult leader the dumping of garbage in the marine environment. Review the contents of the MARPOL placard and locate it aboard your ship's vessels.*

10.2.1.4 Sewage

As boaters, it is our legal responsibility to help protect the aquatic environment. One of the largest environmental problems is caused by sewage discharged from vessels, especially in shallow bays and inlets.

Sewage must be treated properly before disposal. If your boat has an installed toilet, it must have an operable marine sanitation device on board and be designed to prevent discharge into the water.

All installed MSDs must be U.S. Coast Guard certified. Types I and II treat waste with special chemicals to kill bacteria. These devices must have the “Y” valve secured so it cannot be opened when the vessel is on waters (fresh water, within 3 miles of the coast, etc.) where sewage cannot be dumped overboard.

Type III MSDs provide no sewage treatment and are either portable toilets or holding tanks. Collected waste is taken ashore and disposed of at a pump-out station or onshore toilet.

***Quartermaster 12a**. Discuss the three types of marine sanitation devices (MSD) and the laws governing sewage discharge.*

10.2.1.5 Gray Water

When you wash your hands or dishes, take a shower, or even brush your teeth on a boat, you produce gray water. Gray water is problematic to our aquatic environment because of the soaps and detergents that are used. Even those labeled as biodegradable contain substances that are harmful to some marine life.

To reduce the gray water onboard, use shore-side showers, dishwashing stations, and laundry facilities whenever possible. Check product labels and use low-nitrogen and low-phosphorous detergents onboard, and when using cleaning products, use more “elbow grease” than cleaning product.

***Quartermaster 12b.** Explain what gray water is and how it should be handled in your boating area.*

10.2.2 Aquatic Nuisance Species

Aquatic nuisance species are waterborne, non-native organisms that threaten the diversity or abundance of native species and the ecological stability of affected waters, or threaten a commercial, agricultural, aquacultural, or recreational activity. These nuisance species typically do not have predators and quickly outcompete native species for space and food.

ANS hiding in ballast water in oceangoing vessels, and the importation of tropical fish that are intentionally or accidentally released, cause potential ecosystem disaster.

Once here, the aquatic nuisance species use us to get around. They hide in our clothing, boats, and the equipment we use in the water. When boats are moved from one waterway to another, the organisms get a free ride on trailers.

ANS have caused reductions in game fish populations, have clogged some lakes and rivers with excessive vegetation, and some have caused damage to boats. However, you can help limit their spread. First, you need to learn to identify the ANS in your area. When you see them, you need to report them to your state's natural resources agency.

Live wells, bilge water, transom wells, and the motor need to be drained at the ramp or access, and any visible organisms need to be removed from your boat, trailer, vehicle, and other equipment before leaving any body of water. Get rid of unwanted bait on land or in the trash. Never release live bait into the water. Clean all equipment, clothing, and footwear, and do your best to eliminate ANS hitchhikers.

Ordinary 12b. *Explain what aquatic nuisance species are and how you can help stop their spread.*

10.2.3 Air Pollution

Fuel-efficient boating practices that reduce fuel consumption will prevent unnecessary pollution. Techniques will vary based on the type of vessel your ship uses, but practices include controlling speed, maintaining your engine, and avoiding unnecessary idling. Connecting to shore power or utilizing batteries, solar, or other power sources can help your vessel minimize idling.

10.2.4 Aquatic Habitats

10.2.4.1 Seabed and Anchoring

Anchoring can damage sensitive seagrass beds and coral reefs. To reduce your impact, you should use mooring balls or boat slips whenever available, and anchor in sandy areas away from fragile habitats.

10.2.4.2 Shoreline Erosion and Wakes

Boat wakes can erode shorelines and disturb aquatic habitats, care should be taken to reduce your speed near shore and avoid shallow areas or sensitive habitats.

10.3 Leave No Trace

As Sea Scouts, we have a special connection to the water and its surroundings. We are passionate about exploring and enjoying these natural resources, but with this privilege comes a responsibility to preserve them for future generations. That's where Leave No Trace comes in - an outdoor ethics program that helps us minimize our impact on the environment and protect the places we love.

The Leave No Trace program consists of seven principles that guide us in our outdoor activities.

1. **Plan Ahead and Prepare**
   Before setting out on a trip, it's important to do your research and plan accordingly. This includes checking weather forecasts, tide tables, and other important information that can help you prepare for the conditions you'll encounter. By packing

the right gear, food, and water, you'll be better equipped to handle any situation and minimize your impact on the environment.

2. **Travel and Camp on Durable Surfaces**
   When setting up camp or exploring the shoreline, it's important to choose a durable surface that can handle foot traffic and other impacts. Avoid fragile ecosystems, such as coral reefs and seagrass beds, which are easily damaged by human activity. Stick to established trails and campsites whenever possible, and avoid creating new ones that can damage the surrounding environment.
3. **Dispose of Waste Properly**
   As Sea Scouts, we have a responsibility to properly dispose of all waste generated during our trips, including trash, food waste, and human waste. Carry out all trash and dispose of it in proper receptacles or pack it out if there are no trash facilities available. When using the restroom, use established facilities when possible, and if not, dig a small hole at least 200 feet from any water sources and bury your waste.
4. **Leave What You Find**
   The water and its surroundings are home to a variety of plants and animals that rely on their natural habitats to survive. As Sea Scouts, we must respect these ecosystems and leave them as we found them. This means avoiding the temptation to take home souvenirs or disturb natural features such as rocks, shells, and other geological formations.
5. **Minimize Campfire Impact**
   Campfires are a popular activity during overnight trips, but they can also have a significant impact on the environment if not managed properly. When building a campfire, use established fire rings or build a mound fire, and keep the fire small to minimize the impact on the surrounding environment. Use only dead and downed wood and make sure the fire is completely extinguished before leaving the area.
6. **Respect Wildlife**
   The water and its surroundings are home to a diverse range of wildlife, from birds and fish to marine mammals and crustaceans. As Sea Scouts, it is important to respect these creatures and avoid disturbing their natural habitats. Keep a safe distance from wildlife and observe from a distance. Never feed wildlife or leave food out in the open that can attract them to your campsite.
7. **Be Considerate of Other Visitors**
   We must be considerate of other visitors who share our love of the water and its surroundings. Respect other people's privacy and avoid making loud noises or disturbing others during quiet hours. Share trails and campsites with others and be mindful of the impact your activities may have on their experience.

The Leave No Trace program is a vital part of being a responsible Sea Scout. By following these principles, we can minimize our impact on the environment and preserve the natural beauty of our oceans, lakes, and waterways for future generations to enjoy. Let's do our part to protect these precious resources and show the world what it means to be a Sea Scout.

Leave No Trace Resources

11.0 Our Commitment to Safety

Sea Scout Manual

11.0 Our Commitment to Safety

In all Scouting programs, we will not compromise the safety of our youth, volunteers, and employees. Safety is a ***value*** that must be taught and reinforced at every opportunity. We are all responsible and must hold each other accountable to provide a safe environment for all participants.

We are committed to abuse prevention by utilizing:

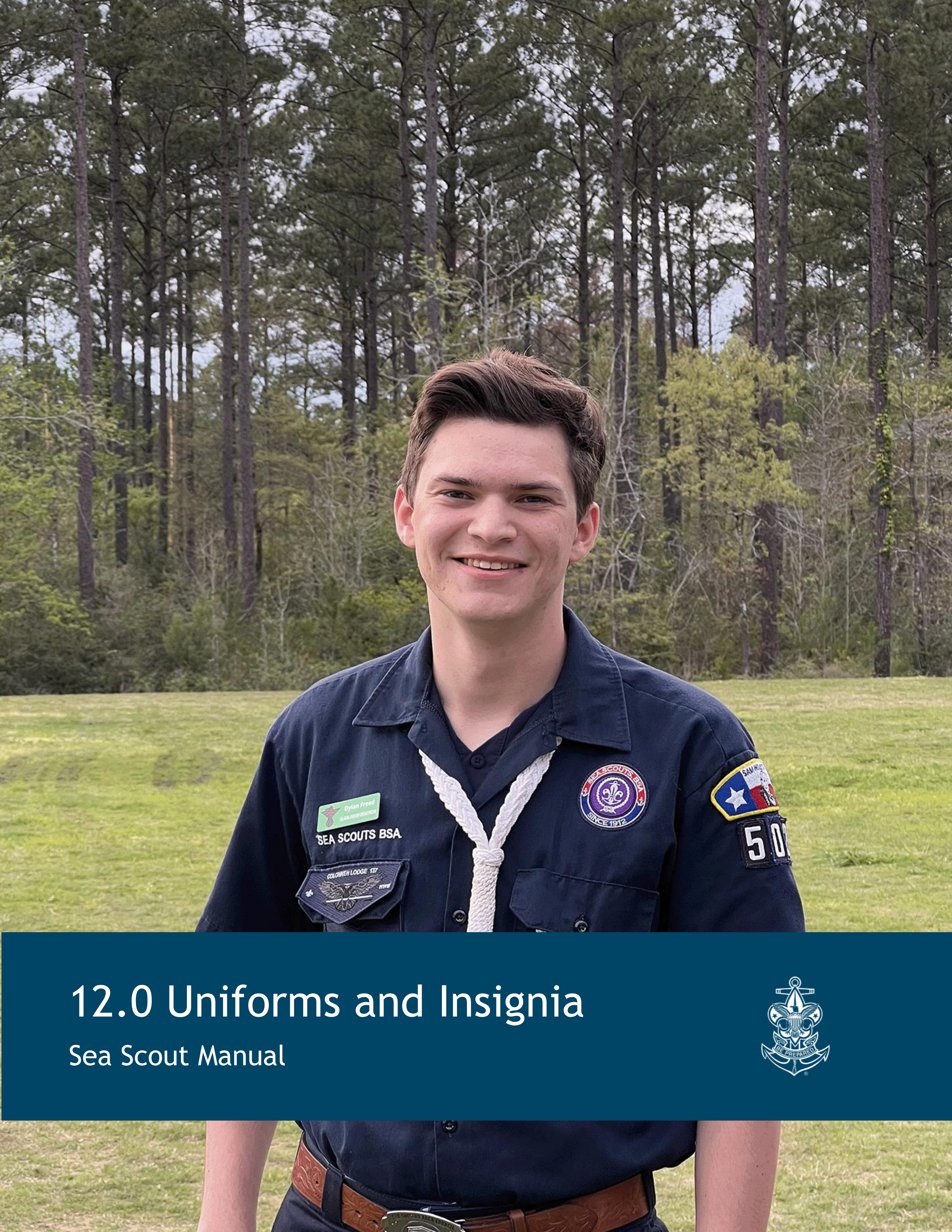
- Mandatory youth protection training.
- Criminal background checks.
- Banning one-on-one adult and youth interactions.
- Mandatory reporting of suspected abuse to law enforcement.
- A volunteer screening database.

We are committed to injury and illness prevention by integrating safety measures in our handbooks, literature, and training materials including the ***Guide to Safe Scouting***. We expect leaders to use the four points of **SAFE** when delivering the program. **SAFE** Scouting measures include:

- Youth are **Supervised** by qualified and trustworthy adults who set the example for safety.
- Activities are **Assessed** for risks.
- Pre-requisite **Fitness** and **skill** levels are confirmed before participation.
- Appropriate **Equipment** is utilized and **Environmental** conditions are monitored.

When incidents do occur, we expect a timely, clear, and complete incident report. We are committed to learning from the data and modifying program guidance for the prevention of future occurrence.

Apprentice 1e. *With other Sea Scouts, friends or family members, complete the Personal Safety Awareness Training for Scouting America's Older Youth Programs led by an adult leader or designee.*



12.0 Uniforms and Insignia

Sea Scout Manual

12.0 Uniforms and Insignia

The Sea Scout uniform is worn in accordance with the official policy of Scouting America: "Uniforms help to create a sense of belonging. They symbolize character development, leadership, citizenship training, and personal fitness. Wearing a uniform gives youth and adult members a sense of identification and commitment." Uniforms provide program recognition and acknowledge personal equality, identification, achievement, and personal commitment.

Always keep in mind that your actions while in uniform reflect upon the reputation of all Sea Scouts. Always do the right thing. Keep your uniform in good condition, clean and neat with badges and insignia properly placed.

The official Sea Scout uniform is designed to make it easy for members to outfit themselves in a Sea Scout uniform. This universal uniform is worn by all youth and adult ship members and serves as both a dress uniform and a work uniform. It is equivalent to the Scouting America field uniform.

For the latest updates on the official Sea Scout uniform visit https://seascout.org/uniforming.

12.1 Sea Scout Uniform Components

- Navy blue ballcap, No.618623, with “SEA SCOUTS” and the Sea Scout anchor embroidered in white
- Dark navy-blue shirt; similar to Dickies No.1574DN or No. FS574DN, color DN, dark navy
- Dark navy-blue pants; similar to Dickies No.874DN or No. 774DN, color DN, dark navy
- Dark navy-blue crew-neck T-shirt
- Black web belt and buckle with Sea Scout logo, No.618624
- Black plain-toe shoes and black socks or activity footwear and socks (of any color) such as boat shoes, hiking boots, or athletic shoes
- Optional Neckerchiefs (unit option)
    - Youth and adults may wear No. 618625; black triangular design (unit option)
    - The "tar flap" design, No. 618626, is reserved for youth only (unit option)
    - In keeping with the Guide to Awards and Insignia, youth and adults may wear other neckerchiefs including Wood Badge neckerchiefs and council-approved custom triangular unit neckerchiefs (unit option). This applies only to triangular neckerchiefs; the “tar-flap” design, No. 618626, may not be altered or imitated.

Apprentice 2b. Obtain a Sea Scout uniform. Describe the Sea Scout uniform. Tell how and when to wear the uniform.

12.2 Uniform Specifics and Tips

Youth leaders and adult leaders should always set an example regarding standardization of the uniform.

- Different activities may require different clothing. The ship should designate appropriate attire for each activity, for example, a ship T-shirt or polo shirt. The design for a ship T-shirt or polo shirt should include the words “Sea Scouts” and/or the Sea Scout logo to identify the wearer as a member of the Sea Scouts.
- “Unit option” means that all the members of a unit wear the optional item; or none of the members wear the optional item; no mixing. This is based upon a unit decision.
- Remove all manufacturers labels and marks that show on the outside of the garment. Matching shorts, or cargo shorts, maybe worn.
- The metal belt tab abuts the buckle. Adjust the length of the belt from the “cut” end.
- An official leather belt with buckle may be worn.
- Custom dark navy blue ship ball caps may be worn (unit option). Custom event caps may be worn during the event.
- Caps are worn with plain bills; no oak leaf clusters or “scrambled eggs.”

Badges, awards, and insignia are generally worn similarly to other Scouting America uniforms, but here are a few specifics for the Sea Scout uniform:

- A custom ship patch may be worn in place of the Universal Sea Scout emblem on the right sleeve. The recommended style for a custom ship patch is 2½ inches round. The custom ship patch must be less than 3 inches in any dimension and must be in keeping with Scouting America's standards.
- As an alternative to the Sea Scouts strip, the words "SEA SCOUTS," in block style letters 3/8 of an inch high, may be embroidered in white directly on the garment. The bottom of the lettering is positioned 1/2 of an inch above the right pocket.
- A nametag may be worn immediately above the Sea Scouts strip (individual option). The nametag must be black with white lettering.
- Up to six knots, in two rows of three, may be worn.
- Sea Scout uniforms are generally worn with limited insignia to help maintain a sharp appearance. However, any official insignia may be worn with the Sea Scout uniform, in accordance with the Guide to Awards and Insignia.

Personal grooming says a lot about the pride you take in your appearance in uniform. For example, when in uniform, you may want to keep your hair and facial hair neatly trimmed.

12.3 Insignia Placement Details

Wear only authorized awards and insignia in accordance with the Guide to Awards and Insignia.

Required insignia: U.S. flag; Universal Sea Scout emblem (or custom ship patch); Sea Scouts strip; council strip; ship number; and World Crest.

Right sleeve -The U.S. flag is centered at the shoulder seam. The Universal Sea Scout emblem or custom ship patch is centered 1 inch below the U.S. flag. The National Flagship Award or the National Flagship Fleet Award patch is centered 1 inch below the Universal Sea Scout emblem or custom ship patch.

⚠ On very short sleeves, the badge spacing may be reduced to fit the badges.

Left sleeve -The council emblem is centered at the shoulder seam. The ship number is positioned immediately below the council emblem. The badge of office is centered immediately below the ship number; with the Trained Strip immediately below it; and the Long Cruise badge ½ inch below that. Arcs represent subsequent awards and encircle the badge. The first red arc is positioned at the top of the badge; second at the right; third left; fourth bottom; then start over with a white arc representing five subsequent awards at the top; and so on. If there is insufficient room for the Long Cruise Badge, it may be worn on the right pocket.

Right pocket -The Sea Scouts strip is placed immediately above the pocket. The optional nametag is worn above the Sea Scouts strip. The Seabadge insignia is worn centered ⅜ of an inch above the Sea Scouts strip or nametag.

Left Pocket - The World Crest is centered over the pocket halfway between the top of the pocket and the top of the shoulder. Up to six knots maybe worn immediately over the pocket in two rows of three. Suspended medals are worn no more than five at a time, pinned in a single row immediately above the pocket. Medals are worn for bridges of honor and formal occasions. Youth wear the badge of rank centered on the left pocket. Youth wear bar awards (Small-Boat Handler and Qualified Seaman) centered ⅜ of an inch below the pocket.

12.4 Uniform Sources

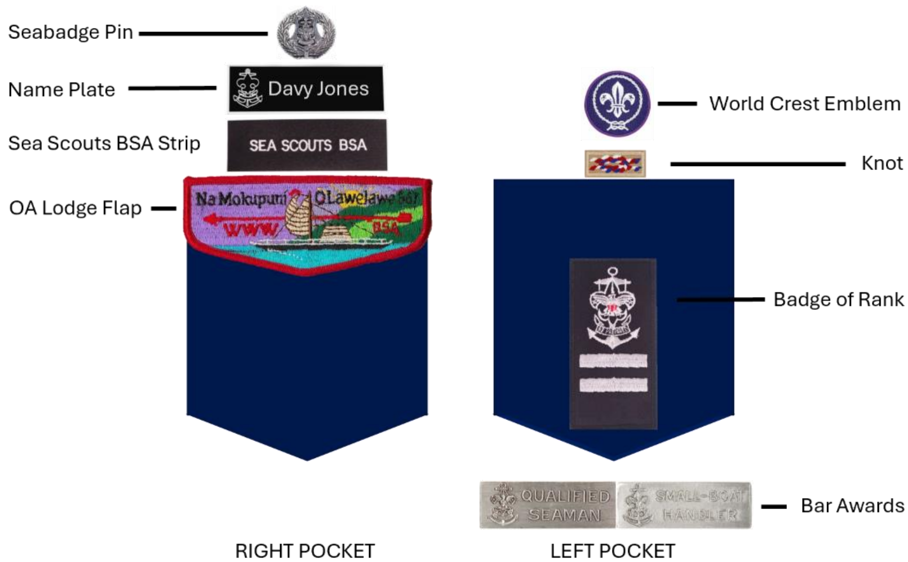
The official Sea Scout uniform can be purchased at stores or websites specializing in work clothing such as Dickies. Information on sources for official uniform garments can be found at Uniforms and Accessories.

Badges and insignia are available from ScoutShop.org or your local Scout shop.

12.5 Insignia Placement Guide

Sleeve Patch Placement

Pocket Patch Placement



Optional “Tar Flap” Neckerchief

12.6 Sea Scout Required Insignia

U.S. Flag Emblem

Cloth, No. 103

BSA Program Strip

Black cloth, No. 641602

Council Shoulder Patch

Available in council Scout shops

World Crest

Cloth, No. 143

Unit Number

Black cloth, Nos. 641604-641612

Universal Sea Scout Emblem Or Custom Ship Patch

Black cloth, No. 641601

12.7 Sea Scout Youth Insignia and Awards

Apprentice Rank

Black cloth,
No. 641603

Ordinary Rank

Black cloth,
No. 648583

Able Rank

Black cloth,
No. 648584

Quartermaster Rank

No. 616989,

Small Boat Handler Bar

No. 4052

Qualified Seaman Bar

No. 4053

Quartermaster Award

Medal,
No. 14119

Knot,
No. 633337

12.8 Sea Scout Youth Badges of Office

No. 621904

No. 621903

No. 621912

No. 621901

No. 639092

No. 621910

No. 621917

No. 621908

No. 621902

No. 621916

No. 621905

12.9 Sea Scout Youth and Adult Awards and Insignia

Long Cruise Badge


No. 648391

Long Cruise Arc


No. 648393

Long Cruise Arc


No. 648392

Sea Scout Trained Emblem

No. 639675

Sea Scout Leadership Award

Council

No. 636183

Territory

No. 636185

National

No. 636186

Sea Scout Leadership Award Knot

No. 14220

National Flagship

12.10 Sea Scout Adult Badges of Office

No. 621915

No. 621909

No. 621913

No. 621914

No. 635892

No. 639091

No. 621907

12.11 Sea Scout Adult Awards and Insignia

Seabadge Pin

No. 4097

Sea Scout Leader Device

No. 931

Scouter's Training Award

Medal, No. 922

Knot, No. 5008

Skipper's Key

Medal,
No. 616990

Knot, No. 5006

Finley Award
(Community Organization Award)

Restricted

Knot, No. 613864

12.12 Sea Scout Uniform Accessories

Sea Scout Cap

No. 618623

Sea Scout Triangular Neckerchief

No. 618625

Sea Scout Tar Flap Neckerchief

No. 618626
Youth only

Sea Scout Belt and Buckle

No. 618624

Sea Scout Name Tag

No. 639829

12.13 Sea Scout Insignia Notes

- Locally developed recognitions are not authorized elements of the official Sea Scout uniform.
- Some vendors produce unofficial insignia to meet local demand. However, these insignia are not authorized elements of the official Sea Scout uniform.
- Embroidered representations of metal pins may be worn.

13.0 Advancement

Sea Scout Manual

13.0 Advancement

Advancement can be a source of personal pride and a measure of your success in Scouting. Advancement is a measure of your nautical knowledge and your performance as a leader. This unit of measure is called rank. If you apply to a U.S. military academy, you will be given special consideration if you are a Sea Scout Quartermaster or Eagle Scout.

13.1 Advancement Paths

There are many opportunities for advancement in Sea Scouts. Included are the trails to Eagle and Quartermaster. Each of these trails is a highlight experience, but each requires the Sea Scout to set their own goals and follow through to achievement. The requirements for advancement were designed by Sea Scout youth to establish standards of performance for all Sea Scouts. It's up to you to measure up.

13.1.1 Reviewing Procedure

Your Skipper will hold a Skipper's conference with you during which they will assess whether you are ready to advance in rank. If you and your Skipper agree that you are ready to advance, your request for a board of review will be forwarded to your ship's youth leadership. If the board approves, the ship's advancement chair notifies the local council service center and secures the necessary badge.

When working towards the Quartermaster Rank, Sea Scouts must use the Quartermaster Leadership Service Project Workbook, No. 420-011, and get the required approvals before beginning their Quartermaster project. You will also have to fill out the Quartermaster Application, No. 420-015, and give it to your Skipper.

Eagle Scout or Quartermaster Award applications must also be approved by the ship committee and the district or council advancement committee.

Following this, an Eagle or Quartermaster application is forwarded to the National Council. If your application is not approved, the Skipper will return it to you and explain what is lacking. You can make corrections so you can resubmit your application later.

The Guide to Advancement, No. 33088 is the official source for administering all advancement. Refer to it for additional details on advancement procedure.

13.1.2 Bridge of Honor

As soon as possible after an application has been reviewed and approved, it should be forwarded through the proper channels. The badge is secured and then presented at a ceremony soon after it has been earned.

A bridge of honor is the ideal occasion for presenting awards. Traditionally, a bridge of honor is held in connection with a social affair. Although this is a good idea, it does not always have to be done this way.

It is important that each Sea Scout gets their award as soon as possible. Sometimes there is an unavoidable delay between the date of approval and the bridge of honor. If this is the case, the award may be presented informally at a ship meeting and then presented again formally at your next bridge of honor.

13.1.3 The Eagle Scout Award

Eagle Scout is a recognition for youth in Scouting America troops; however, if you have attained the First Class rank in a troop, a Sea Scout may continue to work toward the Eagle Scout Award through age 17 by meeting the requirements described in the Scouting America Handbook. Leadership requirements may be met in the ship as boatswain, boatswain's mate, yeoman, purser, storekeeper, crew leader, media specialist, specialist, den chief, or chaplain aide.

Eagle
Award


Quartermaster
Award

13.1.4 The Quartermaster Award

Quartermaster rank is the highest award in Sea Scouts and is as important as the Eagle Scout Award. It results from a young adult's determination to reach a goal he or she has set and achieved despite difficulties along the way.

The award is rich in symbolism. The Carrick bend represents an ability to hold fast to our ideals. The blue ribbon stands for loyalty to country. The compass suggests the importance of carefully choosing our direction in life. The wheel reminds us that we are the guides of our own future and that we must persevere with self-discipline. Scouting America's badge—the emblem of a purposeful bond—has challenged and strengthened the lives of more than 40 million people. It represents Sea Scouts as an important part of the Scouting tradition. The anchor reminds us that a truly worthy life must be anchored in duty to God.

This badge of color, beauty, and symbolism, but most of all, of challenge, awaits every Sea Scout who has the determination to achieve excellence.

13.1.5 After Achieving Quartermaster

To a Sea Scout who has earned the Quartermaster Award, it may appear that there are no further achievements to be attained. True, there is no higher rank, but this does not mean the Quartermaster has no future challenges, no work to be done. Thomas J. Keane, former National Sea Scout Director, stated that the Quartermaster "is on the threshold of a great adventure. The ship on which he is about to embark is God's greatest gift—life. Fortified by the Scouting experience, the Quartermaster plots course, sets sails, stands by the wheel, and whether the winds be fair or foul, looks forward to a happy and successful voyage."

13.2 Scoutbook Advancement Record

From the first knot tied to final hours of service performed, Scoutbook tracks advancement, achievements, and service all in one place. Scoutbook is an online tool and the official advancement reporting system for all programs in Scouting America.

Apprentice Insignia

Ordinary Insignia

Able Insignia

Quartermaster Insignia

13.3 Sea Scout Advancement Requirements

Reference materials such as U.S. Coast Guard navigation rules, World Sailing Rules, International Code of Signals, and others change frequently. They are available online and should be regularly referenced.

13.3.1 Apprentice

Striving for Apprentice rank, active Sea Scouts learn ideals, courtesies, procedures, and responsibilities, and how members of a ship are organized and uniformed. Basic swimming and beginning seamanship skills are required, as is knowledge of safety, emergency procedures, and Safe Swim Defense. Service hours in ship projects, activities, equipment maintenance or in the community fill out the requirements.

1. **Ideals**
    a. Qualify as a member of your Sea Scout ship by taking part in the ship's admission ceremony.
    b. Repeat from memory and discuss with an adult leader, an Able Scout, or a Quartermaster Scout the Scout Oath and Law and the Sea Promise and agree to carry out the provisions of your ship's code and bylaws.
    c. Demonstrate acceptable courtesies used aboard a Sea Scout vessel.
    d. Demonstrate the proper procedure for boarding a Sea Scout vessel and landship.
    e. With other Sea Scouts, friends or family members, complete the Personal Safety Awareness Training for Scouting America's Older Youth Programs led by an adult leader or designee. The adult conducting the program should follow the program guidelines found in https://seascout.org/program-toolbox/to complete this requirement.

2. **Active Membership**
    a. Provide evidence that you are fulfilling your financial obligations to your ship, including helping with fundraisers.
    b. Obtain a Sea Scout uniform. Describe the Sea Scout uniform. Tell how and when to wear the uniform.
    c. Meet your ship's bylaws requirement for active participation in your ship's meetings and activities for three months.

3. **Leadership**
    a. Describe your ship's organization, including the youth and adult leadership positions.
    b. Demonstrate your ability to identify insignia of youth and adult leadership positions. Explain the chain of command in your ship.

4. **Swimming**
    a. Demonstrate your ability to swim by doing one of the following: Jump feet first into water over your head, swim 75 yards/meters in a strong manner using one or more of the following strokes: sidestroke, breaststroke, trudgen, or crawl; then swim 25 yards/meters using the elementary backstroke. The 100 yards/meters must be swum continuously and include at least one sharp turn. After completing the swim, rest by floating on your back, remaining as motionless as possible.

b. Discuss Scouting America's Safe Swim Defense plan and explain how it is used to protect Sea Scouts and other groups during swimming activities.

5. Safety

a. Explain the uses, advantages, and disadvantages of the various types of Coast Guard–approved life jackets. Demonstrate the proper use and care of life jackets used by your ship. Discuss your state's boating laws as they relate to life jacket wear.

b. Identify visual day and night marine distress signals and know their location and the proper use for your ship's vessel(s).

   -OR-

   Know and demonstrate basic hand, paddle, and whistle signals commonly used on paddlecraft trips.

c. Use the Distress Communications Form to demonstrate the procedure to send the following VHF emergency messages: Mayday, Pan Pan, and Security.

d. Know the safety rules that apply to vessels and equipment used by your ship, and safety standards in the use of power tools, machinery, lifting heavy objects, and other safety devices used by your ship.

   -OR-

   Obtain and discuss with your leader or designee, your state's paddlecraft safety rules for the craft most frequently used by your ship.

e. Obtain a current copy of the U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary (USCG AUX) or America's Boating Club (ABC) Vessel Safety Check (VSC) Form online. With an approved Vessel Examiner or an experienced adult leader, perform a VSC on the vessel(s) in use by your ship. Additionally, obtain, or create your own, USCG "IF FOUND" sticker(s). Complete the contact information and place it on the vessel(s) used by your ship. If your ship's vessel(s) already displays an "IF FOUND" sticker, verify the contact information is still correct. If not, correct it.

6. Marlinspike Seamanship

a. Using both large and small lines, tie and explain the use of the following knots: overhand, square, figure eight, bowline, two half hitches, clove hitch, sheet bend, and cleat hitch.

7. Boat Handling

a. Name the principal parts of a typical sailboat, runabout, canoe, kayak, SUP, and raft.

b. Describe the identifying characteristics of:
   i. A sloop, ketch, yawl, cutter, and schooner
   ii. An open motorboat and cabin motorboat
   iii. A touring canoe and whitewater canoe
   iv. A whitewater kayak and sea kayak
   v. Oar frame raft and a paddle raft

c. Demonstrate the ability to use a heaving line.

   -OR-

   While on land, demonstrate the ability to throw a rescue throw bag and hit a four-foot-wide target 30 feet (10 meters) away. Then, without hesitation, retrieve the line, and immediately throw it as a coil, and hit a four-foot-wide target 21 feet (seven meters) away. Finally, retrieve the line and re-stuff the bag.

8. **Service**
    a. Log at least eight hours of work on ship equipment, projects, or activities other than regular ship meetings, parties, dances, or fun events.
    b. Participate with your ship for at least eight hours in community service projects. Note: Arrange for this work through the ship's officers.

13.3.2 Ordinary

Active Sea Scouts attain Ordinary rank through additional service, knowledge of the Sea Scout emblem, U.S. flag etiquette, and land and sea protocols. Successful candidates will participate in strengthening ship membership, serve as an event chair, complete quarterdeck training, pass the Swimming merit badge requirements, and qualify on various safety and emergency procedures, drills, communication methods, and Safety Afloat. They learn about the galley, build on seamanship and boat-handling skills, and learn about anchoring, piloting and navigation, and related regulations. Overnight cruise planning and participation provides for application of skills, and completing additional electives broadens horizons.

1. **Ideals**
    a. Explain the symbolism of the Sea Scout emblem.
    b. Give a brief oral history of the U.S. flag.
    c. Demonstrate how to fly, hoist, lower, fold, display and salute the U.S. flag. Explain flag etiquette and protocols for both land and sea.
    d. Discuss with an adult leader how you live the Scout Oath and Law in your daily life.

2. **Active Membership**
    a. Meet your ship's bylaws requirement for active participation in your ship's meetings and activities for three months.
    b. Do one of the following. Recruit a new member for your ship and follow through until the new member is registered and formally admitted with an admissions ceremony or assist in planning and carrying out a ship recruiting activity, such as an open house or joint activity with a youth group or organization (another Sea Scout ship will not count).

3. **Leadership**
    a. Participate in the Scouting America's Introduction to Leadership Skills for Ships (ILSS) course.
    b. Complete quarterdeck training, either as an officer or as a prospective officer.
    c. Serve as an activity chair for a major ship event. Responsibilities should include planning, directing, and evaluating the event.

4. **Swimming**
    a. Pass all requirements for the Scouting America's Swimming merit badge.

5. **Safety**
    a. Discuss Scouting America's Safety Afloat with an adult leader or a Quartermaster candidate.
    b. Describe the safety equipment required by law for your ship's primary vessel.
    c. For larger vessels that require a crew, develop a ship's station bill for your ship and review it with an adult leader.

-OR-

For smaller vessels with only one or two people aboard, develop a roster of attendees for your ship's next float trip. Identify lead and sweep boats. Note which boats are carrying rescue and first aid equipment, the trip roster, and medical forms. Review the roster with an adult leader.

d. Plan and practice the following drills: man overboard, fire, and abandon ship.

   -OR-

   If your ship uses small vessels such as small sailboats or paddlecraft, plan and practice man overboard drills (if appropriate), capsize drills, and deep water re-entries.

e. Describe any three types of equipment used in marine communications.

f. Demonstrate proficiency with the communication devices used on your ship's primary vessel.

g. Galley

   i. Before an activity, submit a menu that uses cooked and uncooked dishes, a list of provisions, and estimated costs for a day's meal (breakfast, lunch, and dinner). Once the provision list is approved, help obtain the items on the list.

   ii. Explain the use of charcoal, isobutane, white gas, and propane. Include safety precautions for each.

   iii. Prepare breakfast, lunch, and dinner while on the activity. Demonstrate your ability to properly use the galley equipment or personal cooking gear generally used by your ship. If your vessel does not have a galley space, these may be done ashore.

   iv. Demonstrate appropriate sanitation techniques for food preparation and meal cleanup.

6. Marlinspike Seamanship

a. Name the various materials used to manufacture rope, the advantages and disadvantages of each, and the characteristics of laid and braided rope. Discuss the meaning of lay, thread, strand, and hawser. Explain how rope is sized and measured.

b. Using both large and small lines, tie and explain the use of the following knots: stevedore's knot, French (double) bowline, bowline on a bight, timber hitch, rolling hitch, marline hitch, midshipman's (taut-line) hitch, and trucker's hitch.

c. Demonstrate your ability to secure a line to pilings, cleats, and rings, and to coil, flake, and Flemish a line.

d. Demonstrate how to cut and heat-seal a synthetic line and whip the end of plain-laid line using waxed cord or similar material.

7. Boat Handling

a. Name the principal parts of the masts, booms, spars, standing and running rigging, and sails of a gaff- or Marconi-rigged sloop, schooner, and ketch or yawl.

b. Demonstrate your ability to handle a vessel with paddles or oars by doing one of the following: Safely board a rowboat and row in a straight line for 200 feet, stop, make a pivot turn, return to the starting point, and backwater in a straight line for 40 feet. Make a turn and return to the starting point.

   -OR-

Safely board a canoe, kayak, or paddleboard and paddle a straight line for 200 feet. Make a turn and return to the starting point and backwater in a straight line for 40 feet. Demonstrate a draw stroke to move the boat sideways both right and left, and forward and reverse sweeps to spin the boat both clockwise and counterclockwise.

8. Ground Tackle

a. Name the parts of a stock anchor and a stockless anchor.
b. Describe five types of anchors. Describe how each type holds the bottom, the kind of bottom in which it holds best, and the advantages or disadvantages of each type. Discuss the challenges of using an anchor with paddlecraft compared to larger vessels.
c. Calculate the amount of anchor rode necessary for your ship's primary vessel in the following depths: 10, 20, and 30 feet in normal and storm conditions.
d. Demonstrate the ability to set and weigh anchor appropriate for your vessel.

9. Navigation Rules

a. Explain the purpose of *Navigation Rules, International and Inland*.
b. Know the general "Rule of Responsibility."
c. Define stand-on and give-way vessels for the following situations: meeting, crossing, and overtaking for both power and sailing vessels.
d. Explain "Responsibility Between Vessels" (vessel priority).
e. Explain the navigation lights required for power-driven and sailing vessels underway. Explain what is required for a vessel under oars. Describe the lighting requirements for paddlecraft. Explain why carrying a sound-producing device, such as a whistle, is important when operating a paddlecraft.
f. Describe the sound signals for maneuvering, warning, and restricted visibility.

10. Piloting and Navigation

a. Demonstrate your understanding of latitude and longitude. Using a chart, demonstrate that you can locate your position from given coordinates and determine the coordinates of at least five aids to navigation.
b. Explain the degree system of compass direction. Explain variation and deviation and how they are used to convert between true headings and bearings to compass headings and bearings.
c. Describe three kinds of devices used aboard ship for measuring speed and/or distance traveled and, if possible, demonstrate their use.
d. Explain the 24-hour time system and demonstrate that you can convert between 12- and 24-hour time.
e. Understand Coordinated Universal Time (Greenwich Mean Time or Zulu Time) and zone time. Demonstrate your ability to convert from one to the other for your local area.
f. Make a dead reckoning table of compass and distances (minimum three legs) between two points, plot these on a chart, and determine the final position. Note: Ideally this requirement should be met while underway. If this is not possible, it may be simulated using charts.
g. Discuss how a GPS unit works. Explain possible uses and functions including different screen views. Use a GPS unit to set a waypoint and navigate to the waypoint you have set.

11. Practical Deck Seamanship

a. Name the seven watches and explain bell time.
b. Explain the duties of a lookout and demonstrate how to report objects in view and wind directions with respect to the vessel.
c. Name relative bearings expressed in degrees.
d. While underway, serve as a lookout for two hours total. Boating in a manually propelled craft, boating alone or as a bow paddler for a tandem craft will meet this requirement.
e. Demonstrate the use of wheel or helm commands found in the *Sea Scout Manual*.
f. Describe the deck log kept aboard your ship’s principal craft. Contribute to a cruise log for three days of cruising (one cruise or a combination of day cruises). Submit the logs to your Skipper.
   -OR-
   Keep a trip log for at least three paddling day trips, recording details of the waterway paddled, listing participants, and details of the paddling trip. Submit the logs to your Skipper.

12. Environment

a. Discuss with an adult leader the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as related to oil discharges. Explain what a “Discharge of Oil Prohibited” placard is and if applicable find it aboard your ship’s vessels.
b. Explain what aquatic nuisance species are and how you can help stop their spread.
c. Explain how the principles of Leave No Trace can be applied to boating trips.

13. Weather

a. Read and understand a local weather bulletin. Know how to obtain current marine and weather reports from the National Weather Service in your area by telephone or radio, or online.
b. Find a river in your area and review the forecasted flow levels by using the National Weather Service’s Hydrologic Prediction Service’s map and graphs. Compare forecasted flow levels to average flow levels using the USGS National Water Information System web page.

14. Cruising

a. Plan and participate in an overnight cruise. If you cannot sleep aboard your vessel, participating in a multi-day trip will meet this requirement.
b. While on the cruise, perform the duties of a helmsman for at least 30 minutes. If underway in a paddlecraft, paddling independently or as a stern paddler/ steersman will meet this requirement.

15. Boating Safety Course

a. Successfully complete a boating safety course approved by the National Association of State Boating Law Administrators (NASBLA) offered by one of the following agencies: a state boating agency, America’s Boating Club, the United States Coast Guard Auxiliary, or other private or military education courses.

16. **Service**
    a. Log at least eight hours of work on ship equipment, projects, or activities other than ship meetings, parties, dances, or fun events.
    b. Participate with your ship for at least eight hours in community service projects.
17. **Electives**
    Choose any three electives from the options listed in 3.3.6

13.3.3 Able

To achieve Able rank, Sea Scouts master ceremony presentation and demonstrate knowledge of maritime history. They also teach others—perhaps Scouts and Venturers—about the program and fulfill leadership responsibilities. They must pass the Lifesaving merit badge requirements and develop further expertise in safety and first aid. There is a continued progression in seamanship, boat-handling skills, anchoring, and piloting and navigation, as well as a deeper understanding of maritime environmental issues. The Sea Scout Long Cruise badge is required for Able, as is completion of additional electives.

1. **Ideals**
    a. Organize and conduct two impressive opening and closing ceremonies for your ship.
    b. Explain how our nation's maritime history has contributed to our way of life. Note: "Explain" means to convey information to one or more people using any of the following methods (or something similar approved by your Skipper): video, computer slide show (PowerPoint presentation), storyboard (project board display), diorama, model, annotated photo album, verbal report, or written report. For comparison purposes, a written report of 500 to 1,000 words would form an appropriate explanation.
2. **Active Membership**
    a. Meet your ship's bylaws requirement for active participation in your ship's meetings and activities for six months.
    b. Prepare and present a program on Sea Scouts to a Scouting America troop, Venturing crew, Venturing Officers' Association meeting, Cub Scouts, Order of the Arrow, Maritime Explorer Club, University of Scouting session, school class, or other youth group. Your presentation should last a minimum of 15 minutes and describe the activities of your ship and Sea Scouts.
3. **Leadership**
    a. Either serve and fulfill the responsibilities of a crew leader or an elected officer of your ship or serve as an activity chair for two major ship events. Responsibilities should include planning, directing, and evaluating the event. (These events are in addition to the Ordinary requirement.)
    -OR-
    With a boat operator plan a boat dive trip and include all equipment, provisions and location. Using navigation charts to determine course to the location and topographical charts of the sea floor create a dive plan for the participants making the dive.

4. **Swimming**
    a. Pass all requirements for Scouting America's Lifesaving merit badge.

5. **Safety**
    a. Develop and use a customized vessel safety checklist for a boat used by your ship.
    b. Demonstrate your understanding of fire prevention on motorized vessels.
    -OR-
    Explain how entanglements or entrapments, such as but not limited to loose ropes and difficult to remove sprayskirts, can be avoided in kayaks, canoes, paddleboards and rafts.
    c. Know the classes of fires and the substances that will extinguish each type of fire.
    d. In a safe place, under adult supervision, demonstrate your ability to successfully extinguish a class A and a class B fire with an approved fire extinguisher. If required, see that the fire extinguisher used is properly recharged or replaced.
    e. Conduct a fire safety inspection of the vessel normally used by your ship or of your ship's meeting place. Note any fire hazards and report them to your ship's adult leaders.
    f. Complete the certification for standard first aid through the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or other approved organization's standard first-aid course.
    g. Complete the certification for CPR through the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or other approved organizations' course.
    -OR-
    Obtain certification from DAN®'s Professional Diver first aid course or an equivalent USCG approved course.

6. **Marlinspike Seamanship**
    a. Complete a back splice, eye splice, short splice, long splice, and a palm-and- needle whipping.
    b. Sew a flat seam, round seam, and grommet eye in canvas or sail material. Describe how each is used in construction of and the care of sails.
    c. Describe the parts of a block and explain how blocks are sized. Describe the following types of tackle: luff, gun, double purchase, single whip, and runner. With the help of another shipmate, reeve a double purchase tackle.
    -**OR-**
    On land, establish a 2-point load-distributing anchor point and a 3:1 mechanical advantage system (e.g., Z-drag) used to unpin paddlecraft. Use the system to haul a weight at least 5 feet across the ground. The system must include a progress capture system and a damper.

7. **Boat Handling**
    a. Demonstrate your ability to properly operate a small boat equipped with a motor. Included should be fueling, starting, leaving a dock, maneuvering, docking, and coming alongside.
    -OR-
    In a human propelled vessel, board the vessel and depart from shore, paddle or row the vessel in a straight line forward 200 feet and backwards 40 feet; spin in place 180 degrees or more to right and left; and move sideways 10 feet or more to right

and left (only if the vessel uses paddles). Then, while underway, turn 90 degrees to right and left while maintaining headway and maneuver through a figure of 8 course with markers set three to four boat lengths apart. Finally return to shore and disembark the vessel. At all times, maintain proper trim and balance.

b. Know the names and functions of lines used to secure a vessel to a wharf or pier. Understand and execute docking commands used in handling lines on your ship's primary vessel.

8. Ground Tackle

a. Describe the various kinds of anchor rode and the advantages and disadvantages of each type.
b. Identify the parts of the anchor cable starting with the anchor and ending at the vessel.
c. Describe the methods of marking chain or rode and demonstrate that you know the chain or rode markings on your ship's vessel.
d. While on a cruise assist in the construction of an anchor watch schedule and stand one watch.
   -OR-
   Establish a watch for boats secured to a shore or beach and stand one watch.
e. Identify a capstan or windlass and explain its use in handling line, wire rope, or chain.

9. Navigation Rules

a. Demonstrate a working knowledge of *Navigation Rules, International and Inland*.
b. Explain vessel lights and day shapes for the following: towing (astern, alongside, pushing ahead, and cannot deviate), fishing, trawling, restricted maneuverability, not under command, underwater operations, constrained by draft, dredging, aground, and sailing vessels under power.
c. Understand the system of aids to navigation employed in your area. Include buoys, lights, and daymarks, and their significance and corresponding chart symbols.
d. Read in detail a National Ocean Service (NOS) chart, preferably for the area normally cruised by your ship, identifying all marks on it.

10. Piloting and Navigation

a. Supervise the proper keeping of a complete deck log for three days of cruising (one cruise or a combination of day cruises). Submit the cruise logs to your Skipper.
   -OR-
   Keep a journal of paddling trips that includes names of participants, access points, waterway description, and notable events. Record at least three trips in the journal and submit to your Skipper.
b. Lay a course of at least three legs and execute it using dead reckoning.
   -OR-
   Make a scuba dive, navigating three legs underwater using a compass, measuring distance and time, and logging all information Use a chart to plan depth and topography.

a. Demonstrate your ability to fix your position by the following methods: taking bearings from two known objects, running fix, and estimated position.
b. Establish distance from a known object using "double the angle on the bow" and explain how to set a danger bearing.
c. Enter three waypoints into an electronic navigation device (i.e., GPS, chart- plotter) and navigate your vessel to each point. Demonstrate the use of the MOB function on your electronic navigation device.
d. Discuss how radar is used in situational awareness and the method of taking a radar fix.
e. Explain the use of tide tables, current tables, and light lists, and how to update a chart using the Notice to Mariners.

11. Practical Deck Seamanship

a. Demonstrate your knowledge of personal safety equipment needed while cleaning, maintaining, or repairing your vessel.
b. Know the names, uses, sizes, and proper care of the common hand tools used by your ship.
c. Identify and explain the use of the following: thimble, shackle, turnbuckle, pelican hook, and other ship's hardware and fittings commonly used aboard your ship's vessels.
d. Demonstrate proper surface and coating preparation, coating techniques, care of stored coatings, and cleaning of brushes and tools used to maintain surfaces on your ship's vessel.
   -OR-
   Demonstrate how to make a minor repair on a paddlecraft used by your ship.
e. Explain techniques used for the maintenance, protection, and repair of hulls and decks on your ship's vessel.
   -OR-
   Explain the techniques used for the maintenance, protection and storage of paddlecraft used by your ship.

12. Environment

a. Demonstrate your knowledge of local environmental laws related to the proper storage, disposal, and cleanup of maritime coating materials, fuels, and other environmentally sensitive materials.
b. Discuss with an adult leader the dumping of garbage in the marine environment. Review the contents of the MARPOL placard and locate it aboard your ship's vessels.
c. Explain the importance of protecting marine endangered species using a representative species as an example (mammal, bird, fish, or reptile). As a minimum, include a description of the species; its habitat, history, and current population numbers; and current steps being employed to help its recovery. Note: Refer to the definition and expectation for "explain" in Able 1b.

13. Weather

a. Demonstrate your ability to read a barometer, thermometer, anemometer, and weathervane. Be familiar with the Beaufort Wind Force Scale.

14. Cruising

a. Earn the Long Cruise badge.

15. Electives

a. Choose any four level 2 or higher electives from the options listed in 3.3.6.

13.3.4 Quartermaster

The Quartermaster candidate must think analytically about how the program is delivered and supported, while developing a deeper understanding of Scouting ideals. Most requirements represent intensification of what was learned for previous ranks, but with significant additions in the Quartermaster service project, study of weather and forecasting, and completion of additional electives.

1. Ideals

a. Initiate a discussion on the ideals stated in the Sea Promise.
b. Prepare a written analysis, offering recommendations for improvements regarding one of the following ship's programs: bylaws and code, training programs, ceremonies, quarterdeck meetings, recruiting programs, or fundraising.

2. Active Membership

a. Meet your ship's bylaws requirement for active participation in your ship's meetings and activities for six months.
b. Present a talk or program at least 15 minutes long on Sea Scouts to a service club, religious organization, PTA, or other adult organization.

3. Leadership

a. Quartermaster Project: While an Able Sea Scout, plan, develop, and demonstrate leadership to others in a service project that is helpful to any religious institution, school, or your community. The project plan must be approved by your Skipper and ship committee and approved by the council or district advancement committee before you start. This service project should involve your ship and at least one other group. You must use the Quartermaster Leadership Service Project Workbook, No. 420-011, to document your work. Note: The Quartermaster project is separate and distinct from a youth's Eagle Scout service project.
b. Serve as a ship officer for at least six months.
c. Organize and help conduct the Scouting America's Introduction to Leadership Skills for Ships (ILSS) for your ship or serve as staff on an NYLT course, NYLT Leadership Academy, NAYLE, Wood Badge course, or Seabadge course.

4. Swimming

a. Complete the requirements for lifeguard through Scouting America, the American Red Cross, or other approved organization's lifeguard course.

5. Safety

a. Know the heavy-weather precautions taken aboard power, sailing, and paddle vessels when dangerous weather approaches, and demonstrate these precautions aboard the vessel used by your ship.

b. Know the special precautions that should be taken when limited visibility is encountered.
c. Teach Apprentice 5a and Ordinary 5a, 5b, and 5c requirements to a crew.

6. Marlinspike Seamanship

a. Teach the Apprentice, Ordinary, and Able marlinspike seamanship requirements to a crew.
b. Make an eye splice in double-braided line.

7. Boat Handling

a. Take charge of the craft used by your ship and give all commands to the crew for picking up a mooring buoy and properly mooring the vessel in several wind and current situations.
   -OR-
   Take charge of three or more single occupant vessels and give all the commands necessary to move the group successfully to the opposite shore, across a river in moving water, or lake in windy conditions, without drifting downstream or down lake.
b. Demonstrate and teach the principles of springing into and out from a dock, from both bow and stern, using an engine depending on the type of vessel used by your ship.
   -OR-
   Demonstrate and teach the proper way to enter moving water with a canoe, kayak, paddleboard or raft, facing both upstream and downstream, while in an eddy and from shore.
c. Teach Ordinary and Able boat handling requirements to a crew.

8. Ground Tackle

a. Teach the Ordinary and Able anchoring requirements to a crew.
b. Know the methods of bringing a vessel to anchor and a mooring with special emphasis on wind and current.
c. Take charge of a vessel used by your ship and give all commands to the crew for setting and weighing anchor in several wind and current situations.

9. Navigation Rules

a. Teach the Ordinary navigation rules requirements and Able 9b and 9c to a crew.

10. Piloting and Navigation

a. Teach the Ordinary and Able piloting requirements to a crew.
b. Know the methods of fixing a boat’s position in limited visibility.
c. Create a route in an electronic navigation device that includes at least five waypoints. Use the electronic navigation device to navigate your route.
   -OR-
   Use an electronic navigation device (e.g., GPS) to determine coordinates and routes for at least five emergency exit routes for inland waterways. Identify the beginning of each route during a boating trip.

11. Weather

a. Teach the Ordinary and Able weather requirements to a crew.

b. Demonstrate your knowledge of the weather signs for your local area, including cloud types. Prepare a 48-hour forecast and compare your forecast with the actual weather that occurred.

12. Environment

a. Discuss the three types of marine sanitation devices and the laws governing sewage discharge.
b. Explain what gray water is and how it should be handled in your boating area.
c. Write a 500-word report on an aquatic environment (freshwater, coastal, estuary, or sanctuary). Include in the report the location, habitat, history, animals and plants that inhabit the area, its importance to man, current regulations, and what boaters can do to help preserve it for future generations.
-OR-
Write a 500-word report on one of the United States of America's most endangered rivers (as identified by the list provided by the American Rivers organization) highlighting the threats and potential solutions. Discuss the impact, both positive and negative, of doing or not doing each potential solution.

13. Electives

a. Choose any four level 3 or higher electives from the options listed in 13.3.6.

13.3.5 Electives

As a Sea Scout progresses from Ordinary to Quartermaster, they are required to complete a set of elective requirements that suit their interests and their ship's focus. Each rank requires that the Scout accumulate a certain number of electives of varying degrees of expertise. A Scout working towards Ordinary may complete any three electives. A Scout working towards Able must have at least four electives level two or higher and seven total electives completed. A Scout working towards Quartermaster must have at least four electives level three or higher, four electives level two or higher, and a total of 11 electives complete. The electives can be earned in whichever order the Scout chooses.

Leadership

1 Attend National Youth Leadership Training (NYLT).

2 Attend NYLT Leadership Academy.

2 Attend Scouting America's Leave No Trace Trainer Course. (Add)

3 Attend National Advanced Youth Leadership Experience (NAYLE).

3 Attend Wood Badge (youth 18 and over).

3 Attend Leadership Challenge at Philmont or the Summit (youth 18 and over).

3 Attend Seabadge (youth 18 and over).

3 Quartermaster Cruise: Take command of one of more vessels crewed by not less than four Sea Scouts (e.g., four single occupant vessels or a single vessel with four occupants) for at least 40 consecutive hours, including two nights. You must

delegate and supervise all duties. Prior to departure, create a trip plan and receive approval from your ship's Skipper. If your boats are transported to the water, inspect all vessels with an adult leader, and evaluate whether they are adequately secured for transportation prior to departure. In addition, prior to the trip, complete the following: file a float plan, inspect the vessel(s) for required equipment; supervise all menu preparation; prepare the vessel(s) to get underway with a proper checklist approved by the adult leaders; launch, anchor, dock, and maintain course by commands to the helmsman appropriate for your vessel(s); remain underway for an extended period during darkness if your vessel has running lights; and discuss appropriate nighttime running procedures. While underway, perform safety and rescue drills appropriate to your boat(s), such as capsize, person in the water, towing vessels, damage control, abandon ship, fire, collision, and any other drills used by your ship. During this cruise no substantial errors may be committed.

-OR-

Plan and serve as coordinator on a "live-aboard" dive trip of at least three days with all dive plans, equipment, food, surface and underwater charts on dive sites, specific training including all financial, safety information and emergency protocols, plan for provisions; supervise all menu preparation; prepare the boats to get underway with a proper checklist approved by the adult leaders; and file a float plan. If on open water, prepare a navigation chart including at least three legs and/or course corrections. If on inland rivers, identify river access points and coordinate transportation at both ends of the trip. With an adult leader, inspect all vessels and evaluate whether they are adequately secured for transportation.

Duty to God

1 Participate in two appropriate interfaith religious services during ship outings.

2 Plan and conduct two appropriate interfaith religious services during ship outings.

3 Complete the requirements for the religious emblem of your faith. (Refer to the Duty to God brochure, No. 512-879.)

Sailing

1 In a cat-rigged or similar small vessel, demonstrate your ability to sail single-handedly a triangular course (leeward, windward, and reaching marks). Demonstrate beating, reaching, and running. A qualified sailing instructor should observe this requirement.

2 While leading a crew of not less than two other persons, demonstrate your ability to sail a sloop or another suitable vessel correctly and safely over a triangular course (leeward, windward, and reaching marks), demonstrating beating, reaching, running, and the proper commands.

3 Know the principles of handling a schooner, ketch, yawl, or other suitable sailing vessel. Under competent oversight, take charge of a crew and demonstrate your ability to handle a suitable sailing vessel in all points of sail.

Paddlecraft

1 Join the American Canoe Association (ACA) or an ACA Paddle America Club.

2 Complete the requirements for one of the following Scouting America Awards: Boardsailing, Kayaking, SUP, Kayaking, Whitewater, or the Canoeing merit badge. (Note: This must be a different activity from the one chosen under level 2 electives–Specialty Proficiency.)

2 Take a course from an ACA certified instructor or an equivalent, i.e.: State-certified paddling instructor.

2 Compete in a freestyle, downriver, flatwater, or slalom paddling race in a canoe, kayak, or stand-up paddleboard (SUP) using nationally accepted rules.

2 Successfully complete an ACA level 1 or higher assessment in canoe, kayak, or SUP.

2 Complete an ACA level 3 or higher swiftwater rescue course.

2 Earn ACA instructor certification in canoe, kayak, or SUP at any level.

3 Complete the SmartStart for Paddlers course. Conduct a watercraft safety class for your ship using Paddle Smart America materials. Identify sources of safety brochures and other materials that could be used by your ship and distribute them to troops in your area or your chartered organization.

SCUBA

2 Complete an Open Water Diver course from NAUI, PADI, or any other Recreational Scuba Training Council Certification Agency.

2 Plan and coordinate a public service event such as underwater trash cleanup, coral reforestation project, or invasive species reduction project.

2 Complete an Advanced Diver course from any RSTC agency.

2 Complete a DAN® Oxygen Administration Course.

3 Maintain a dive logbook (either electronic with backup or paper) to record a minimum of 25 dives after receiving basic Open Water Diving Certification.

3 Take an additional certification course such as VIP process, tank filler/compressor operations, night diving, underwater navigation, underwater archaeology, underwater photography. Each course may be counted as an elective.

3 Complete a Rescue Course from any RSTC agency.

3 Become a certified Dive Master, Assistant Instructor or Instructor. Each certification may be counted as an elective. (Must be over 18 and log at least 50 dives.)

Vessels

1 Teach and lead a crew under oar using a boat pulling at least four oars single- or double-banked. Perform the following maneuvers: get underway, maneuver ahead and back, turn the boat in its own length, dock, and secure.

3 Under competent oversight, assume the duties of navigator of your ship's vessel. Plot its projected course between two ports at least two hours apart and cruise that course mooring to mooring handling all piloting duties. The cruise should be made in daylight hours with good visibility.

3 Obtain a US Coast Guard OUPV (Operator of Uninspected Passenger Vessels) boat operator license. (Must be over 18 to take test but can collect Sea Service time before 18.)

Racing

1 Describe the procedures used in yacht racing and the signals used by the race committee to start a race. Serve as a crew member in a race sailed under current International Sailing Federation rules.

2 Complete the following:

a. Demonstrate your understanding of the shapes, flag hoists, gun, and horn signals used in yacht racing as well as a working knowledge of the racing rules of World Sailing.
b. Serve as helmsman, with one or more additional crew members, of a sloop-rigged or other suitable boat with a spinnaker in a race sailed under World Sailing racing rules.

3 Take charge of a crew in a race using current World Sailing racing rules.

Engines

1 Perform routine maintenance on your ship's propulsion system, including filter, spark plug, oil changes, proper fueling procedures, and other routine maintenance tasks. Refer to operations manuals or your ship's adult leaders for correct procedures and guidance.

2 Complete the following:

a. Understand the safe and proper procedures for the use of gasoline and diesel inboard engines, including fueling, pre-start checks, ventilation, starting, running, periodic checks while running, securing, postoperative checks, and keeping an engine log.
b. Using the type of engine aboard the vessel you most frequently use, demonstrate your understanding of basic troubleshooting and the preventive maintenance schedule recommended by the manufacturer.

3 Complete the following:

a. Explain the principal features of steam turbine, turboelectric, direct reversing diesel, diesel-electric, gas turbine, nuclear, gasoline, and diesel engines and the relative advantages of each type.
b. Explain the operation of spark ignition and compression ignition for internal combustion engines used aboard small vessels.
c. Demonstrate your familiarity with the engine aboard the vessel used by your ship, including its principles of operation, fuel, lubrication, cooling and electrical systems, and their component parts.
d. Demonstrate your ability to locate and correct minor engine troubles according to the engine manufacturer's troubleshooting guide.

Vessel Maintenance

2 Demonstrate your proficiency and knowledge of fiberglass repair and gel coating while working on your ship's vessel or other similar vessel.

2 Demonstrate your knowledge of small paddlecraft construction by building your own or assisting in building a canoe or kayak from wood, fiberglass, or other suitable materials. Kits may be used.

3 Take charge of reconditioning or overhauling at least one of your ship's vessels or take charge of hauling out the principal vessel used by your ship. In either case, lay out a plan of the work to be done in advance, including an estimate of the materials, tools, cost, and time involved.

3 Take charge of building a paddlecraft. Lay out the plan of work to be done; identify suitable building plans; and estimate materials, tools, cost, and time involved. Launch the craft.

Electricity

3 Complete the following:

a. Know and demonstrate the correct method of rescuing a person in contact with a live wire.
b. Understand the construction of simple battery cells. Demonstrate the proper care of storage batteries.
c. Explain the difference between direct current and alternating current and the best uses for each.
d. Demonstrate that you know how to replace fuses, reset circuit breakers, and properly splice shipboard electric cable.
e. Submit a diagram of the electrical system aboard the vessel used by your ship.
f. Explain wire tables, the current-carrying capacity of circuits, and the hazards and prevention of electrical overloading.
g. Explain electrolysis as applied to the deterioration of a boat's underwater fittings by galvanic action and its prevention.

Rigging

3 Demonstrate your ability to splice and handle wire rope, attach wire rope fittings, and complete a safety and tuning inspection of a vessel.

Specialty Proficiency

2 Complete the requirements for one of the following Scouting America Awards: Boardsailing, Kayaking, SUP, Mile Swim, Whitewater Rafting, SCUBA, Snorkeling, or the Kayaking, Whitewater, or Canoeing merit badge. (Note: This must be a different activity from the one chosen under level 2 electives–Paddlecraft.)

2 Complete the National Safe Boating Council course Boat Control On-Water Training.

3 Become proficient in boardsailing, surfing, kayaking, or whitewater rafting/canoeing.

3 Teach another Sea Scout the information needed to complete the Kayaking, Canoeing, or Whitewater merit badge, or the Kayaking, SUP, or Boardsailing Award.

3 Attend Powder Horn (youth 14 and over).

Ornamental Ropework

1 Make a three-strand Turk's head and a three-strand monkey's fist. Using an ornamental knot, make up a heaving line.

2 Demonstrate your ability to fashion the following items of ornamental ropework: four-strand Turk's head, coach whipping, cockscombing, round braid, flat sennit braid, wall knot, and crown knot. Make a useful item such as a boatswain's lanyard, rigging knife lanyard, bell rope, etc., or decorate a portion of your ship's equipment such as a stanchion, rail, lifeline, tiller, etc.

Maritime Tradition

1 Boatswain Call: Demonstrate your ability to use a boatswain's pipe by making the following calls—word to be passed, boat call, veer, all hands, pipe down, and piping the side.

1 Maritime History: Describe the highlights of maritime history from the earliest times to the present. Include the evolution of vessel construction and propulsion, important voyages of exploration and development, the origin of maritime traditions, and the achievements of notable maritime leaders in U.S. Sea history.

2 Celestial Navigation:

a. Explain how the sextant works. Show how to use it and demonstrate measuring horizontal angles and altitudes.
b. Find latitude by the altitude of Polaris or by the sun's altitude at local apparent noon. Demonstrate how longitude is determined.
c. Demonstrate finding error in the boat's compass by the sun's azimuth.

3 Communication: Draw the International Code flags and pennants from memory and give the single-letter meanings of the flags (for example, Alfa = Have diver down, keep clear). Show how to use the book International Code of Signals.

United States Coast Guard Auxiliary

1 Be inducted as a Basic Qualified member of a United States Coast Guard Auxiliary flotilla.

2 Successfully complete the Coast Guard Auxiliary Boating Skills and Seamanship course. All core sessions, as well as at least three electives.

3 Successfully complete the Coast Guard Auxiliary Weekend Navigator course.

3 Join a local Coast Guard Auxiliary flotilla as a Basic Qualified member and qualify for any Operational Auxiliary Program (AUXOP) or any Trident Marine Safety specialty rating.

America’s Boating Club (formerly U.S. Power Squadrons)

1 Be inducted as a member of your local America’s Boating Club (USPS squadron).

2 As a member of America's Boating Club, complete the Boat Handling and Marine Navigation courses.

3 As a member of America's Boating Club, complete the Advanced Marine Navigation course.

Awards

2 Complete the Outdoor Ethics Awareness Award.

3 Complete the Outdoor Ethics Action Award

14.0 Awards and Recognition

Sea Scout Manual

14.0 Awards and Recognition

Programs to recognize Sea Scouts and their leaders for a variety of skills, achievements, and interests have been established.

14.1 Sea Scout Safe Boating and Advanced Seamanship Training

The Small-Boat Handler Course and Qualified Seaman Course are designed for Sea Scout ships whose members are not interested in following the advancement plan leading to Quartermaster, or they can serve as a training outline for traditional ships.

Details supporting the course outlines are found in the technical sections of this manual along with references to other publications listed in the bibliography. The Small-Boat Handler Course and Qualified Seaman Course are each designed to serve as a training outline for ships.

14.1.1 The Small-Boat Handler Course

The Small Boat Handler Course contains both classroom and practical portions. The classroom portion loosely follows each state’s National Association of State Boating Law Administrators (NASBLA) boating safety course. State agencies provide group instruction, as well as online instruction and testing. NASBLA approved boating safety courses are also taught by Americas Boating Club and the U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary.

The entire membership of a ship can work as a group in the course taught by the ship’s adult leaders and/or qualified instructors. Details supporting the course outlines are found in the technical sections of this manual or from partner organizations.

14.1.1.1 Section One - Aids to Navigation and Rules of the Road

1. Introduction to aids to navigation
2. Buoyage system
3. Chart symbols and letter designations
4. Primary shapes for buoys
5. Obstruction, mid-channel, and special types of buoys
6. Beacons and daybeacons
7. Ranges, range markers
8. Intracoastal waterways, lakes, and rivers
9. Class project—Develop buoy recognition game using flash cards
10. Reasons for rules of the road
11. The danger zone
12. Windward and leeward clearances
13. Stand-on and give-way vessels
14. Sailboat right of way
15. Sailboat rules
16. Lights required on boats
17. Emergency lights
18. Sound signals
19. Safety equipment
20. Visual signaling devices

14.1.1.2 Section Two - Boating Safety

1. Boating safety and first aid
2. Checking the hull
3. Motor size compared with the boat
4. Fueling—dangers, precautions, and procedures
5. Loading a small boat
6. When not to go out
7. Operating
8. Distress signals
9. Equipment
10. Equipment—anchors, line, signaling, first-aid kit
11. Project—Have class develop a checklist.
12. Seamanship—Review maritime terms.
13. Knots—Have class learn to tie overhand, square, sheet bend, bowline, clove hitch, two half hitches, and belaying to a cleat.
14. Class project—Prepare to cruise. Have class demonstrate on an actual boat the checklist, and procedures covered in items 1–12.
15. Types and uses of anchors
16. Wind and current

14.1.1.3 Section Three - Boat Handling

Demonstrate your boat handling ability by doing one of the following:

1. Small-Boat Sailing
   Show that you, alone or with a buddy, can sail a boat properly. Do the following:
   a. Prepare a boat for sailing, including a safety inspection.
   b. Get underway from dockside, mooring, or beach.
   c. Properly set sails for a round-trip course approved by your leader that will include running, beating, and reaching—the basic points of sail. While sailing, demonstrate good helmsmanship skills.
   d. Change direction by tacking; change direction by jibing.
   e. Demonstrate getting out of irons.
   f. Upon returning to the dock, mooring, or beach, properly secure all equipment, furl or stow sails, and prepare the craft for unattended docking or beaching overnight or longer.
2. Motorboating
   Demonstrate proper procedures and skills by doing the following:
   a. Board and show how to assist others in boarding.
   b. Complete a safety check.
   c. Get underway from dockside or from a beach.
   d. Run a course for at least a mile, showing procedures for overtaking and passing slower craft, yielding right-of-way, passing oncoming traffic, making turns, reversing direction, and using navigation aids.
   e. Land or dock; get out and show how to assist others.
   f. Moor the boat and secure all gear.
3. Rowing
   Alone or with a passenger, do the following:
   a. Board and complete a safety check.
   b. Launch from dockside or from a beach.
   c. Row in a straight line for 100 yards. Stop, pivot, and return to the starting point.
   d. Backwater in a straight line for 25 yards. Make a turn underway and return to the starting point.
   e. Land and moor or rack your craft.
   f. Come alongside a pier and help a passenger into the boat. Pull away from the pier, change positions with your passenger, and demonstrate sculling over the stern or side. Resume your rowing position, return alongside the pier, and help your passenger out of the boat.
4. Paddlecraft
   Using a canoe, kayak or stand-up paddleboard (SUP):
   a. Carry your craft to the water and prepare your craft for departure, including a safety check.
   b. Complete a skills course set up by your instructor.
   c. Board your craft and depart from shore or a pier. Paddle a straight course for 25 yards.
   d. Demonstrate a backstroke.

e. Spin the craft 360 degrees clockwise and counterclockwise using sweep and stern draws.
f. Paddle the craft sideways 10 feet both to the right and to the left using draw strokes.
g. Paddle a figure-of-eight course around buoys four boat lengths apart, or a set course approved by your examiner.
h. While at least 25 yards from shore or pier, capsize and wet exit the craft. Without reentering, swim the craft to the shore or pier and empty it. Re-enter the craft after emptying it.
i. Depart from shore or pier with an accompanying buddy boat and paddle 25 yards into water deeper than participant ability to touch bottom. Wet exit. With assistance from your buddy boat, empty and right your craft, and re-enter. After re-entering, paddlers in the buddy boat wet exit. Tow the buddy boat and your buddy paddler at least 25 yards to shore.

Note:

- Well-fitted life jackets appropriate for the craft must be worn at all times.
- For a tandem canoe or kayak, perform the skills course in requirement b. as both a bow and stern paddler.
- Buddy boats should be the same type of craft in which the Sea Scout is being tested.
- Any re-entry technique can be used including but not limited to sling techniques, heel-hooks, and over-the-stern re-entries.
- Paddlers must maintain proper lookout throughout all maneuvers to prevent conflict with other boats.

14.1.2 The Qualified Seaman Course

The Qualified Seaman Course is meant to provide an overview of the aids to navigation, rules of the road, seamanship, safety, piloting, charts, safe boat handling, and boat operation. Courses taught by Americas Boating Club and the U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary cover these topics. IOWLS Lesson Plans can be used to cover several of the sections. Materials can be found at seascout.org/adult-training/iowls.

14.1.2.1 Section One - Aids to Navigation

1. Aids to navigation
2. The buoyage system
3. Use of various buoys
4. Storm warnings—publications and charts
5. Other storm warnings
6. Daymarks on vessels
7. Dredges, moored vessels, and towing
8. Daymarks, beacons, minor lights, and ranges
9. Intracoastal waterway markings, buoys, and aids
10. Lightships and lighthouses
11. Government publications—tide tables, Notice to Mariners, etc.

14.1.2.2 Section Two - Rules of the Road

1. Purpose of rules of the road
2. Danger zone, right of way
3. Sound signals
4. Lights
5. Orders to the helmsman

14.1.2.3 Section Three - Seamanship

1. Lookout
2. Bearings, reporting
3. Taking soundings
4. Marlinspike seamanship
5. Types and use of anchors

14.1.2.4 Section Four - Safety

1. Necessary equipment
2. Hazards
3. Hull inspection
4. Firefighting
5. Proper fueling
6. Life jackets
7. Charts
8. Weather
9. Man overboard drill—class project
10. Grounding
11. First aid

14.1.2.5 Section Five - Piloting

1. The compass—description and use
2. Operating by visual aids
3. Working a course

14.1.2.6 Section Six - Charts

1. Definition of charts
2. Orientation and dividers
3. Chart symbols
4. Speed, distance, and time

14.1.2.7 Section Seven - Safe Boating

1. Operation
2. Principles of sailing
3. Powerboat operation

14.1.2.8 Section Eight - Operating a Boat

1. Demonstrate proper operation of a sailboat or a powerboat.
2. Safety checklist
3. Emergency procedure

4. Handling lines
5. Correct anchoring
6. Use a chart—lay out a course
7. Operate the boat in a proper manner and make a correct landing.

14.2 Long Cruise Badge

The Long Cruise badge may be earned by both youth and adults registered in Sea Scouts. Once the individual has completed the requirements that follow, the ship's Advancement Chairman will enter the accomplishment in Scoutbook. It is recommended that all Sea Scouts and adult leaders qualifying for the Long Cruise Badge maintain a log of their cruising experiences. This log will be useful for Scout advancement, U.S. Coast Guard licensing, US Sailing certification, and chartering.

A Sea Scout must be of Ordinary rank before they can start recording cruising time for the Long Cruise badge. The Sea Scout must cruise for two weeks on any vessel or boat provided by the local council or the ship, or other vessel when authorized by an adult leader in that Sea Scout ship. Each additional long cruise earned is marked by a red arc above the badge, until five such cruises have been completed. Then a single white arc replaces them above the badge.

If it is not possible to make a two-week cruise, a series of weekend or overnight cruises on any vessel or boat may be made, provided that the total number equals 14 days.

Note: An overnight cruise lasts two days; a weekend cruise starting on Friday and ending on Sunday will be counted as three days. There are no requirements regarding distance and number of miles. The Long Cruise badge is an achievement, not a badge of rank; therefore, an adult leader may qualify for the badge without qualifying for Ordinary rank.

14.3 Sea Scout Leadership Award

The Sea Scout Leadership Award is presented by councils, territories, and Scouting America's National Council to Sea Scouts and Sea Scouters who have made exceptional contributions to Sea Scouting and who exemplify the Scout Oath and Scout Law.

[Sea Scout Leadership Nomination Form]

Long Cruise
Patch with Arc

Sea Scout
Leadership Award

14.4 Aquatics Awards

14.4.1 Lifeguard

The Lifeguard emblem is especially important in Sea Scouts. It improves your ability to help others in all types of aquatics activities. Completion of swimming skills, Safe Swim Defense, Safety Afloat, first aid, emergency action, lifesaving, rowing, and canoeing requirements are some of the qualifications for Lifeguard.

Lifeguard Application, No. 430-033

14.4.2 Boardsailing Award

The Boardsailing Award was developed to introduce Scouts basic boardsailing skills, equipment, and safety precautions; to encourage the development of skills that promote fitness and safe aquatic recreation. See also Start Windsurfing Right, a U.S. Sailing publication.

Boardsailing Award Application, No. 512-017

14.4.3 Kayaking Award

The Kayaking Award was developed to introduce Scouts to basic kayaking skills, equipment, and safety precautions; and to encourage the development of skills that promote fitness and safe aquatic recreation.

Kayaking Award Application, No. 430-036

14.4.4 SUP Award

The SUP (stand up paddleboarding) Award introduces Scouts to the basics of stand up paddleboarding on calm water, including skills, equipment, self-rescue, and safety precautions. This award also encourages Scouts to develop paddling skills that promote fitness and safe aquatics recreation.

Stand Up Paddleboarding Award Application, No. 430-189

14.4.5 Snorkeling Award

Snorkeling Award requirements were developed by the National Health and Safety Service to introduce Scout, Sea Scout, and Venturing age youth to the special skills, equipment, and safety precautions associated with snorkeling, to encourage the development of aquatic skills that promote fitness and recreation, and to lay a solid skill and knowledge foundation for those who will later participate in more advanced underwater activity.

Snorkeling Award Application, No. 430-603

14.4.6 Mile Swim Award

The Mile Swim Award is earned by swimming a continuous mile under safe conditions in the presence of a special counselor approved by your council.

Mile Swim Award Application, No. 512-020

14.4.7 Whitewater Rafting Award

The Whitewater Rafting Award introduces whitewater rafting skills and safety procedures and serves as a program opportunity for Scouts, Venturing, and Sea Scouting units in camp or out. Mastery of Whitewater Rafting Award skills is a first critical step towards satisfying Safety Afloat guidelines for safe whitewater rafting excursions.

Whitewater Rafting Award Application

14.5 Other Awards

NOTE: The Sea Scout Marksmanship program has been phased out. However, Sea Scouts are encouraged to avail themselves of other programs offered by Scouting America to satisfy this area of interest.

14.5.1 Historic Trails Award

There are numerous historic sites and trails across America. The Historic Trails Award was established to facilitate cooperation between historical societies and Scouting America. This cooperation makes many exciting trips and treks possible for you. Information on the requirements for this award is found in the Scouting America's Tours and Expeditions.

Historic Trails Award Application

14.5.2 50-Miler Award

The 50-Miler Award is presented to everyone in a Sea Scout ship for satisfactory participation on a cruise or wilderness trek that meets the award requirements. Information including the rules, award requirements, and the application can be found at

https://www.scouting.org/awards/awards-central/50-miler/.

14.5.3 Religious Emblems

Religious emblems are provided by the authorities of various faiths to stimulate the spiritual growth of Sea Scouts in those faiths. The requirements and procedures for earning any one of the emblems vary by faith but are detailed at https://www.scouting.org/awards/religious-awards/

14.5.4 Awards for Heroism

Awards for heroism are given to Sea Scouts by the National Court of Honor of Scouting America. Your Skipper and the local council service center must submit an application on a regular form within six months of the deed of heroism.

The Honor Medal is for demonstrating unusual heroism and skill or resourcefulness in saving or attempting to save life at considerable risk to self. In cases demonstrating extreme risk to self, it is awarded with crossed palms.

The Heroism Award is for heroism and skill in saving or attempting to save life at minimal personal risk.

The Medal of Merit is for performing an act of service of a rare or exceptional character that reflects an uncommon degree of concern for the well-being of others.

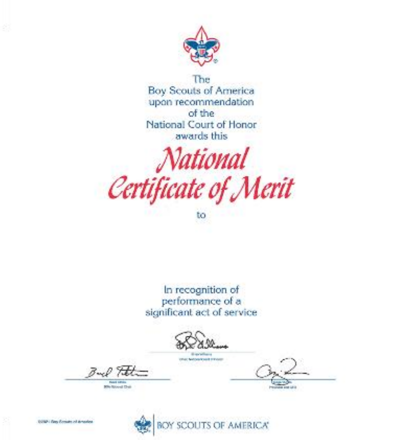
The National Certificate of Merit is for performing a significant act of service that is deserving of special national recognition.


Honor Medal Crossed Palms


Honor Medal


Heroism Medal


Medal of Merit



14.5.5 Distinguished Conservation Service Award

The Distinguished Conservation Service Award recognizes exceptional and distinguished service to conservation and environmental improvement.

Applicants for the Distinguished Conservation Service Award must plan, lead, and carry out at least two significant projects in two different categories. Visit scouting.org/outdoor-programs/conservation-and-environment for more information.

14.6 Sea Scout Leader Recognition



Training Award Skipper's Key Skipper's Award of Merit Finley Award

14.6.1 Sea Scouter Training Award

The Scouter's Training Award is a recognition for registered adult volunteers who meet training and performance requirements while serving for two years in a volunteer position.
Sea Scouter Training Award Application

14.6.2 Skipper's Key

The Skipper's Key is a recognition for primary unit leaders who meet who complete advanced tenure, training and performance requirements.
Skipper's Key Award Application

14.6.3 Skipper's Award of Merit

Quality unit leadership is the key to a quality unit program—and it leads to better Scout retention. A quality Scouting experience will help keep Scouts in the program. Scouting America created the Unit Leader Award of Merit to recognize the quality unit leaders who make that happen.
Unit Leader Award of Merit Application, No. 512-003

14.6.4 Finley Award (Community Service Award)

The Finley Sea Scout Service Award, awarded by the America's Boating Club, recognizes those members of America's Boating Club who are also youth or adult Sea Scout leaders, and who have provided outstanding civic, educational, and leadership to both the Sea Scouts and America's Boating Club, through civic involvement, educational achievement, and active participation in both programs.
Finley Sea Scout Service Award Application

15.0 Customs and Traditions

Sea Scout Manual

15.0 Customs and Traditions

Sea Scouts dive headfirst into the rich traditions and culture of the sea. There are several unique customs and ceremonies that connect you to your heritage as a sailor and a Scout. These unique experiences add to the excitement of being a Sea Scout and bring a special atmosphere to everything we do.

15.1 Customs and Courtesies

15.1.1 The Scout Sign

The Scout sign shows you are a Scout. Give it each time you recite the Scout Oath and Law. When a Scout or Scouter raises the Scout sign, all Scouts should make the sign, too, and come to silent attention.

Make the Scout sign by covering the nail of the little finger of your right hand with your right thumb, then raising your right arm with your elbow at a right angle and holding the three middle fingers of your hand upward.

15.1.2 The Scout Salute

The Scout salute shows respect. Use it to salute the flag of the United States of America. You may also salute a Scout leader or another Scout.

Give the Scout salute by forming the Scout sign with your right hand and then bringing that hand upward until your forefinger touches the brim of your hat or the arch of your right eyebrow. The palm of your hand should not show.

15.1.3 The Scout Handshake

The Scout handshake is made with the hand nearest the heart and is offered as a token of friendship. Extend your left hand to another Scout and firmly grasp his left hand. Only use this handshake when both people are in uniform.

15.1.4 The Boatswain’s Pipe

The pipe is a symbol of authority. It is used only by the Boatswain and Crew Leaders. Crew Leaders wear the Boatswain’s pipe as an indication of their office and to transmit orders to their crew.

Details on how to play the Boatswain’s calls can be found in 15.4 Boatswain’s Pipe.

Apprentice 1d. *Demonstrate the proper procedure for boarding a Sea Scout vessel and landship*

15.1.5 Formal Boarding of a Sea Scout Vessel or Landship

15.1.5.1 The Double Salute

On all formal and official occasions, whenever Sea Scouts come aboard a Sea Scout ship or landship, they perform two salutes. As they do this, they continue to carry out a custom of the sea that began centuries ago.

In the early days of Christianity, it was the custom to place a religious symbol on the mainmast of the vessel. Every mariner, upon coming aboard the ship, took off their hat or made the sign of the cross as a form of salute in the direction of the mainmast.

National flags became prominent in the 14th and 15th centuries. Ships of maritime nations soon began to fly their national ensign and requested that it be recognized also by the mariners. So, the double salute became a universal rule as each mariner saluted both the mainmast and his national ensign when coming aboard.

Honoring these traditions, Sea Scouts, immediately upon stepping aboard, salute first the center of the ship which is the traditional salute to God. They then turn toward the flagstaff at the stern of the ship and perform the traditional salute to the ensign of our nation. Note, this is the reverse of the Navy tradition of saluting the ensign first and then the official on the deck.

When going ashore or leaving a landship, each person gives the double salute in reverse, first to the national ensign and then to the mainmast.

15.1.5.2 Boarding a Sea Scout Ship

Persons boarding a Sea Scout ship must request permission to come aboard. If the persons are in a group, only the person in charge of the group must request permission for the entire group.

15.2 The Flag

15.2.1 History of the Flag of the United States of America

"Our flag carries American ideas, American history and American feelings. It is not a painted rag. It is a whole history. It is the Constitution. It is the Government. It is the emblem of the sovereignty of the people. It is the Nation."—Henry Ward Beecher, 1861

We have all heard the story of George Washington, Betsy Ross, and the first American flag, however, there is no evidence to corroborate this story. We do know that the Grand Union flag flew over George Washington's headquarters outside Boston on January 1, 1776.

The Revolutionary War had started the year before, and the colonies needed a flag of their own. The Grand Union flag is often referred to as the first American flag; however, on June 14, 1777, several resolutions from the Marine Committee were passed by the Continental Congress. The resolution that established an official flag for the new nation was probably meant to define a naval ensign rather than a national flag, but the first flag act resolved, "That the flag of the United States be made of thirteen stripes, alternate red and white; that the union be thirteen stars, white in a blue field, representing a new Constellation."

Many variations of the flag flew until 1818, when Congress established the number of stripes at seven red and six white and provided the addition of one star for each state. The current 50-star flag has flown since July 4, 1960, when Hawaii officially joined the union.

The flag of the United States, referred to in general as the American flag, is known to Sea Scouts as the national ensign. Ever since John Paul Jones sailed the Ranger into Quiberon Bay in France to receive the first salute of the American flag by a foreign power, the U.S. Navy has referred to our flag as the national ensign. Sea Scouts honor this tradition.

***Ordinary 1b**. Give a brief history of the United States flag.*

15.2.2 When to Fly the Flag

The flag of the United States should be flown every day when weather permits, but especially on New Year's Day, Inauguration Day, Presidents Day, Armed Forces Day, Easter Sunday, Mother's Day, Memorial Day (half-staff until noon), Flag Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Citizenship Day, Columbus Day, Veteran's Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, the birthdays of states (dates of admission), and on state holidays.

15.2.3 Hoisting and Lowering the Flag

15.2.3.1 On Land

Two Sea Scouts are needed to hoist or lower the flag correctly. In raising, one holds the flag to prevent it from touching the ground, while the other attaches the line and raises the flag, keeping it close to the staff by holding the line rather taut. When the flag has left the flag bearer's arms, he steps back and comes to salute. In lowering, the flag bearer catches the flag and unfastens it.

Hoist the flag briskly in the morning. Lower it slowly in the evening but not later than sunset.

15.2.3.2 On Board a Vessel

Sea Scouts refer to the flag of the United States as the ensign or colors. On Sea Scout ships the ensign is flown at the stern when the ship is alongside or at anchor. It is flown at the gaff, usually aft and above the bridge, while underway on a power vessel and three-quarters of the way up the backstay or leach on a sailboat. When the ship is preparing to get underway, the ensign is shifted from the stern to the underway position at the moment the last line comes across or at the moment the anchor is aweigh. The ship's flags and leader's flags are flown from the starboard spar, and signal flags are flown from the port spar. The ensign is never flown from the masthead.

The ensign is raised at exactly 0800 when the ship is alongside or at anchor. It is lowered (retired) at exactly sundown when the ship is at anchor or alongside. When underway, the ensign is never retired. (In foreign waters it may be a violation of the law not to fly the ensign.)

When raising the ensign, a color guard is posted. Sea Scouts often wear shorts or T-shirts when underway, but when raising or retiring the colors, more respectful clothing is required. It is also important that the color guard is trained in advance so there is no fumbling or disrespect shown during this ceremony.

The Boatswain's Mate should assemble the color guard and off-duty crew with the Boatswain's call "All Hands." The Boatswain's Mate should salute the Boatswain and say, "Request permission to strike eight bells on time?" The Boatswain should reply, "Make it so." The Boatswain's Mate sounds the Boatswain's call "Attention." At approximately 0759:56, the ship's bell should be struck eight times so that the last bell strike sounds at exactly 0800 to the second. The Boatswain's Mate may then give the verbal command, "Hand salute." The Boatswain's Mate sounds the Boatswain's call "Pipe the Side." At the first note of the Boatswain's call, the colors are briskly raised. The call should sound until the colors reach the apex of the hoist and end with a sharp up note. At the last sharp note of this call, the ship's company should smartly retire their salute. If the salute was initiated with a verbal command, it should be completed with the verbal command, "Ready, two." All hands should stand at attention until the halyard is secured.

When the halyard is secured, the Boatswain's Mate sounds a short warble with a fade to convey the command, "Carry on." The Boatswain then gives the verbal command, "Detail dismissed. Carry on," and the ship's company will resume normal duties.

Note: The verbal commands are redundant to the Boatswain's calls and could be omitted with a well-trained ship's company. If so, the hand salute should be initiated with the first note of the Boatswain's call "Pipe the Side" and retired with the last note of that call.

During this ceremony, the ship's company not on deck stands at attention. If ashore, a member of the ship's company will come to attention and salute if in uniform. If not in uniform, it is proper to stand at attention and place the right hand over the heart. The ship's flag and leader's flag are raised slightly after the ensign starts its ascent. These flags are retired slightly after the ensign starts its descent. The rule is that the ensign is first up and last down. Some ships may elect to use a bugle for the calls during a flag ceremony. The bugler plays "Attention," "To the Colors," and "Carry On."

Sunset's exact time should be acquired for retiring the colors. Follow the sequence for retiring the colors that was used to raise them.

Note: The person doing the piping should salute, even if the salute must be rendered with the left hand.

To indicate mourning, display the flag at half-staff. Hoist it to the peak first, then lower it to half-staff. When you are ready to take it down, raise it to the peak before lowering it.

Ordinary 1c. *Demonstrate how to fly, hoist, lower, fold, display, and salute the U.S. flag. Explain flag etiquette and protocols for both land and sea.*

15.2.4 Saluting the Flag

Whenever you see the flag hoisted or lowered, or when you pass it or are passed by it, you should show your respect by saluting if you are in uniform or by holding your right hand over your heart if you are in civilian clothes.

When the flag passes you, come to attention and face it. Salute just before the flag reaches the point opposite you and hold the salute until the flag has passed. When you pass the flag, come to salute six steps before you reach it, and hold the salute until you are six steps past. You salute at the command of your leader when in formation.

When the flag is carried, there should be a color guard on each side of it. When carried with other flags, the flag should be in front of the others or to the right if the flags are arranged in a line. When indoors and in uniform but not covered, do not salute. Stand at attention and place your hand over your heart. The color guard is always covered and must salute.

15.2.5 Care of the Flag

After it is lowered, the flag is folded. First fold it lengthwise in halves, then in quarters, with the blue field on the outside. Finally, while one person holds it by the blue field, another makes a triangular fold in the opposite end and continues to fold it in triangles until the flag resembles a cocked hat with only the blue field showing.

Folding the US Flag

The flag should be cleaned when soiled and mended when torn. When worn beyond repair, destroy it privately by burning.

15.2.6 Displaying the Flag

There is a right way and a wrong way to display the flag whether on the wall or from a staff. The flag is never used as drapery (use red, white, and blue bunting instead), nothing is ever placed on it, and it never touches the ground, the floor, or water beneath it.

15.2.7 Flags Underway

Small craft should fly flags of the proper size. The standard rules are: Ensigns should be 1 inch on the hoist for each foot of waterline. Club, private, and ship flags should be half an inch on the hoist for each foot of waterline length. U.S. government vessels, merchant ships, and yachtsmen have carefully prescribed codes.

When underway, colors must be displayed day and night. In the event the vessel is in foreign waters and of U.S. registry, display of the U.S. ensign is required. The ensign is always raised (smartly) before other flags and lowered (slowly) last.

The U.S. yacht ensign is never displayed on Sea Scout vessels. Our national ensign is never dipped as a salute except by government vessels in reply to a dip, however, your ship's flag may be dipped. As soon as flags are lowered, the appropriate lights are displayed.

The only flag ever flown above the national ensign on the same hoist is the church pennant, flown only when divine services are in progress on board ship.

15.2.7.1 Colors

At morning or evening colors, boats passing reasonably near a flag ceremony should stop engines or lay on oars or, if under sail, let fly the sheets. If the size of the boat and other conditions are favorable, available members of the ship should stand, face the colors, and salute.

On special occasions when a ship parades a guard or otherwise salutes an adult leader in a boat that is passing, the same procedure as above is followed.

15.2.7.2 Salutes Between Boats

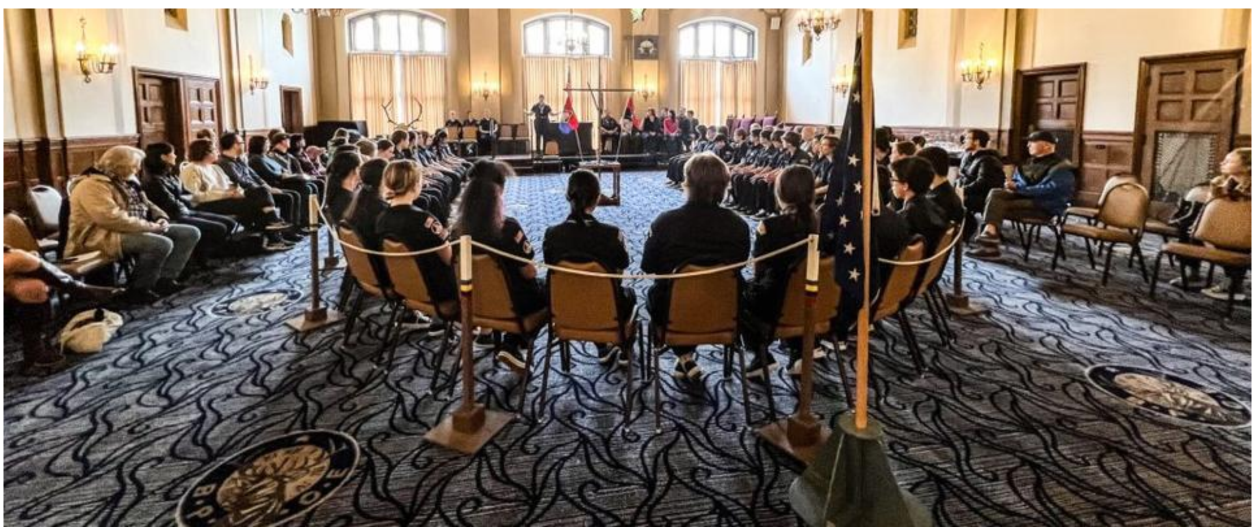
When distinctive flags are not flown and under ordinary circumstances, the salute generally consists of a friendly acknowledgment rendered while the boats pass.

One boat, however, may salute another, but this pertains mostly to special occasions. For instance, the crew of a boat rowing more than four oars may toss its oars, or the person in charge may salute the boat carrying another adult leader.

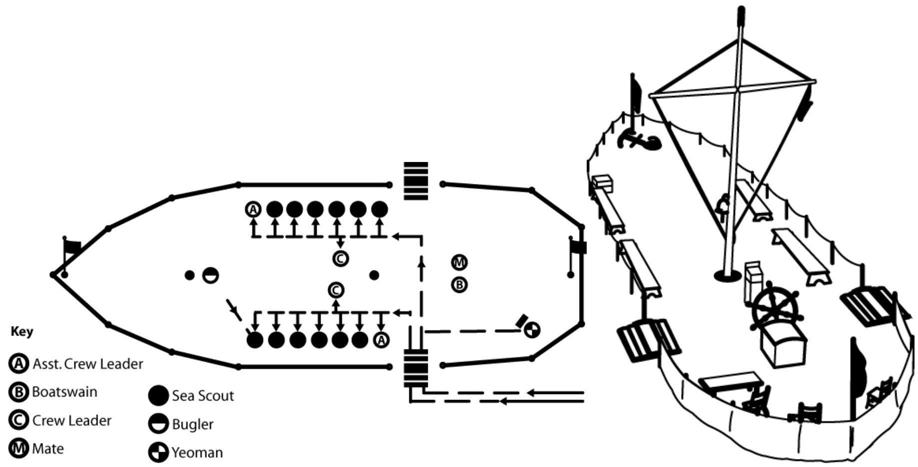
The adult leader in every case returns the hand salute while continuing underway. Standing salutes are given only when consistent with the size and stability of the boat.

15.3 Landship and Ceremonies

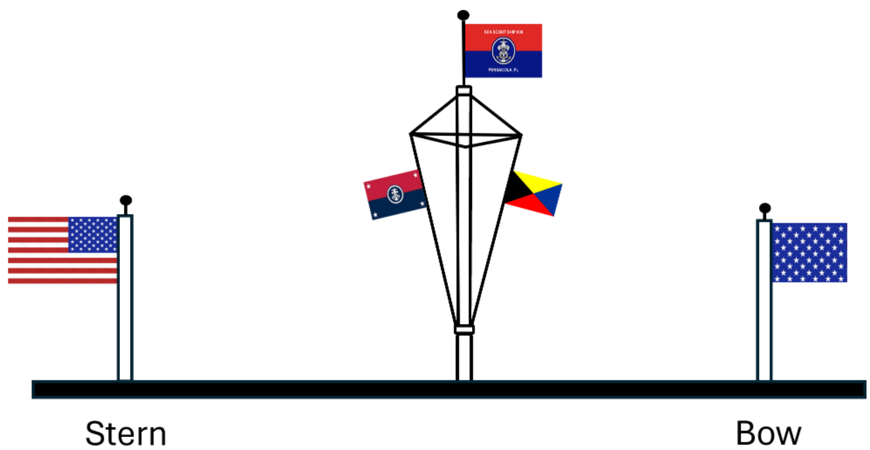
A landship creates a unique atmosphere for Sea Scout ceremonies. The overall deck plan for a landship is based on the customs and traditions of our Navy. A layout involving minimum equipment can be easily built and set up by any ship. The objective is to create a nautical atmosphere that makes ceremonies natural and Sea Scouts more fun.



Sea Scout Landship Layout



Flag Placement on a Landship



15.3.1 Sample Landship Ceremony

15.3.1.1 Opening

Five minutes before the start of the ceremony the ship's bell is rung five times; three minutes before the start of the ceremony, the ship's bell is rung three times; two minutes … two times; one minute … one time.

Boatswain and Boatswain's Mate board ship. At the rail they render the double salute, first saluting amidships and then aft, and then laying aboard. Two steps aboard, the Boatswain's Mate salutes the Boatswain and the Boatswain orders:

Boatswain: "Boatswain's Mate, proceed with the opening ceremony."

Boatswain's Mate: (Salutes) "Aye, aye." (Boatswain returns salute.)

Boatswain's Mate: Faces the crew off ship, pipes "Attention" followed by "All Hands," and orders, "Crew Leaders, muster your crews."

Crews: Crews, in order, fall in at the port gangway.

Boatswain: Takes station on the aft side of the gangway facing the position just forward of the gangway and faces the gangway.

Crew Leader: (The first Crew Leader salutes inboard where the Boatswain's Mate is standing.) "Alpha Crew, request permission to lay aboard, Boatswain."

Boatswain's Mate: "Permission granted." (Boatswain's Mate returns salute.)

Crew Leader: (Drops their salute, turns and faces aft and salutes, then gives order to their crew.) "Alpha Crew, lay aboard."

(CREWS lay aboard in order. Each individual as they board renders the double salute. When they salute inboard, the Boatswain's Mate returns the salute. As the crew members lay aboard, they position themselves in front of their chair facing forward. The Crew Leader is located one step forward of the center of his crew facing their crew. When the entire crew is on deck and at quarters, then…)

Crew Leader: "Inboard face."

Crews: The next crew will proceed to board in the same manner (Bravo Crew, Charlie Crew, Delta Crew, etc.) Proceed until all crews have boarded the landship.

Boatswain's Mate: (Turns to face inboard and the Boatswain, salutes.) "The ship is at quarters."

Boatswain: (Faces the Boatswain's Mate, returns salute.) "Very well, receive the report."

Boatswain's Mate:	(Salutes) "Aye, aye." (Turns and faces crews.) "Crew Leaders, report."
Crew Leaders:	(One at a time each turns to face the Boatswain's Mate and salutes.) "Alpha Crew, (Bravo Crew…), all present or accounted for."
Boatswain's Mate:	(Returns salute of each Crew Leader.) "Very well." (Faces Boatswain, salutes.) "All crews present or accounted for."
Boatswain:	(Returns salute) "Very well. Set the watch."
Boatswain's Mate:	"Aye, aye." (Faces crews) "Crew Leader Alpha, your crew will be the duty crew. Assign Color Guards."
Alpha Crew Leader:	"Aye, aye, Boatswain," (Salutes Boatswain's Mate, then gives order.) "Alpha Crew, Sea Scouts (state last names) will serve as Color Guards."
Boatswain's Mate:	(Turns to face Boatswain, salutes.) "Color Guard has been assigned."
Boatswain:	"Very well, stand by for colors."
Boatswain's Mate:	"Aye, aye." (Salutes the Boatswain.)
Boatswain:	(Retrieves the colors from storage. While the Boatswain retrieves the colors, the Boatswain's Mate faces the crew and gives command.) "Color Guards post."
Color Guard:	(Color guard comes forward and faces the Boatswain to receive the colors.)
Boatswain:	(Passes the ensign to the Boatswain's Mate placing their right hand on top of the ensign and left hand under the ensign. Once the Boatswain's Mate receives the ensign, the Boatswain salutes the colors. The Boatswain's Mate does not return the salute.)
Boatswain's Mate:	(Receives the ensign with both hands, left hand below the colors and right hand on top of the colors and faces the port gangway. If the Boatswain's Mate must move to present the colors to the Color Guard, the Boatswain's Mate will press the ensign to their chest with right hand over left. The Boatswain's Mate passes the colors to the bearer and salutes the ensign at half time. The bearer takes the colors with both hands, placing his left hand under the colors and then passes their right hand over the top of the colors as if to smooth the fabric. The Color Guard does not return the salute.)
Color Guard:	(When the Boatswain's Mate drops their salute, the Color Guard quickly proceeds to their posts and makes ready the ensign on the halyard. As the bearer of the ensign moves to the flag halyard, he

presses the ensign to their chest with the right hand over the left. The color guard then prepares the flag halyard to receive the colors, attaches the ensign to the flag halyard and stands by for orders.)

Boatswain's Mate: (When all is ready, commands.) "All hands face the ensign." (Faces the audience.) "Will the audience please stand." (Pipes "Attention" followed by "All Hands," then gives order.) "Attention on deck, hand salute." (Pipes "Pipe the Side." The Boatswain's Mate salutes with their weak hand.)

Color Guard: (At the first note of "Pipe the Side" the ensign is run up smartly. As the ensign leaves the bearer's hands, he takes one step backward and salutes. Upon securing the halyard, the guard takes one step backward and salutes. At the last sharp high note of "Pipe the Side," all hands smartly retire their salute. All hands remain at attention until the halyard is secured.)

Boatswain's Mate: (While the Color Guard is securing the halyard, turn to the audience and state.) "Please be seated." (Turn toward crew.) "Crew, inboard face." (When the halyard is secured, order.) "Color Guard, return to your crew." (Pipe "Carry On" and give command.) "Carry on. Carry on." (The Color Guard returns to their crews. When they have returned to their stations, the Boatswain's Mate turns and faces the Boatswain.)

Boatswain: "Standby to receive the Skipper." (The Boatswain remains in position just forward of the gangway facing the gangway. The Boatswain's Mate moves to one step forward and one step inboard to pipe the side. A crew leader moves to the ship's bell.)

"(Ship's name) arriving." (Two bells are sounded as the Skipper approaches the gangway. The moment the Skipper takes their first step onto the ship, one bell is sounded. The bell is guttered, followed by piping "Pipe the Side." The Skipper first salutes inboard and then aft. The Boatswain salutes the Skipper when the Skipper salutes inboard as the Boatswain has placed themselves nearly amidships facing the gangway.)

Boatswain: (Welcomes the Skipper aboard, faces the Skipper.) "Do you wish to inspect the ship?"

Skipper: "Not at this time. Carry on."

Boatswain: (Salutes) "Aye, aye. Boatswain's Mate, proceed with the scheduled ceremony."

Boatswain's Mate: (Salutes) "Aye, aye."

If the council commodore is present:

Boatswain: "Stand by to receive the (Council Name) Commodore."

Boatswain's Mate:	(Faces Boatswain, salutes.) "Aye, aye."
Boatswain:	(Council name) arriving." (Four bells are sounded with piping.)
Boatswain:	(Welcomes the Commodore aboard.) "Do you wish to inspect the ship?"
Commodore:	"Not at this time. Carry on."
Boatswain:	(Salutes) "Aye, aye. Boatswain's Mate, carry out the orders of the day."
Boatswain's Mate:	(Salutes) "Aye, aye."

15.3.1.2 Closing Ceremony

Boatswain:	(The adult with the highest rank onboard disembarks first.) "Boatswain's Mate, The Commodore is ready to disembark." (As the Commodore approaches the gangway the appropriate number of bells is struck.)
Boatswain's Mate:	"Aye, aye." (Salutes. As the Commodore leaves, the order of salutes changes. First salute aft, then turn and salute inboard. The Boatswain positions themselves forward of the gangway in line with the keel and returns the Commodore's salute when they salute inboard. The Boatswain's Mate pipes "Pipe the Side." When the Commodore takes their first step off the ship, one bell is struck then guttered.)
Skipper:	The Skipper then informs the Boatswain that they are ready to disembark, and goes ashore in the same manner. The same procedure is followed as with the Commodore except for two bells.
Boatswain:	"Boatswain's Mate, retire the colors."
Boatswain's Mate:	"Aye, aye." (Salutes)
Boatswain:	Returns the salute.
Boatswain's Mate:	"Color Guard, post." (As the color guard reports to the stern, gives order.) "All hands, to the ensign, face. Will the audience please stand?" (When the color guard is ready with halyard in hand, the Boatswain's Mate pipes "Attention" followed by "All Hands." Orders.) "Hand salute." (Pipes "Pipe the Side." The colors start down at the first note of the pipe and the piping continues until the colors are one foot above the deck. As the call ends with a sharp high note, all hands retire their salute smartly. All hands remain at attention until the colors are folded and delivered to the Boatswain's Mate. The color guard then folds the flag. After folding into the traditional triangle, the bearer places their left hand under the flag and runs his right hand over the top of the flag as if to smooth the fabric.

The bearer then presents the flag to the Boatswain's Mate and salutes at halftime. The Boatswain's Mate does not return the salute.)

Boatswain's Mate: "Color guard, return to your crew. Members of the audience, please be seated. All hands, inboard face." (Receives the flag from the color guard with both hands. The flag bearer positions their left hand below and right hand above. They then do an about face and hand the flag to the Boatswain and salute at half time. The Boatswain does not return the salute.)

Boatswain: Receives the flag and places it in the proper storage area.

Boatswain's Mate: (Pipes "Carry On" and gives order.) "Carry on. Carry on."

Boatswain: "Boatswain's Mate, have the ship's company disembark."

Boatswain's Mate: (Salutes) "Aye, aye."

Boatswain: (Returns the salute.)

Boatswain's Mate: "Ship's company, prepare to disembark." (Positions self forward of the gangway approximately amidships, facing the gangway.

Crew Leader: (The first Crew Leader steps to the gangway and salutes the Boatswain's Mate.) "Alpha Crew requests permission to disembark."

Boatswain's Mate: (Salutes) "Permission granted." (When permission is granted, the Crew Leader completes a double salute, saluting aft first and then inboard followed by each crew member completing a double salute as they depart the ship. The Boatswain's Mate salutes each member when they salute inboard. All crews depart in the same manner.)

(After the last ship member has departed, the Boatswain's Mate turns to face the Boatswain. Salutes.) "All hands are ashore.

Boatswain: "Very well, secure the ship." (With this the Boatswain and Boatswain's Mate step to the gangway. The Boatswain's Mate salutes the Boatswain, and the Boatswain returns the salute. Then both salute aft, turn and salute inboard and step off the landship.)

Landship ceremonies should be customized to reflect the culture of your unit. Other sample ceremonies can be found at seascout.org.

15.4 Boatswain's Pipe

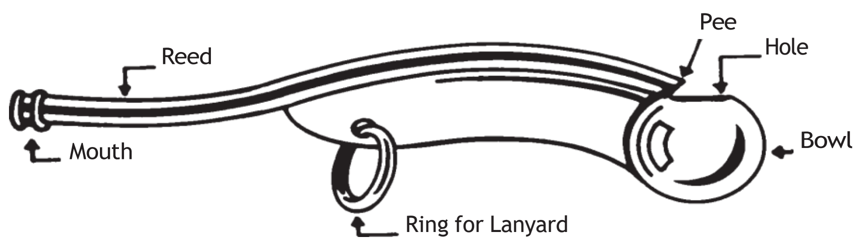
The boatswain's pipe in the early days was known as the "whistle of command" and had its origin in the rowing galley of Grecian ships. The use of a call eliminated confusion and misunderstanding. In the days of sail, men were rigidly trained to respond immediately to the piping.

Although it may look and sound a bit like a whistle, it is a musical instrument on which many kinds of calls may be played. It is not like the whistle that a coach might use with his squad.

The pipe is used only by the boatswain and crew leaders, not by the Skipper or the mate. The Skipper or the mate issues orders verbally to the boatswain who, in turn, either uses a pipe or passes them on verbally to the crew leaders. Crew leaders may also wear the boatswain's pipe as an indication of their office and also to transmit orders to their crews. Note: The person making the call is permitted to salute with the left hand if the right hand is used with the call.

The boatswain's pipe is worn suspended on a white lanyard and carried in the left-hand pocket of the uniform shirt.

Boatswain's Pipe




[Piping the Boatswain's Call]

15.4.1 Tuning the Pipe

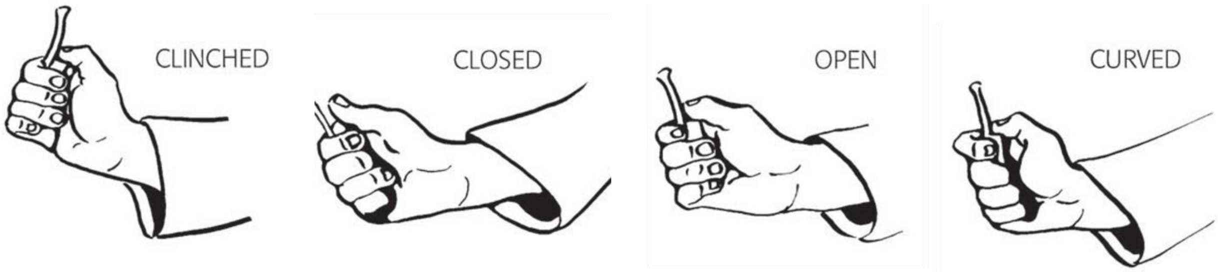
The pipe can be tuned by adjusting the pee or by flattening or soldering the sides to fill the space between the pee and the bowl. Sometimes the call can be improved by scraping the wind edge or enlarging the hole in the bowl by filing.

It is essential that the reed strike the hole fairly. This can be tested by pushing a broom straw down through the reed and adjusting the wind edge until it splits the straw.

If correctly tuned, the pipe should sound even when blown very lightly with the hand open. With the hand closed, the call should sound clear and shrill when blown rather hard.

15.4.2 Positions of the Hand

There are four hand positions: open, curved, closed, and clinched. These positions will also indicate the lung force or the necessary pressure of blowing air. As a rule, the open hand calls for the least pressure needed to make a soft, clear note; the clinched hand calls for the most wind pressure possible to make a note shrill and clear.



15.4.3 Call Notation

To learn the six calls used in Sea Scout ceremonies, you must first understand the musical notation. Note that the illustration for each call shows how the four positions of the hand are designated in the four spaces of a musical staff.

Boatswains Call Score

Clinched	——	——
Closed	-----------	
Curved	——➤——➤	
Open		

- The horizontal straight line on the staff indicates a smooth note.
- A dotted line indicates a rattled note, made by flipping the tongue against the roof of the mouth, imitating a whistle rattled by a pea.
- A broken line indicates an undulating note. Undulating notes are made by a combination of the tongue slightly undulating while the throat checks the lung pressure or flow of breath, causing the sound to undulate smoothly, but continuously, at equal intervals.
- Full arrowheads along a line indicate full breath impulses. Half arrowheads mean gentle breath impulses.
- An asterisk indicates to end sharply.
- Intervals or rests are marked as such with the number of seconds above, if more than one is required. Otherwise, the notes are slurred smoothly.

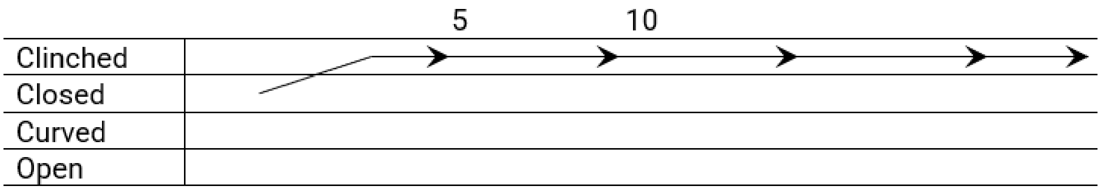

Sounds of the Bosun’s Call

15.4.4 The Calls

15.4.4.1 Word to Be Passed

This call is the prelude to any word passed aboard ship. Its purpose is to command the attention of all hands to the announcement about to be made.

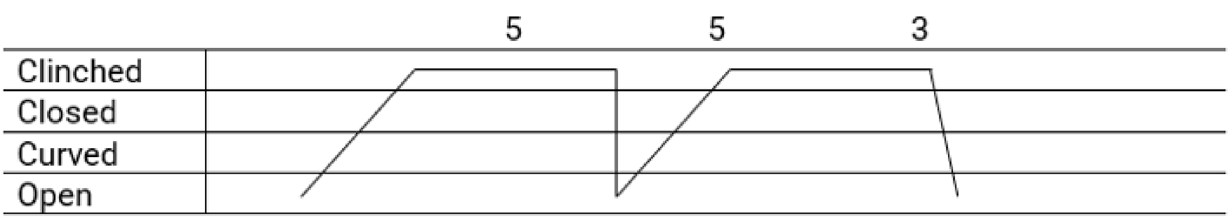
Start in closed and clinch within a second. Impulse the shrill call with lung force about three times, and end sharply. Follow with the order or information to be passed.



15.4.4.2 Boat Call

Boat call is piped to call away a boat, and the call is lengthened in proportion to the seniority of the boat called.

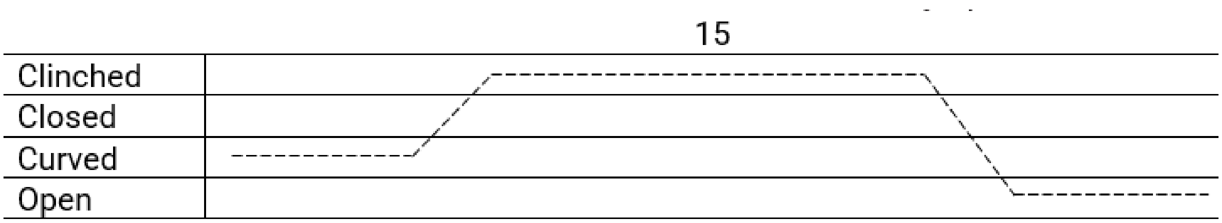
Start in open, close to clinched, hold the shrill five seconds; then open and close again to the clinch, and hold the shrill five seconds; then open and end softly, allowing three seconds for the fall to silence. Follow with the order for the boat wanted.



15.4.4.3 Veer

This call is piped to “Ease away,” “Walk back,” or “Slack away.”

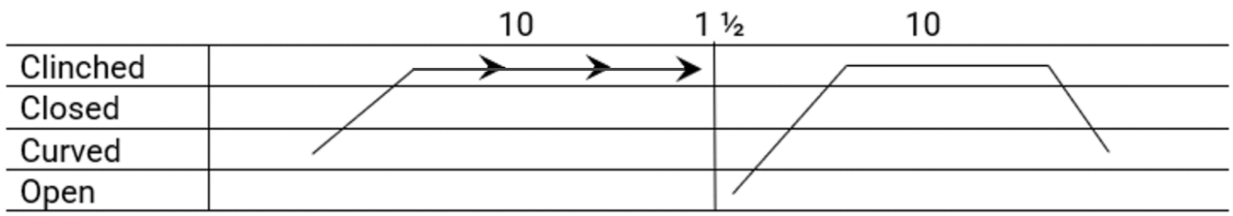
Start in curved and close to clinched. Follow with the order: “Side boys, post.”



15.4.4.4 All Hands

This is piped to assemble all hands.

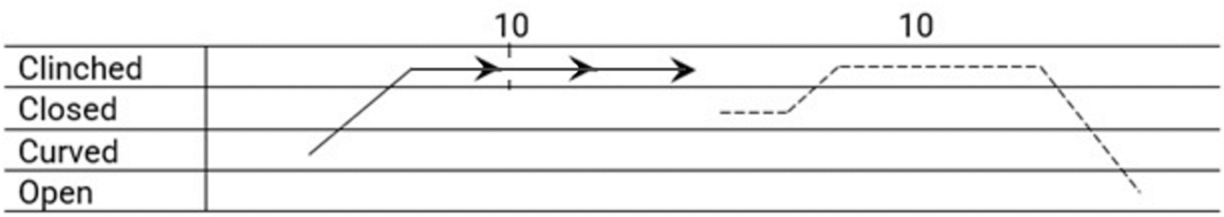
Close to clinched and impulse softly about three times, holding the shrill 10 seconds, ending sharp; again close to clinched softly, hold the second shrill 10 seconds, and allow it to fall softly to a finish for three seconds. Follow with the order: “All hands on deck!” (or wherever they are to assemble).



15.4.3.5 Pipe Down

This is piped for dismissal from all ceremonies and assemblies, and for any meal.

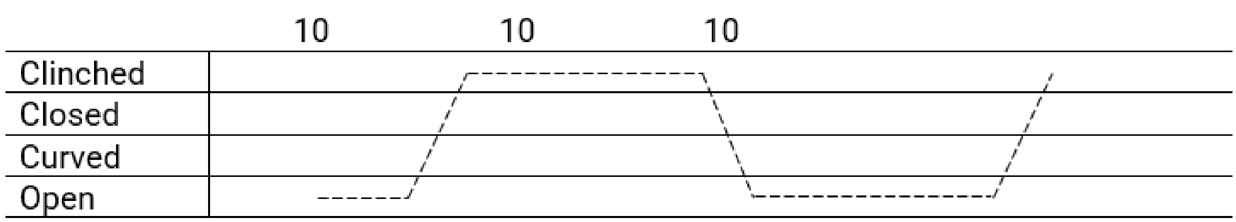
It is a combination of the calls “word to be passed” and a “veer” of about 10 seconds, ending in a sharp, short peep. Follow with the order: “Dismissed” or “Fall in for mess.”



15.4.3.6 Piping the Side

This is piped to accompany side honors.

Start in open with a low, smooth note; rise slowly to the shrill; fall faster to a low note; and finish with a low, soft shrill. Leaders and honor guards come to salute at first note and hold it until the last note. The Boatswain holds the call with the right hand and salutes left-handed.



16.0 Glossary

Sea Scout Manual

16.0 Glossary

The jargon of the sea began with mariners centuries ago. Many terms were added during the golden age of sail, and a few came about later with the advent of steam power and the internal combustion engine.

A few meanings were lost or changed as the basic source of energy was transferred from sail to mechanical power. But the flavor of this language is so strong that it has survived and will likely persist for ages.

abaft. Toward the stern; at the rear of a ship.
abeam. At a right angle to the centerline or keel of a vessel; being at a relative bearing of 90 or 270 degrees.
aboard. On or in the boat.
abreast. Lying or moving side by side.
adrift. Not made fast; lying around loose; at the mercy of wind and wave.
aft. In, near, or toward the stern or rear end of the boat.
after. Toward the stern.
aground. On the bottom; stranded (usually a miserable situation).
ahead. In a forward direction.
amidships. Midway between the bow and the stern, or the front and back of the boat.
anchorage. A sheltered area where boats can anchor in reasonable safety and not interfere with marine traffic.
AOWLS. Advanced On-the-Water Leader Skills Training - a course for Sea Scout leaders that models the methods and objectives of delivering the Sea Scout program while underway and to teach adult leaders how to support youth as they advance in rank.
apparent wind. The wind felt aboard a boat. It is the combination of the true wind and the wind caused by the motion of the boat.
astern. Behind a boat, or in a backward direction.
auxiliary. A boat equipped to be propelled by sail or power, or both used together.
aweigh. Said of an anchor when it is clear of the bottom.
backstay. A wire brace led aft to support a mast against the pressure of the wind.
bark. Three-masted sailing vessel square-rigged on fore and main, with the mizzen fore-and-aft rigged.
barkentine. Three-masted sailing vessel square-rigged on fore, with the main and mizzen fore-and-aft rigged.
barometer. An instrument for measuring atmospheric pressure.
beam. The greatest width of a vessel.

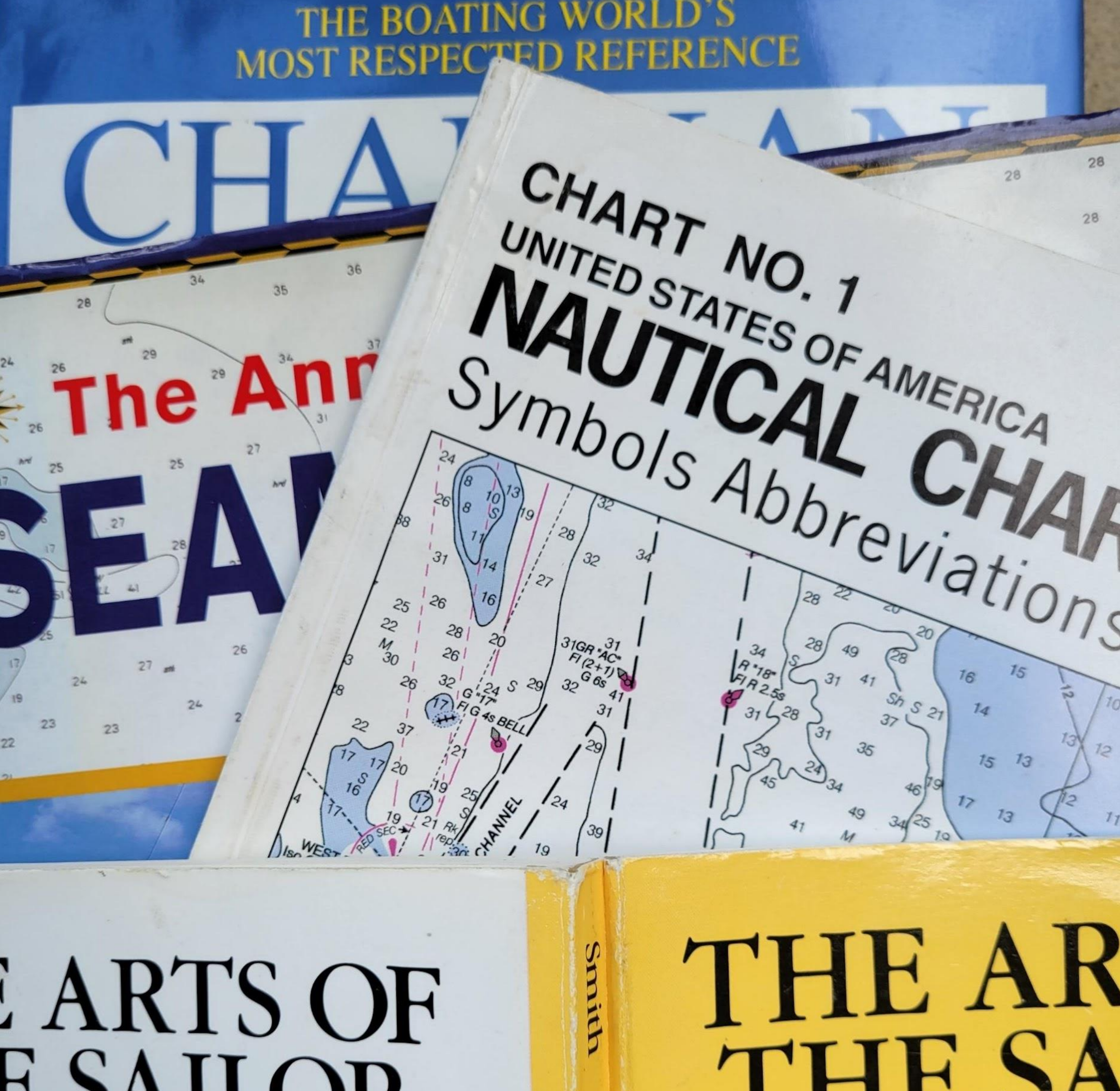
beam sea. A sea running at right angles to the boat's course.
bearing. The direction of an object from a boat (expressed in compass degrees).
beat. A zigzag course against the wind.
belay. A command to stop; a line is belayed when it is made fast.
belaying pin. A wooden or metal pin fitted into a rail; it is used for the securing of sheets and halyards.
bell. Used aboard a boat as a warning signal, or as a means of announcing time.
below. In the cabin or under the deck.
bend. To connect two lengths of rope; a knot used for this purpose.
bight. Any part of a rope except the ends; usually refers to a curl or loop in a rope.
bilge. The lowest point of the inner hull of a ship; also, the internal part of a boat below waterline.
binnacle. Protective casing for the compass.
bitt. A stout vertical post used for taking the heavy strain of lines used in mooring or **anchoring.** Bitts may be bolted to the deck, or through the deck and stepped at the keel. Bitts are sometimes fitted with round metal pins (called "Norman pins") near the bitt's head to aid in belaying a line.
bitter end. The last part of a rope, or the last link in an anchor chain.
block. A mechanical device used for transmitting power or changing the direction of motion by means of a rope or chain passing around movable pulleys.
boom. A spar at the foot of a fore-and-aft sail to which the sail is secured.
boom crutch. A notched upright board, or metal structure, into which the boom fits when the sails are furled or off the spars.
bow. The forward or front end of a vessel.
bow chocks. Metal fittings on the deck at the bow through which anchor and dock lines are fed.
bowsprit. A spar to which the headsails are attached, extending forward beyond the bow.
brightwork. Woodwork on a vessel which is varnished or finished to show its grain. Also refers to polished metal parts.
broach to. Said of a vessel under sail when running with the wind on the quarter when the ship's head comes up suddenly toward the wind in consequence of a sea striking the stern or through bad steering.
bulkhead. A wall or partition between compartments—often watertight for safety.
bunk. Sleeping berth; also, something reported that is not done or not true.
buoy. A floating marker anchored to the bottom.
cable. A rope or chain secured to the anchor.
cast off. To let go of a line.
caulk. To make seams watertight by filling them with cotton, oakum, or caulking compound.
centerboard. A movable plate of wood or metal pivoted at its forward end that can be raised or lowered through the keel of a sailboat to prevent sliding to leeward.
chafing gear. A wrapping of canvas or rope around spars, rigging, or lines to prevent chafing.
chart. Marine version of a road map showing aids to navigation, shoals, water depth, dangers, etc.
chine. The curved or angular part of the hull where the bottom and sides meet.
clear. Free, not entangled.
cleat. A horned fitting of wood or metal to which lines are made fast.
clew. The aft lower corner of a sail.
close-hauled. Sailing as close to the wind as possible.
coaming. A protective rail higher than the deck to keep water out of the cockpit.
cockpit. Open part or well of the boat where passengers sit and the helmsman steers.
coil. To arrange a line in easily manageable loops so it can be stowed.
colors. The ceremony of raising or lowering the national ensign and other recognized flags.

come about. To change the course of a ship when sailing by the wind so it will sail at the same angle with the wind on the other side.
course. The direction steered by the helmsman.
cringle. A ring sewn into the sail so a line can be passed through it, like a grommet in the edge of a tent.
cross bearing. Two or more bearings of known objectives noted and plotted on a chart to determine the ship's position.
current. The movement of water in a horizontal direction.
dead reckoning. A method of navigation by which the position of a ship is calculated from its last well-determined position and its subsequent direction and rate of progress through the water.
deviation. The change in the compass reading caused by the magnetic influence of the iron, steel, or electronics aboard a boat and its equipment.
displacement. The number of tons of water displaced by a vessel afloat.
ditty bag. A small bag for carrying or stowing all personal articles.
downwind. To leeward.
draft. Depth of a hull from the waterline to the lowest part of the keel.
ease. To slacken or loosen.
ensign. The flag of the United States of America or other nation. Also, the flag of the America's Boating Club, U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary, a yacht ensign flown by documented yachts.
fast. A rope or chain by which a vessel is moored to a wharf, pier, quay, etc.
fathom. A unit of water-depth equivalent to 6 feet.
fenders. Portable bumpers hung over the sides to protect the hull from contact with a pier, wharf, or other boat.
fid. A tapered wooden, bone, or metal tool used to separate the strands of a rope before splicing.
fitting. General name for ship's hardware.
fix. A term denoting the determination of a ship's position by observation of celestial or terrestrial objects, or by a combination of both.
flake. A method of loosely stowing line that is too thick or too long to coil. Flaking down a line involves laying it onto a deck in figure eights**.** Each figure eight is a "fake." A line with multiple fakes has been "flaked down."
Flemish down. Line that has been secured on a deck in a tight, flat coil resembling a mat.
flotsam. Floating trees, plants, driftwood, wreckage, etc. (any "stuff" floating).
fluke. The flattened end of an anchor arm.
fore and aft. In line with the keel; from stem to stern; lengthwise.
forestay. A stay leading from a mast forward.
forward. Toward the bow.
foul. Not clear; jammed; tangled.
freeboard. The distance between the waterline and the main deck or gunwale.
galley. Kitchen aboard a boat.
gear. Name applied to blocks, tackle, ropes, and other equipment used in operating a boat.
give-way vessel. The vessel which, according to the rules of the road for two approaching vessels, must keep out of the way of the other.
ground tackle. The anchor and anchoring gear.
gunwale. Pronounced "gunnel"; upper edge of a boat's side.
halyard. A line used for hoisting sails.
handsomely. Gradually or carefully, as when slacking or easing a rope on which there is a strain.
hatch. An opening through the deck to a cabin or area below.
haul. To tighten or pull in (like hauling the anchor, for instance). A change of wind in a

counterclockwise direction.
hawse pipe. Opening in the bow of a vessel from which the anchor line is passed.
hawser. Fiber rope 5 to 24 inches in circumference used for towing or working the ship.
head. The toilet aboard a boat; the bow area of the boat.
heading. The direction in which a ship points or heads at any particular moment.
heave. To throw; the rise and fall of a vessel at sea.
heave in. To pull (as on an anchor line).
heave to. To put a sailing vessel in the position of lying to, by putting the helm down and causing the sails to counteract each other.
heaving line. A light line, or messenger, attached to a heavier line and thrown to a pier or other vessel.
heel. A boat heels when it inclines to one side or the other. There is a transverse tilt when the hull is off the vertical.
helm. The steering device; tiller, wheel.
helmsman. The person who steers.
hitch. To tie a rope to an object; a knot used for this purpose.
hook. Sailor's name for an anchor.
hull. The main body or shell of a boat, exclusive of superstructure.
ILSS. Introduction to Leadership Skills for Ships – a leadership course for Sea Scout youth.
IOWLS. Introduction to On-the-Water Leader Skills Training – a course for Sea Scout adult leaders that introduces the resources and on-the-water skills they need to assist Sea Scouts in achieving Ordinary rank.
jetsam. Things that sink in the water— they don't float like flotsam.
jib. A triangular sail set ahead of the foremast on a sailboat.
jibe. Bringing a sailboat from one tack to the other by swinging her stern across the wind, in order to bring the sails to the other side. To shift suddenly and with force from one side to another when running before the wind.
jib sheet. The line by which the angle of the jib is controlled.
jury rig. A makeshift rig.
keel. The backbone of the boat; the basic support extending from stem to stern.
knot. A measure of speed; the velocity in nautical miles (6,076 feet) per hour.
lee. Pertaining to the part or side away from the wind, or which is sheltered from the wind.
leeward. Pronounced "Loo-ard;" toward the lee side; away from the wind.
leeway. A drift to leeward, or in the direction toward which the wind is blowing.
lines. Ropes used for various purposes aboard a boat.
locker. A chest, box, cabinet, or closet used as a storage compartment.
log. A record of a vessel's activities; also, an instrument for measuring distance traveled.
logbook. A record of all the activities of a ship.
luff. The forward or entering edge of a sail.
luffing. The quivering of the sail when sailing almost directly into the wind.
mainsail. The boat's main or principal sail. It is the sail set on the mainmast.
mainsheet. The line by which the trim (angle) of the mainsail is controlled.
make fast. To secure the belaying turns of a rope around a cleat or belaying pin by adding a single hitch.
marlinspike. A pointed steel, bone, or wood tool used by seamen to separate the strands of rope when splicing; also, it can be used as a lever when putting on seizings, marline, etc.
midships. A term describing the position of an object midway between the stem and stern, or midway between the sides of the hull.
mizzenmast. The aft and shorter of two masts on yawls and ketches; the aftermost of three masts on a three-masted schooner, ship, or bark.
nautical mile. Known as a sea mile; it is 6,076.11549 feet long; usually rounded off to 6,076

feet.
navigation. Usually refers to celestial navigation, the determination of a ship's position by observation of celestial bodies (sun, moon, planets, and stars). Electronic navigation involves the use of electronic devices such as radio direction finders, radar, and satellite navigation aids.
outboard. Toward the sides of a vessel or outside of it.
outhaul. A device or line used to haul out the clew (aft corner) of a sail along a boom.
painter. A line at the bow of a small boat or canoe for securing it.
pay out. To slack away (let out) a line made fast on board.
peak. The angle formed by the head and leech of a gaff sail. The greater the angle, the less peak the sail is said to have.
pelorus. A movable compass card swung in gimbals and with a sighting apparatus through which the observer may sight on an object.
piloting. A near-shore navigation method by which the movements of a ship are directed by reference to landmarks, other navigational aids, and soundings.
point. The ability to sail close into the wind.
port. The left side of a vessel looking toward the bow.
quarter. That part of a craft lying within 45 degrees from the stern; starboard or port quarter, depending on whether aft right or left corner is referred to.
quarterdeck. The stern deck area of the vessel; on Navy ships, the deck area at the head of the gangway; also, the youth leadership of a Sea Scout ship.
rail. The boat's side above the deck line.
reef. To reduce sail area.
reeve. To thread a rope through a block.
rigging. A general term for all ropes, chains, and gear used for supporting and operating masts, yards, booms, stays, and sails.
right of way. The legal right and obligation to hold one's course and speed.
rode. The length of cable measured from the hawse hole to the anchor.
rope. A general term for cordage over 1 inch in circumference.
rudder. A device that is used for steering and maneuvering a vessel.
rules of the road. The rules and regulations accepted by international agreement and enforced by law in maritime countries, which govern the movements of ships when approaching each other.
running. Sailing with the wind astern.
running rigging. All rope or wire lines used to control sails.
sail. A piece of fabric of some kind spread to the wind to cause, or assist in causing, a vessel to move through the water.
scope. The ratio between the anchor rode and the depth of the water. A vessel anchored in 10 feet of water with 70 feet of anchor cable out is riding at a scope of 7 to 1.
seam. The joint between adjacent planks.
secure. To make fast a line, or to leave a boat safely moored or tied up with everything aboard shipshape; also, to tie down a movable part.
seize. To bind, lash, or make fast one rope to another, a rope to a spar, etc.
shackle. A wrought-iron or steel fitting with a pin across the throat, used as a connection between lengths of chain.
sheave. A grooved wheel in a block, mast, or yard over which a rope passes.
sheet. A rope or chain fastened to one or both of the lower corners of a sail or beam and used to extend it or to change its direction.
shipshape. In correct fashion aboard a ship; everything orderly, secure, and in its place.
shrouds. Wire stays leading from the upper part of the mast to the deck on either side to provide lateral support.
sister hook. Two hooks opposed to each other and pivoted together on their shanks. Sister

hooks are intended to allow materials (such as lines or cargo) to pass between the two hooks and then hold the materials fast under tension.
snub. To check a rope or line from running out by making a turn about a cleat, piling, or post.
spars. All booms, masts, gaffs, etc., to which a sail may be set.
spreaders. Short spars extending from each side of the mast to spread the shrouds and give them greater mechanical advantage to keep the mast straight.
SSLABT. Sea Scout Adult Leader Basic Training.
stand-on vessel. The vessel which, according to the rules of the road for two approaching vessels, has the right of way and is obligated to maintain course and speed.
starboard. The right side of a vessel, looking forward.
stay. Rigging: a wire or line that supports a mast.
stern. The aft part or back end of a vessel.
swab. A seagoing name for a mop (one swabs down, not mops up).
tack. To change the course of a ship by turning her through the wind so she will sail at the same angle but with the wind on the other side.
tiller. The handle attached to the rudder by which the boat is steered if it is not equipped with a wheel.
topsides. The sides of the hull above the waterline.
transom. The framework of the stern; the boards forming the flat stern area of any boat not having a pointed stern.
trim. The way in which a boat floats; the set of a boat's sails.
true wind. The direction of the wind as observed from a stationary object.
underway. A vessel is underway when it is neither anchored, moored, nor aground. It need not be in motion to be underway.
variation. Difference in direction between true north as determined by the Earth's axis of rotation and the magnetic north determined by the Earth's magnetism.
veer. To slack off and allow to run out (for instance, veering more anchor line). A change of wind in a clockwise direction.
wake. The track a vessel leaves astern.
watch. The part of a ship's company employed in working it at one time.
way. The progress or motion through the water of a vessel. A vessel gathers way when its rate of sailing increases. Don't confuse "making way" (in motion) with "underway" (neither anchored, moored, nor aground).
weather side. The windward side; the side toward the wind.
windward. Pronounced "win'ard;" the direction from which the wind is blowing.
yaw. A vessel yaws when it swings widely from one side of the course to the other—usually when running before heavy, quartering seas.



17.0 Resources

Sea Scout Manual

17.0 Helpful Resources

The following is not an exhaustive list, but everything here can either be purchased or downloaded as a digital version.

Boat Design and Building

Brewer, Ted. Understanding Boat Design. Camden: McGraw Hill, 1993.
Buehler, George. Buehler's Backyard Boatbuilding for the 21st Century. Frederick: Ragged Mountain Press. 2014.
Chapell, Howard I. American Small Sailing Craft. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 1951.
Chesapeake Light Craft. Boat Plans/Boat Kits/Boatbuilding Supplies & Gear. www.clcboats.com Accessed 17 July 2024.
Neison, Adrian. Practical Boat Building for Amateurs: Full Instructions for Designing and Building Punts, Skiffs, Canoes, Sailing Boats, Etc. Chicago: Frederick J. Drake & Co. 2017.
Rossel, Greg. Building Small Boats. Brooklin: WoodenBoat Publications, 1998.
Warren, Graham, and David Gidmark. Canoe Paddles: A Complete Guide to Making Your Own. Buffalo: Firefly Books, 2001.
Wooden Boat Magazine. http://www.woodenboat.com Accessed 17 July 2024.
Wooden Boat School. http://thewoodenboatschool.com/boatbuilding/index.php Accessed 17 July 2024.

Canoeing

American Canoe Association. www.americancanoe.org Accessed 17 July 2024.
American Whitewater. www.americanwhitewater.org Accessed 17 July 2024.
Handel, Carle W. Canoe Camping. New York: Amazon, 2011.
Introduction to Paddling. American Canoe Association. Birmingham: Menasha Ridge Press, 1996.
Jacobsen, Cliff. Basic Essentials: Solo Canoeing. New Haven: Globe Pequot Press, 1999.
Jennings, John. The Canoe: A Living Tradition. Buffalo: Firefly Books, 2002.
Mason, Bill. Path of the Paddle, 2nd Edition. Minnetonka: NorthWord Press, 1995.
McGuffin, Gary, and Joanie McGuffin. Paddle Your Own Canoe. Ontario: Boston Mills Press, 2005.
Poling, Jim Sr. The Canoe: An Illustrated History. Woodstock: Countrymen Press, 2001.
Ray, Slim. The Canoe Handbook. Harrisburg: Stackpole Books, 1992.
Rounds, Jon. Basic Canoeing: All the Skills You Need to Get Started. Mechanicsburg: Stackpole Books, 2003.
Rugge, John, and James West Davidson. The Complete Wilderness Paddler. New York: Vintage, 1982.
USA Canoe and Kayak. www.usack.org Accessed 17 July 2024.
United States Canoe Association. www.uscanoe.com Accessed 17 July 2024.

Galley Techniques and Outdoor Cooking and Camping

Bates, Joseph D. Jr. The Outdoor Cook's Bible. New York: Doubleday Books, 2012.
Craighead, Frank C. Jr., and John J. Craighead. How to Survive on Land and Sea. Annapolis: U.S. Naval Institute, 1984.
Kephart, Horace. Camp Cookery-Outdoor Cooking Secrets From 1910. Carlisle: Applewood Books, 2008.
Oetting, Rae, and Mabel Otis Robison. Camping and Outdoor Cooking. Minneapolis: T. S. Denison and Company, 1958.
The Scouts BSA Handbook. Irving: Scouting America, 2024.

General Seamanship

America's Boating Club. https://americasboatingclub.org/ Accessed 17 July 2024.
Brotherton, Miner K. The 12-Volt Bible. Newport: Seven Seas Press, 1985.
Burgess, Robert F. Handbook of Trailer Sailing. Camden: International Marine, 1992.
Cutler, Thomas J. Blue Jacket's Manual. Annapolis: Naval Institute Press, 2023.
de Kerchove, René. International Maritime Dictionary. Princeton: Van Nostrand Company, 1961.
Krietemeyer, Capt. George E. The Coast Guardsman's Manual. Annapolis: Naval Institute Press, 2000.
Maloney, Elbert S. Chapman. Piloting, Seamanship and Small Boat Handling. New York: Hearst Marine Books, 2021.
Marino, Emiliano. The Sailmaker's Apprentice. Camden: International Marine, 2001.
Noel, Capt. John V. Jr. Knight's Modern Seamanship. New York: D. Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, 1961.
Rogers, John G. Origins of Sea Terms. Mystic: Mystic Seaport Museum, 1985.
Rousmaniere, John. The Annapolis Book of Seamanship. New York: Simon & Schuster, 2014.
United States Coast Guard Auxiliary. https://www.cgaux.org/ Accessed 17 July 2024.
Van Dorn, William G. Oceanography & Seamanship. Centreville: Cornell Maritime Press, 2009.
Vigor, John. The Practical Mariner's Book of Knowledge. New York: International Marine/McGraw Hill. 2013.

Kayaking

Alderson, Doug. Sea Kayaker's Savvy Paddler. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 2001.
Burch, David. Fundamentals of Kayak Navigation. Old Saybrook: Globe Pequot Press, 1993.
Burnham, Bill, and Mary Burnham. Kayaking for Everyone. New Haven: Globe Pequot Press, 2010.
Diaz, Ralph. Complete Folding Kayaker. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 1994.
Dillon, Pam, and Jeremy Oyen. Kayaking. American Canoe Association, Champaign: Human Kinetics, 2009.
Dowd, John. Sea Kayaking: A Manual for Long Distance Touring. Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre Ltd., 1988.
Essentials of Kayak Touring. American Canoe Association. Birmingham: Menasha Ridge Press, 2005.
Gronseth, George, and Matt Broze. Sea Kayaker's Deep Trouble and Their Lessons. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 1997.

Johnson, Shelley. The Complete Sea Kayaker's Handbook. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 2002.
Killen, Ray. Simple Kayak Navigation. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 2006.
Robison, John. Sea Kayaking Illustrated: A Visual Guide to Better Paddling. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 2003.
Seidman, David. The Essential Sea Kayaker: A Complete Course for the Open Water Paddler. Camden: Ragged Mountain Press, 1992.
Whiting, Ken. Recreational Kayaking: The Ultimate Guide. Bingham Farms: The Heliconia Press, 2008.

Knots and Ropework

Ashley, Clifford W. The Ashley Book of Knots. New York: Random House, Inc., 1993.
Day, Cyrus. The Art of Knotting and Splicing. Annapolis: Naval Institute Press, 1986.
Graumont, Raoul, and John J. Hensel. Encyclopedia of Knots and Fancy Rope Work. Cambridge: Cornell Maritime Press, 2007.
Graumont, Raoul, and Elmer Wenstrom. Fisherman's Knots—and Nets. Atglen: Schiffer Publishing, 2009.
Henderson, Richard. Understanding Rigs and Rigging. New York: McGraw Hill, 1990.
Merry, Barbara and Martin Dugard. The Splicing Handbook, 2nd Edition. Camden: International Marine, 2000.
Smith, Hervey G. The Arts of the Sailor: Knotting, Splicing and Ropework. New York: Dover Publications, 2015.
Toss, Brion. The Rigger's Apprentice. Camden: International Marine, 1992.
Toss, Brion. The Rigger's Locker. Camden: International Marine, 1992.

Piloting and Navigation

Bauer, Bruce A. The Sextant Handbook. New York: McGraw Hill Professional, 1995.
Blewitt, Mary. Celestial Navigation for Yachtsmen, 13th Edition. New York: Bloomsbury, 2017.
Bok, Bart J., and Francis W. Wright. Basic Marine Navigation. New York: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1944.
Bowditch, Nathaniel. American Practical Navigator. Bethesda: National Imagery and Mapping Agency, 2002.
Burch, David. Emergency Navigation, 2nd Edition. New York: McGraw Hill, 2008.
Chapman and Jonathan Eaton. Piloting and Seamanship, 69th Edition. New York: Hearst Home, 2021.
Eyges, Leonard. The Practical Pilot. Maine: International Marine, 1989.
Neeley, Henry M. Primer for Star Gazers. New York: Gramercy, 1989.
Shufeldt, H.H., and G.D. Dunlap. Piloting and Dead Reckoning. Annapolis: Naval Institute Press, 1991.
Sterling, Frank W. Small Boat Navigation. New York: McMillan, 1917.

Safety, First Aid, Swimming, and Lifesaving

Craighead, Frank, C., Jr., and John J. Craighead. How to Survive on Land and Sea, U.S. Naval Institute, Annapolis, Maryland. 1968.
Rutstrum, Calvin, and Leslie Kouba. New Way of the Wilderness: The Classic Guide to Survival in the Wild. New York: Macmillan, 1958.

Sailing and Racing

Cort, Adam and Richard Stearns. Getting Starting in Sailboat Racing. New York: International Marine/McGraw Hill. 2013.

Melges, Buddy and Charles Mason. Sailing Smart: Winning Techniques, Tactics, and Strategies. New York: Henry Holt & Company. 1987.

Seidman, David. The Complete Sailor. New York: International Marine/McGraw Hill. 2011.

Vigor, John. Things I Wish I'd Known Before I Started Sailing. Dobbs Ferry: Sheridan House. 2020.

US Sailing. https://www.ussailing.org/ Accessed 17 July 2024.

Walker, Stuart H. Advanced Racing Tactics. New York: W. W. Norton. 1986.

Walker, Stuart H. A Manual of Sail Trim. New York: W.W. Norton. 1985.

Walker, Stuart H. Positioning: The Logic of Sailboat Racing. New York: W.W. Norton. 1992.

Walker, Stuart H. The Tactics of Small Boat Racing. New York: W.W. Norton. 1991.

Stand Up Paddleboard

Burgoyne, Nate. The Stand Up Paddle Book. Haleiwa: Lava Rock Media, 2010.

Casey, Rob. Stand Up Paddling: Flatwater to Surf and Rivers. Seattle: Mountaineers Books, 2011.

Marcus, Ben. The Art of Stand Up Paddling: A Complete Guide to SUP on Lakes, Rivers, and Oceans. Santa Monica: Falcon Guides, 2011.

18.0 Acknowledgements

Sea Scouts gratefully acknowledge the contributions of the following people for their help in preparing the Sea Scout Manual, 13th edition.

Project Director
Cassie Johnson, National Sea Scout Committee

Contributors
Tim Anderson
Sal Ciampo
T.W. Cook
Cassie Johnson
Rishabh Kokal
Robin Pope
Hugh Riley
Peter Schmidt
Cynthia Swenceski
Charles Wurster, VADM, USCG (retired)

Photo by Contributor:
Brian Cook on Unsplash (downpour)
Cartrette, Kin at Facebook (semaphore)
Clker-Free Vector - Images from Pixabay
Clker-Free Vector - Images from Pixabay (semaphore images)
ELG21 from Pixabay (cumulus clouds)
evening_tao on freepik.com (stratus clouds)
Farmer, Neal at Facebook (many images)
Gilly on Unsplash (sloop)
Gribgrab on Unsplash (sloop)
Harry, Tosha at Facebook (diving)
Icon by Freepik (gun)
Icons8 at Creative Commons (radio icon)
Inigo Ibisate from Pixabay (ketch)
Jamie Morrison on Unsplash (dinghy)
Jamie Morrison on Unsplash (dory)
Jacqueline macole from Pixabay (diver and sea turtle)
Jes Lu at Flickr (sound buoy)
Johnson, Cassie (color graphics, some images)
Jovelino Furtado Jovelino from Pixabay
JS Bond via Wikimedia (Coastal navigation with dead reckoning)
juliec0211 on Freeimages.com (cutter)
Lars Plöger from Pixabay (sextant)
Lipham, Richard at Facebook (many images)
LuidmilaKot at Pixabay (storm at sea)

mcfisher at Pixabay (Flemish coil)
OCG Saving the Ocean from Unsplash (beach cleanup)
paulbr75 from Pixabay (dayshape in rigging)
Paul Brennan from Pixabay (dredge)
Pellegrini, Laura at Facebook (SUPs)
PublicDomainPictures from Pixabay (schooner)
Robinson, Lisa (multiple images)
Roytek, Michael at seascout.org
Scanio, Heather (knots, hitches, and bends)
Schmidt, Tracy on Facebook (girl holding tiller)
Sea Scout Ship 1701 at Facebook (multiple images)
Sea Scout Ship 208 at Facebook (diving)
Sergio Zhukov on Unsplash (skiff)
Seute Deern Bremerhaven at Pixabay (capstan)
Shupe, Ken at Facebook (lookout)
Sixbey, Shannon Kelso (fog)
Smash icons on FLATICON (flashlight)
smuayc at creat.vistas (anemometer, wind vane)
Steven Long from FreePNGimg (barometer)
Voysla at FLATICON (horn icon)
wirestock on Freepik (low clouds)

19.0 Index

Scouting America Mission Statement

The mission of Scouting America is to prepare young people to make ethical and moral choices over their lifetimes by instilling in them the values of the Scout Oath and Law.

Scouting America Vision Statement

Scouting America will prepare every eligible youth in America to become a responsible, participating citizen and leader who is guided by the Scout Oath and Law.